

EFSTRATIOS GRIVAS

GRIVAS METHOD

MIDDLEGAME STRATEGIES




Chess
Evolution

Efstratios Grivas

GRIVAS METHOD
MIDDLEGAME STRATEGIES

Akoglaniz



Cover designer

Piotr Pielach

Typesetting

Piotr Pielach <www.i-press.pl>

First edition 2017 by Chess Evolution

Grivas method. Middlegame strategies

Copyright © 2017 Chess Evolution

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission of the publisher.

ISBN 978-615-5793-00-4

All sales or enquiries should be directed to Chess Evolution
2040 Budaors, Nyar utca 16, Magyarorszag

e-mail: info@chess-evolution.com

website: www.chess-evolution.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TITLE PAGE

KEY TO SYMBOLS 5

INTRODUCTION 7

EDITORIAL PREFACE 9

BIBLIOGRAPHY 11

SURVEYS ON MIDDLEGAME STRATEGY 13

A Backward Problem 13

Domination 20

Initiative 30

Preparation 40

Queen Exchange 47

The Bad Bishop 57

The Capablanca Manoeuvre 66

The Forepost 79

The Hungarian Knight-Tour 100

The Royal Centre 105

The Superfluous Knight 113

Weak Square 125

The buried bishop 152

Underdevelopment 174

The Capablanca Manoeuvre 66

The Forepost 79

The Hungarian Knight-Tour 100

The Royal Centre 105

The Superfluous Knight 113

Weak Square 125

The buried bishop 152

Underdevelopment 174

Unfortunate bishop 188

SURVEYS ON TACTICS 195

Attack via the Edge Files 195

Boden's Mate 212

Castled Death 217

Fierce Queen 225

Lethal Diagonals 231

Long-term Sacrifices 238

New York Queen Sac 251

The G-point Check 255

The Pony Express 259

The Smothered Mate 265

Twin Games 280

KEY TO SYMBOLS

= Equality or equal chances

± White has a slight advantage

∓ Black has a slight advantage

± White is better

∓ Black is better

+ - White has a decisive advantage

- + Black has a decisive advantage

∞ unclear

∞ with compensation

↔ with counterplay

↑ with initiative

→ with an attack

Δ with the idea

□ only move

N novelty

! a good move

!! an excellent move

? a weak move

?? a blunder

!? an interesting move

?! a dubious move

+ check

mate

INTRODUCTION

Dear Reader,

A responsible chess trainer is 'destined' to analyse, prepare and teach his/her trainees the plain truth and the difficult paths to chess excellence. Well, this is easier said than done, but of course nothing is really as difficult as it sometimes appears.

When the responsible trainer knows what to do and how to do it, things get simpler and can be more easily absorbed by the trainee! And from time-to-time the responsible trainer should reveal his work and his ways of teaching.

The book that you are holding in your hands is a kind of continuation of my previous work named 'Chess Analytics' (English language — Russell Enterprises Inc, 2012); a work that was also translated into Italian and Spanish. The basic concept is simple but quite effective: various surveys on all aspects of the game, covering and explaining unrevealed or poorly explained ideas and paths.

In the present book by 'Chess Evolution', a total of 40 concepts are deeply analysed. Well, nothing really too difficult, as the modern author has at his disposal powerful databases, tablebases, analysed material, books and — by adding his knowledge — you will get what you are looking for!

Today we have shorter time-controls and there isn't really enough time to dig into the subtleties of each ending. You have to know and to repeat knowledge; don't be carried away by the usual myth of the 'chess talent'. As I have repeatedly written and proved, 'talent is the excuse of the failed'.

'Unfortunately', the modern chess player is entitled and forced to work more than his predecessors. The modern chess trainer also needs to prepare more delicate themes, understand them and then teach them to his students. So, there is plenty of room for everything and for everybody who is thirsty for knowledge.

Knowledge is the key word. And knowledge is absorbed subconsciously; it is impossible to re-member everything you study. So, it is highly important to work with good material and good trainers in order to improve towards the Chess Olympus.

Nowadays the help of the Silicon Monster (chess analysis engines) is quite valuable, as it can save an author countless hours of analysis and checking. But still the role of the qualified trainer remains important; he knows where the truth is — he knows what to keep and what to throw away...

I do not want to hold a 'high nose' and claim that everything I have written is perfect and completely sound; I always think of the surprise factor and I just try to write honestly and with responsibility.

Have a nice reading journey!

Efstratios Grivas

9Athens, 2017

EDITORIAL PREFACE

For a chess book to be instructive and informative, it would help a lot if these factors are present; that the author possesses the gift, the passion and love for the game and at one point in time, he is or was a competitive chessplayer - preferably a grandmaster. And it would also be to his advantage if he has previous experience in writing, and is or was actively involved in training and conducting chess seminars and lectures.

All of these elements are wonderful of course, but more is required from the author to ensure success. He must work hard in collating pertinent chess materials to substantiate his thoughts and ideas. In order to best illustrate and appreciate the theme that he is introducing, the author needs to compile instructive games of the great masters or from average players. Even better is for the author to include those games he won and lost - as long as it pertains to the subject being tackled. As the saying goes, it is the player himself who knows best about the intricacies and turn of events that occurred in his games.

It is beneficial to provide a 'label or name' to the motifs the author is presenting, in order to help the reader recall the concept when it appears in his own actual games. Appropriate title descriptions of concepts is a good guide for readers to better understand its objective and how to achieve it. Likewise, providing a 'conclusion' at the end of each method is crucial in aiding the reader to completely discern what the author is trying to transmit and to impart.

The author becomes effective when he is not stingy in sharing his ideas. He must have a child-like attitude wherein he is very eager, proud and generous in passing on to the readers all his knowledge and understanding accumulated through many years of competing. And it would be impressive if he is also experienced in chess writing and teaching.

Most authors are focused on emphasizing the importance of knowing and understanding basic and general principles to

achieve success. However, readers must be constantly reminded and enlightened that exceptions to the rules or out of the box concepts are essential as well. A good example here is the 'The Bad Bishop' perception which Efstratios propounds in his excellent book 'Grivas Method - Middlegame Strategies'.

When all these ingredients mentioned above are present - and you augment it with spicy tidbits about great players, composers, anecdotes, recollections, puzzles, memorable events etc. - then a complete recipe for a good, yummy and worth-reading chess book is served. And this book is it.

Eugene Torre, 2017

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Advanced Chess School: Volumes 1-8; Efstratios Grivas; FIDE 2014-2017
- British Chess Magazine; Various Contributors; BCM 1987-2017
- Chess Analytics: Training with a Grandmaster; Efstratios Grivas; Russel Enterprises 2012
- Chess College 1: Strategy; Efstratios Grivas; Gambit 2006
- Chess College 2: Pawn Play; Efstratios Grivas; Gambit 2006
- Chess College 3: Technique; Efstratios Grivas; Gambit 2006
- Chess Curiosities; Tim Krabbe; Allen & Unwin Ltd 1985
- Chess Expertise Step by Step. Volume 1: Unexpected Tactics; Efstratios Grivas; Chessbase 2011
- Chess Expertise Step by Step. Volume 2: Mastering Strategy; Efstratios Grivas; Chessbase 2011
- Chess for Tigers; Simon Webb; Oxford University Press 1978
- Chess Today (Internet Newspaper); Alexander Baburin; 2006-2017
- ChessBase Mega Database; Various Contributors; ChessBase 2017
- Informator; Various Contributors; Informator 1966-2017
- Learn from the Legends; Mihail Marin; Quality Chess 2004
- My System; Aaron Nimzowitsch; Hays Publications 1991
- New In Chess (Magazine & Yearbook); Various Contributors; Interchess BV 1984-2017
- Secrets of Modern Chess Strategy; John Watson; Gambit 1998
- The Middlegame; Euwe / Kramer; Hays Publications 1999
- Wikipedia — Various Articles; Wikipedia 2017

The above sources were my main help and guide while writing this book. I would like to thank the (rest) of the authors for their contributions to chess literature and the chance they gave to all chess players to become better. Wikipedia was quite helpful too!

SURVEYS ON MIDDLEGAME STRATEGY

A BACKWARD PROBLEM

Modern backward pawns are not considered as bad as, let's say, 30 years ago. Modern approaches and methods are very much concerned with the so-called 'activity' measure.

As long as the possessor of a backward pawn can preserve an elastic and potentially- active position, his deficit is not that important, as the opposing side cannot 'concentrate' on it.

A good strategy is to exchange pieces, preserving only those that could be useful in pressuring the backward pawn. In this case, the backward pawn side will hardly find any activity, while passivity is something that they will have to live with!

Well, this of course doesn't guarantee a win, but mostly a pleasant, non-dangerous, middlegame or endgame.

Let's examine some cases with a backward black d-pawn:

□ Karpov Anatoly

■ Gheorghiu Florin

Moscow 1977

1.c4 c5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘c3 e6 4.g3 b6 5.♙g2 ♙b7 6.0-0 ♙e7 7.d4 cxd4
8.♚xd4 d6 9.b3 0-0 10.♞d1 ♞bd7 11.♙b2 a6



12.♚e3!?

An interesting set-up. White plans to play ♞d4 and then get his queen on the diagonal.

12... ♚b8

Not bad, but more 'logical' is 12... ♚c7 13. ♞d4 ♙xg2 14. ♜xg2 ♞fe8 15. ♜g1 ♙f8 16. ♞ac1 ♞ac8 17. ♞e4 ♞xe4 18. ♚xe4 ♚b8 19.a4+=
Timman,J-Lobron,E Brussels 1992.

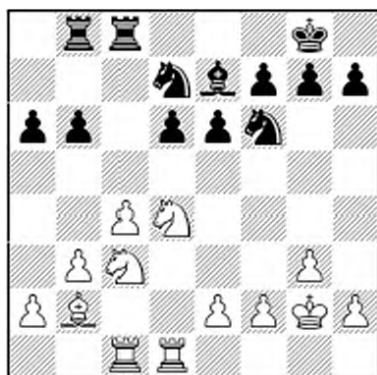
13. ♞d4 ♙xg2

13... ♞e5 14.h3 ♙xg2 15. ♜xg2 ♚b7+ 16. ♜g1 ♞ab8 17. ♞ac1 ♞fe8 , as in Anelli,A-Szmetan,J Buenos Aires 1978, seems to be more accurate.

14. ♜xg2 ♚b7+

The text allows White a pleasant endgame and I feel that Black should go for something like 14... ♞e5 15.f3 ♚b7 16. ♚d2 ♞fd8 17.e4 d5 18.exd5 exd5 19. ♚e2+ = Rubinetti,J-Szmetan,J Quilmes 1980.

15. ♚f3! ♚xf3+ 16. ♞xf3 ♞fc8 17. ♞d4 ♞ab8 18. ♞ac1



Exchanging queens simply means that there will be less tactics on the board, which emphasises permanent weaknesses, such as the backward black d-pawn. Of course White has just a slight (but nearly permanent) advantage, and Black is fairly still in the game.

18...h6 19.e4 ♖e8?!

A passive retreat. 19...♞e5 is more to the point.

20.f4 ♙f6 21.♕f3 ♜b7

Logical was 21...♕f8! when White should avoid 22.e5? dxe5
23.♞xe6+ ♕e7+

22.♙a3! ♜bc7 23.♞ce2!

Time for regrouping!

23...♞c5 24.♜d2 g6 25.♞c2 ♙g7 26.♞e3!

The direct 26.g4?! fails to 26...g5! =



26...f5?!

The text doesn't add anything to Black's cause. More logical was
26...b5 27.h3 h5 28.g4 hxg4+ 29.hxg4+=

27.exf5 gxf5 28.h3! h5 29.♜g1!

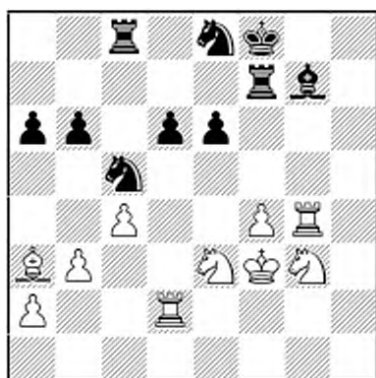
Preparing an assault on the kingside.

29...♜f7

Another passive approach. Black needs to become active, so
29...b5 was essential: 30.g4 hxg4+ 31.hxg4 fxg4+ 32.♜xg4 bxc4

33.bxc4+=

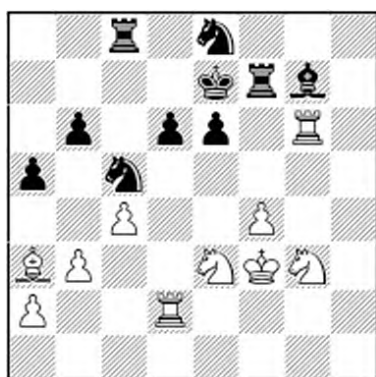
30.g4! hxg4+ 31.hxg4 fxg4+ 32.♖xg4 ♜f8 33.♘g3



33...a5

33...♜e7!? looked better and surprisingly allows Black to stay in the game: 34.♖g6 ♜f6 35.♖xf6 ♘xf6 36.b4 (36.♘ef5+!? exf5 37.♘xf5+ ♜f8 38.♖xd6 ♜f7 39.♘xg7 ♜xg7 40.♖xb6+=) 36...♘cd7 37.b5 ♘e8 (37...♘c5 38.♖e2 ♜f7 39.f5+=) 38.♘e4 ♘c5 39.♙xc5 dxc5 40.♖e2+=

34.♖g6 ♜e7?!



But this is really bad. Also unsatisfactory was 34...♜f6?! 35.♖xg7! ♜xg7 (35...♘xg7 36.♖xd6±) 36.♘h5+ ♜g6 37.♘xf6 ♜xf6 38.♖h2± or 34...♙c3?! 35.♖d1 (35.♖h2 ♘c7 36.f5±) 35...♜e7 36.♙xc5 dxc5 37.♘e4 ♙d4 38.f5± but good was 34...♙e5! 35.♘gf5 ♘g7! 36.fxe5

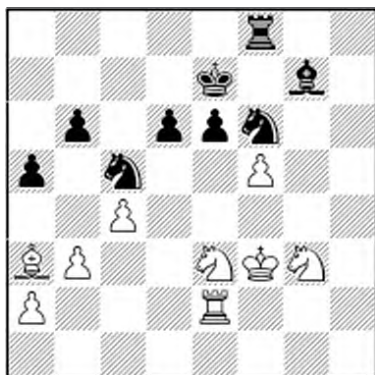
♖xf5 37.♔e2+=

35.f5! ♜f6

35...exf5 loses to 36.♗d5+ ♔d8 37.♗xb6.

36.♞xf6 ♗xf6 37.♞e2! ♞f8?!

Although not pleasant, Black had to opt for 37...e5 38.♙xc5 bxc5 39.♞h2 a4 40.♗e4±



38.♙xc5!

Decisive, and better than 38.fxe6?! ♗xe6 39.♗ef5+ ♔d7 40.♞xe6 ♙xe6 41.♗xg7+ ♔d7 42.♗7f5±

38...bxc5

38...dxc5 39.fxe6 ♗g8+ 40.♗ef5+ ♔e8 41.e7+-

39.fxe6 ♙xe6

39...♗g8+ 40.♗ef5+ ♔e8 41.e7 ♞f6 42.♔e4+-

40.♗ef5+ ♗e4 41.♔xe4

Of course bad was 41.♗xe4? ♞xf5+ 42.♔g4 ♙e5= but 41.♞xe4+ ♙e5 42.♞e2 ♞xf5+ 43.♗xf5 ♙xf5 44.♔e3+- was also winning.

1-0

□ Suba Mihai
■ Nicholson John
Malaga 2001

1.c4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 c5 3.♘c3 e6 4.g3 b6 5.♙g2 ♙b7 6.0-0 ♙e7 7.d4 cxd4
8.♚xd4 d6



A well-known position in the popular 'Hedgehog' set-up.

9.♙g5

In general I like White's potential set-up. Exchanges that will support the centre and avoid a future ...b5 or ...d5 advances.

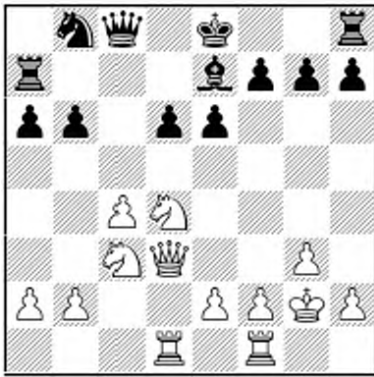
9...a6 10.♙xf6 ♙xf6 11.♚d3

11.♚f4 was chosen by M.Carlsen: 11...0-0 12.♚fd1 ♙e7 13.♘e4
♙xe4 14.♚xe4 ♚a7 15.♘d4+= Carlsen,M-Gashimov,V Wijk aan Zee
2012.

11...♚a7 12.♚ad1 ♙e7 13.♘d4

Another idea is 13.♘e4 0-0 14.♚e3 ♙a8 15.♚d2 ♚d7 16.♚fd1+=
Korchnoi,V-Atlas,V Ptuj 1995.

13...♙xg2 14.♙xg2 ♚c8



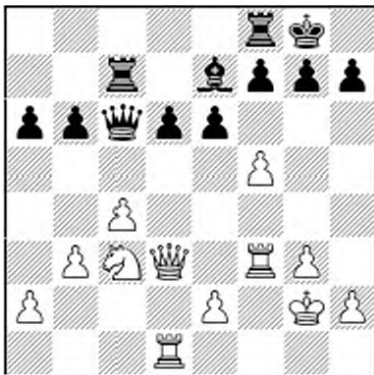
15.f4

A quite interesting idea, aiming at weakening e6 or gaining the d5-square.

15...♘c6

15...♞c7?! fails to 16.f5! e5 (16...♘c6 17.♘xc6 ♜xc6 18.fxe6 fxe6 19.♗e4±) 17.♗b3 ♜xc4 18.♗d5 ♙d8 19.f6 ♞ Nikolic,P-Ribli,Z Novi Sad 1982.

16.♞f3 0-0 17.♘xc6 ♜xc6 18.f5 ♞c7 19.b3



19...♞b7

Worse is 19...♞d8?! 20.fxe6 fxe6 21.♞e3 d5 22.cxd5 exd5 23.b4! (23.♞d3?! d4 24.♗e4 b5∞ Freisler,P-Panchenko,A Berlin 1991) 23...♞cd7 24.♗xd5±

20.a4

White must stop ...b5.

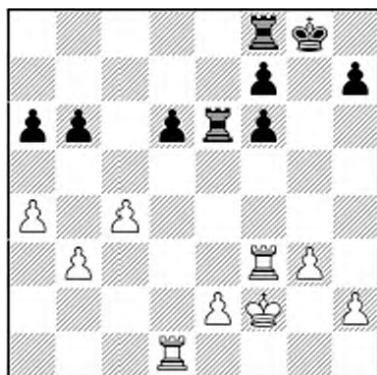
20...♖b8 21.♗e3 ♖be8?

A faulty tactical 'solution'. The alternative was 21...♗d7 22.h4+=

22.fxe6 ♗f6 23.♗e4

White gets the advantage anyway, but he should seriously consider here: 23.exf7+ ♖xf7 24.♗f4± or 23.♗d5 ♖xe6 24.♗xb6 ♖xe2+ 25.♖f2 ♖xf2+ 26.♔xf2±

23...♗xe4 24.♗xe4 ♖xe6 25.♗xf6+ gxf6 26.♔f2



White has much the better ending, as Black is full of weak pawns.

26...♖fe8 27.♖d2 ♔f8 28.♖fd3 ♔e7 29.♖d5! ♖g8 30.a5

Creating a further weakness!

30...♖b8 31.♖2d3 ♖e5

Black couldn't stand the passive 31...bxa5 32.♖xa5 ♖a8±

32.♖xd6 ♖xa5 33.♖d7+ ♔e6?!

Black doesn't like passivity, but sometimes it is the only solution. Black had to opt for 33...♔f8 34.♖d8+ (34.♗a7 ♕g7 35.♞dd7 ♜f8 36.♞db7±) 34...♞xd8 35.♞xd8+ ♕e7 36.♞b8 ♜f5+ 37.♕e3 b5 38.♞b7+ ♕e8 39.♞a7±

34.♞a7

Even better was 34.g4! ♜c5 35.♞3d6+ ♕e5 36.♕f3+-

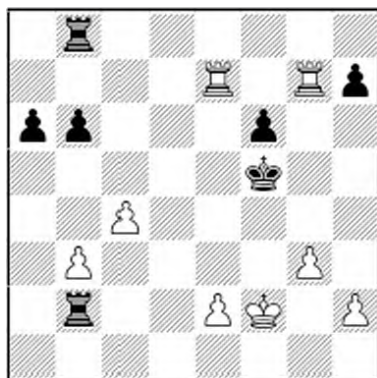
34...♞a2?!

34...♞f5+ 35.♕e3 ♜e5+ 36.♕d2 a5 37.♞ad7±, was the only chance.

35.♞e3+!

Winning material.

35...♕f5 36.♞xf7 ♕g6 37.♞ee7 ♞b2 38.♞g7+ ♕f5



39.♕f3!

And a mating net is created!

39...♞xb3+ 40.e3 h5 41.h3 1-0

□ Tiviakov Sergei

■ Anand Viswanathan

Baden Baden 2012

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.♙b5+ ♘d7 4.d4 cxd4 5.♚xd4 a6 6.♙xd7+ ♙xd7
7.c4 e5 8.♚d3 h6 9.♘c3 ♘f6 10.0-0 ♙e7 11.a4

Also possible is 11.♞d1 ♞c8 12.b3 ♞c6 13.a4 0-0 14.♙a3+=
Fressinet,L-Kolbus,D Germany 2007.



11...b6

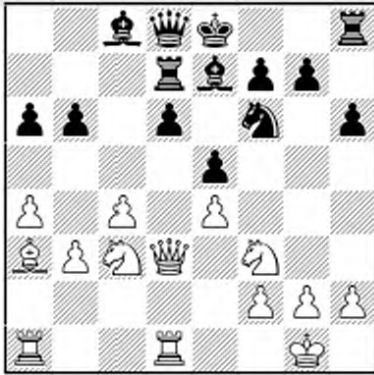
A highly dubious choice according to S.Tiviakov.

12.b3 ♞a7

Another try is 12...♙c6 13.♙a3 ♞a7 14.♘d5 ♘xd5 15.cxd5 ♙d7
16.♘d2 b5 17.axb5 ♙xb5 18.♘c4+= Gdanski,J-Koch,J Arnhem 1987.

13.♞d1 ♙c8 14.♙a3 ♞d7

A backward pawn position — typical of the ‘Sicilian Defence’ — is on the board. But this is quite unpleasant for Black, and while he is in no immediate danger, nor does he have any active prospects.



15. Nf1

White is heading his knight to d5 (Nf1-e3); typical of such pawn structures.

15...0-0 16. Nf1 Bb7 17. Ne3 Re8 18. Ncd5 Nxd5 19. Nxd5 Bxd5 20. Qxd5



White has exchanged many pieces, but the ones left are all quite useful to him, so he holds a nice advantage.

20... Qa8 21. Qxa8 Rxa8 22. Rd5 f6 23. Rbd1 Rbd8 24. g3!

Another typical idea in such positions. White cannot win by just pressing one weakness; Black will defend it. He needs to create further weaknesses in other part of the board and start moving his pieces around them. This is what we call the 'Rule of the Two Weaknesses'!

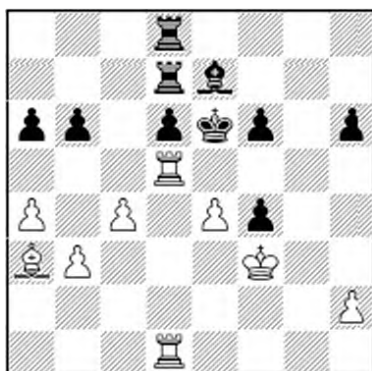
24...g5 25.f4



25...gxf4?

Black's last not only doesn't solve any of his problems, but it opens up the g-file for White. Black's serious lack of space and mobility means that he cannot switch from one side to the next as quickly as his opponent. Had he left it to White to exchange, then it would have been the f-file opened, and it would be far easier to keep control of both.

26.gxf4 ♔f7 27.♔f2 exf4 28.♔f3 ♔e6



29.♗c1!

The bishop will attack both d6 and h6 from the excellent f4-square.

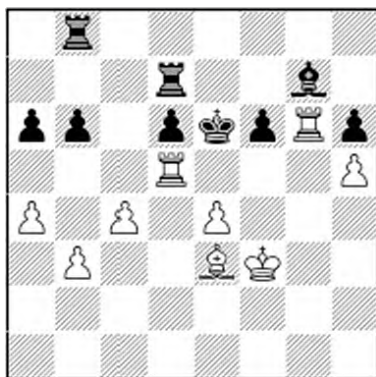
29...♞c8 30.♗xf4 ♗f8 31.h4!

Another excellent and typical idea. Targets must be fixed, so will h6! Also, a strong outpost will be created on g6.

31...♖c6 32.h5 ♜b7 33.♙e3 ♜b8 34.♙d4 ♜c7 35.♜g1 ♙g7 36.♜g6 ♜f7 37.♙e3

And White wins material...

37...♜d7?



Missing a shot that White also missed with the time-control approaching.

38.♜f5?!

The spectacular 38.e5! would have won on the spot, but fortunately for the Dutch GM, this does not squander the win:

38...♙f7 38...dxe5 39.♜xd7 ♙xd7 40.♜xg7+-) 39.exf6 ♙f8 (39...♙xf6? 40.♜f5!) 40.♙xh6 and the end is near.

38...♜f7 39.♙g4 ♙f8 40.♙xh6 ♙xh6 41.♜xh6 ♜g7+ 42.♙f4!

42.♜g6? would be a blunder: 42...♜xg6+ 43.hxg6 ♜g8 44.♙h5 ♜h8+ 45.♙g4 ♜g8=

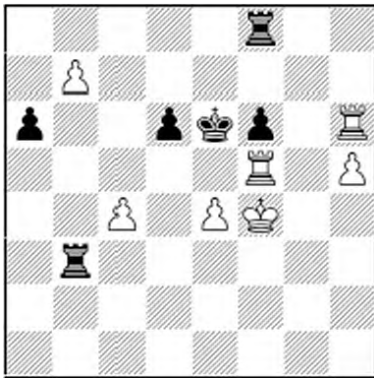
42...♜f8 43.a5!

Opening up further weaknesses to overwhelm Black's pieces.

43...g1

43...bxa5 is no help: 44.e5! dxe5+ 45.xe5+! f7 46.f5! e6
47.xa5 a8 48.e5+ f7 49.f5+-

44.axb6 b1 45.b7 xb3



46.e5! dxe5+ 47.xe5+ d6 48.f5 e6 49.h7 d8 50.d5!

Black resigned due to 50...xd5 51.cxd5+ xd5 52.f5 c6 53.h6.

1-0

CONCLUSION

Selective exchanges help the pressure against a backward pawn.
Its possessor should certainly try to avoid them.

DOMINATION

Chess is a game of domination. From our very first moves we try to dominate the opponent, the development, the centre, the pieces' placement and so on.

We try to get better positions than our opponent and in the end to cash in the full point by precise, dominating play.

Complete domination means that we can nearly do what we like and that our opponent is helpless, no matter how hard he is trying!

Well, that's too good to be realised in every game, but from time-to-time we might be able to achieve complete domination!

Domination is the dream of every chess player. He would love to be able to play simultaneously in every part of the board and simply be better everywhere. This might happen sometimes; no counterplay by our opponent — nothing to fear.

Dominated factors can be met in every stage of the game, even pawnless endgames! We will start with some studies of the famous chess composer Genrikh Kasparyan, but firstly I feel that we should know a bit more about him.

Genrikh Kasparyan (27 February 1910 in Tbilisi — 27 December 1995 in Yerevan) is considered to have been one of the greatest composers of chess endgame studies.

Outside Armenia, he is better known by the Russian version of his name Genrikh Moiseyevich Kasparyan or Kasparian.

Genrikh Kasparyan became a national master in 1936 and an international master in 1950. He was awarded the titles of International Judge of Chess Compositions in 1956 and International Grandmaster of Chess Composition in 1972, the first composer to receive this title from FIDE.

Genrikh Kasparyan was also an active chess player, winning the Armenian championship ten times (from 1934 to 1956, including two ties with future World Champion Tigran Petrosian) and the Tiflis championship three times (1931, 1937, and 1945).

He reached the USSR Championship finals four times (1931, 1937, 1947 and 1952), but never finished higher than tenth place.

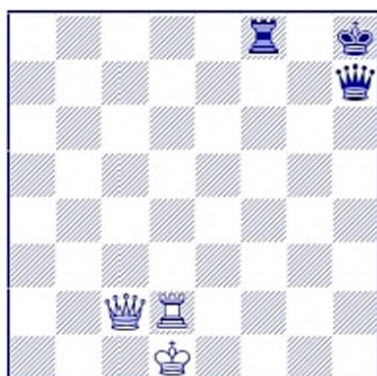
Genrikh Kasparyan is best known for his compositions. He started with chess problems, mainly three-movers, but soon discovered that his best field was in endgame studies.

He wrote several books and collections and composed about 600 studies, many on the theme of domination, winning 57 first prizes. He won the USSR Composing Championship several times.

Study 1

Kasparian Genrikh

1967 ○



The material is so limited and most players would think that the draw is near. But here the side to move dominates the game and it is White's turn!

1. ♖b2+!

Nothing else works. 1. ♖c3+? fails to impress after 1... ♗g7!
2. ♗h3+ ♗h7! (2... ♔g8? 3. ♗g2+-) 3. ♖c3+ ♗g7 4. ♗h2+ ♔g8 5. ♖c4+ ♗f7!= The main concept of the queen's movement is to co-operate with her rook in certain variations.

1... ♗g7

1... ♔g8 loses to 2. ♗g2+ ♔f7 3. ♗b7+.

2. ♗h2+ ♔g8 3. ♖a2+!

White's queen operates harmoniously from the 2nd rank!

3...♟f7

3...♞f7 4.♞g2+- is a sad story...

4.♟g2+! ♟g7 5.♟d5+ ♟f7

Again 5...♟f7 loses to 6.♞g2.

6.♞g2+ ♔h7 7.♟e4+!

and White mates!

7...♔h8

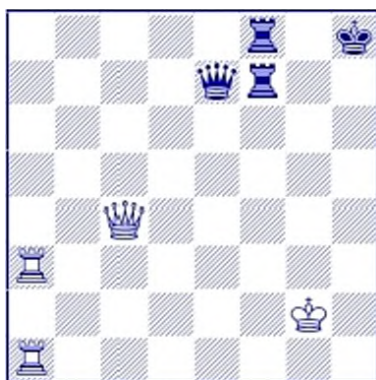
7...♔h6 8.♟e3+ ; 7...♟f5 8.♟h4+.

8.♟e5+ ♔h7 9.♟h2+ ♟h5+ 10.♟xh5# 1-0

Study 2

Kasparian Genrikh

1968 ○



Adding an extra rook for both sides makes the right to the first move even more important; domination is in sight...

1.♞h3+!

1.♞h1+? offers nothing after 1...♞h7 2.♞xh7+ (2.♟d4+ ♔g8 3.♞g3+

♖g7=) 2...♜xh7! (2...♔xh7? 3.♞h3+ ♔g6 4.♚d3+ ♜f5 5.♞g3+ ♔f6
 6.♚a6+!+-) 3.♞h3 ♜f2+! 4.♔g3 ♜f3+=

1...♞h7

1...♔g8 loses to 2.♞g1! and next moving the king to the h-file!

2.♚c3+!

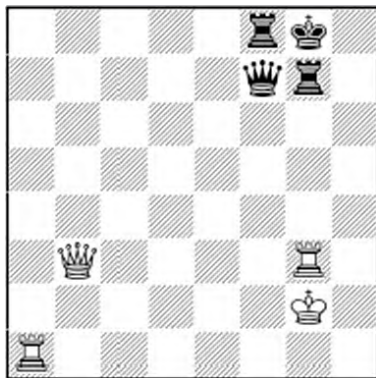
As in the previous study, the queen should co-operate with her rook on the same rank, so wrong would be 2.♚d4+? ♔g8=

2...♔g8

2...♚g7+ loses to 3.♚xg7+ ♔xg7 4.♞a7+.

3.♞g3+ ♞g7 4.♚b3+! ♚f7

If 4...♜ff7, then 5.♞a8+ ♔h7 6.♚b1++-



5.♞a7! ♚xb3

Nothing is changed by 5...♞xg3+ 6.♚xg3++-

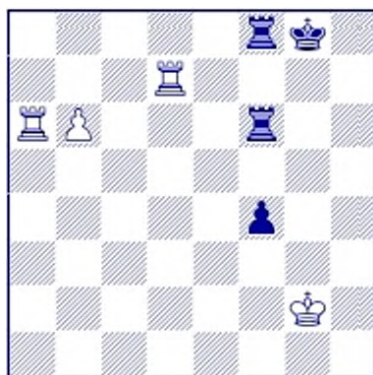
6.♞gxg7+ ♔h8 7.♞h7+ ♔g8 8.♞ag7# 1-0

Of course domination is easier when material is increased.

Study 3

Kasparian Genrikh

1938 ○



Here the 7th rank domination by the white rooks is rather important. The white king is more flexible and this factor leads to the win.

1.♖aa7!

Full domination!

1...f3+ 2.♔f2!

White must be careful, as wrong would be 2.♔f1? ♖h6! 3.b7 f2 4.♖g7+ ♔h8 5.♖f7 ♖h1+! 6.♔g2 f1=♚+ 7.♖xf1 ♖hxf1 8.b8=♚ ♖xb8 9.♔xf1=

2...♖g6

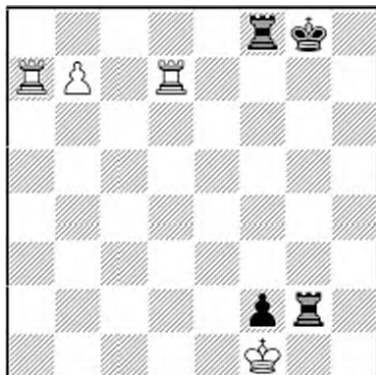
2...♖h6 now loses to 3.b7! (3.♖g7+? ♔h8 4.b7 ♖h2+ 5.♔e3 ♖e2+ 6.♔d3 ♖d8+=) 3...♖h2+ 4.♔g3! (4.♔e3? ♖b2! 5.♖a8 f2=) 4...f2 (4...♖g2+ 5.♔h3 f2 6.b8♚ f1=♚ 7.♚b3+ ♔h8 8.♖h7#; 4...♖b2 5.♖a8) 5.♖g7+ ♔h8 6.♖f7!+-

3.b7 ♖g2+ 4.♔f1!

Precise! Again 4.♔e3? doesn't help: 4...♖e2+ 5.♔d3 ♖b2 6.♖g7+ ♔h8 7.♖h7+ ♔g8.

4...f2

After 4...♖b2 White wins b5.♘a8 ♜b1+ 6.♔f2 ♜b2+ 7.♔g3! f2
8.♞xf8+ ♔xf8 9.♔g2 ♔e8 10.♞c7.



5.♞f7!!

Not only the only winning but also the only not losing move!

5...♞b8 6.♞a8!

6.♞c7 ♜f8!

6...♔xf7 7.♞xb8 ♜g1+ 8.♔xf2 ♜b1

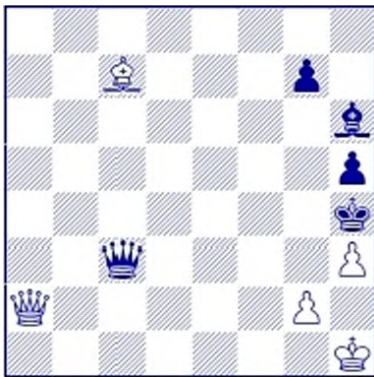
And now the usual endgame trick:

9.♞h8! ♜xb7 10.♞h7+ ♔e6 11.♞xb7 1-0

Study 4

Kasparian Genrikh

1934 ○



The black king is in danger and White has to create a 'dominated environment' to take the point.

1. ♖f7! ♔e3!

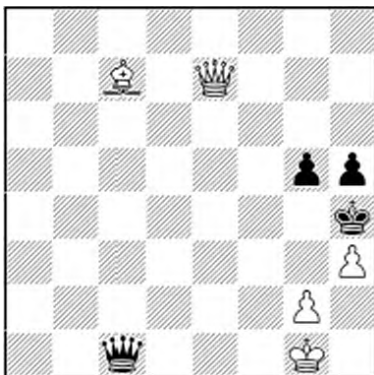
1...♔d2 loses to 2. ♖e7+ ♖f6 (2...g5 3. ♕h2+- ; 2...♔g5 3. ♖e4+-)
3. ♖d7! ♔a5 4. ♖a4+.

2. ♖e7+! g5 3. ♕h2!

It looks like it is all over; the black king is about to be mated...

3...♔g1+! 4. ♕xg1 ♖c1+

4...♖d4+ loses to 5. ♖e3!! ♖xe3+ 6. ♕h2+-



5. ♖e1+!!

The only way! 5. ♖h2? ♜h1+ 6. ♖xh1=

5... ♜xe1+ 6. ♖h2

And now White threatens mate with either ♔g3 or ♔g3. When the black g-pawn moves to g4, mate follows with ♔d8 — full domination!

6... ♜f2 7. ♔d6!

This puts Black into zugzwang, as the black queen is unable to protect her king from all mating threats...

7... ♜f4+ 8. ♔g3+! ♜xg3+ 9. ♔xg3# 1-0

Endgame domination is not one of the easiest, so the following studies are impressive:

Study 5

Reti Richard

1922 ○



It looks like Black will survive...

1. ♔d4+! ♖c5

Black is obliged to go for the white a-pawn as quickly as

possible. After 1...♔b7 2.♔xh2 ♕a6 3.♖b3 White wins.

2.♔h1!!

Black has no move, as his bishop has been dominated: 2...♔b4
3.a6 — 2...♔d5 3.a6 — 2...♕f4 3.♖e6+ — 2...♔xd4 3.a6 — 2...♕d2
3.♖b3+ — 2...♕c1 3.♖b3+.

1-0

Study

Rinck Henri

1903 ○



1.♖a8!

An excellent move, dominating the black queen who has only one available square.

1...♔a2

1...♔h7 2.♕g6!+-;

1...♔xa8 2.♕f3++-;

1...♔e6 2.♖a6++-;

1...♔c4 2.♖c8++-

2.♖xa4! ♔g8

2... ♖xa4 3. ♕e8++-

3. ♖a8!

But now the black queen has no square at all — note the above variations, so White wins material.

1-0

Of course the previous studies were impressive, but what about the real world?

In general the easiest way to go about it is the 'Rule of the Two Weaknesses' — a rule that we often meet in modern chess. Think of this rule as the second door to happiness; the second battlefield.

Chess players try to play naturally and reproduce ideas and moves that they were 'taught' by their predecessors.

They tend to mostly focus on a certain part of the board more than another and look for chances there. But a chess board is a totality and one should seek play and domination in every part of it.

□ **Zhu Chen**

■ **Stefanova Antoaneta**

Nalchik 2011 ○



87. ♖h6!

And Black is dominated by White's mighty knight!

87...a4

Passive defence with 87...♞d2+ 88.♔c3 ♞d8 does not help: 89.♘c4 ♞b8 90.♞f6 ♔c5 91.♞f5+ ♔c6 92.♞h5 ♞b7 93.♔b2 ♞b8 94.♔a3 ♞b7 95.♞g5 ♞b8 96.♘e5+ ♔b7 97.♔a4 ♔a6 98.♞g6 ♞b7 99.♘c4 ♞b8 100.♘a5 ♞h8 101.♘c4 ♞b8 102.♞xb6+ ♞xb6 103.♘xb6 ♔xb6 104.♔b4+- 87...♞g2 also loses to 88.♘c4 ♞g4+ 89.♔c3 ♞g3+ 90.♔b2 a4 91.♘d6+ (the octopus controls the rook) 91...♔a5 (91...♔c5 92.♘e4+-) 92.♞h5+ ♔a6 93.bxa4+-

88.♘c4! axb3

88...♔a6 89.♞xb6+ ♔a7 90.bxa4+- or 88...♔b4?! 89.♞xb6#

89.♞xb6+ ♔a4 90.♔c5

And Black is powerless as her own b-pawn prevents a stalemate defence and the white rook has no real check.

90...♞e5+

90...b2?! 91.♞b4#

91.♘e5 b2 92.♞xb2 1-0

□ Alekhine Alexander

■ Nimzowitsch Aron

San Remo 1930

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 ♔b4 4.e5 c5 5.♔d2 ♘e7 6.♘b5 ♔xd2+ 7.♞xd2 0-0 8.c3 b6 9.f4 ♔a6 10.♘f3 ♞d7 11.a4 ♘bc6

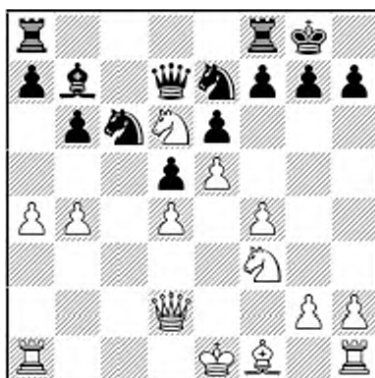


White has more space and he can create an initiative on both flanks, as the centre is blocked.

12.b4! cxb4

12...c4 might be more natural, but it would give White a free hand on the kingside after something like 13.♖d6 or 13.♘a3 ♘d8 14.♘c2.

13.cxb4 ♗b7 14.♘d6



14...f5?!

Black had to opt for 14...a5 15.b5 (15.♗b5 axb4 16.0-0 looks also good) 15...♘b4 16.♗d3 f5 17.0-0+ =, but of course his position would be rather unpleasant. Black would be passive, squeezed and without a proper plan...

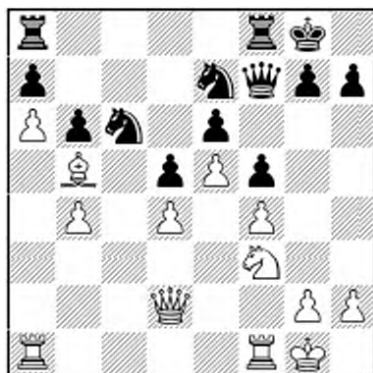
15.a5! ♘c8

15...bxa5 16.b5 ♘d8 17.♖xa5±

16.♘xb7 ♜xb7 17.a6! ♜f7

After 17...♜e7 White will complete his development with
18.♙b5! ♘xb4? 19.♖b1+-

18.♙b5! ♘8e7 19.0-0



White has completed his development and is ready to take action on the open c-file. Meanwhile Black is passive and has to adopt a wait-and-see policy.

19...h6 20.♜fc1 ♜fc8 21.♜c2!



21...♜e8?!

Good or bad, I think that Black should try to unpin the c-file, so
21...♘d8 should be tried: 22.♜ac1 ♜xc2 23.♜xc2 ♘g6 (23...♜c8?

24. ♖xc8! [24. ♔d7? ♖xc2 25. ♗xc2 ♘g6 26. ♗c7 ♘f8 27. ♗xa7 ♘c6
28. ♗xb6 ♗xd7] 24... ♗xc8 25. ♗c3 ♘e7 26. ♗c7+-) 24. ♗c1±

22. ♖ac1

22. ♖a3! ♖c7 23. ♖ac3 ♖ac8 24. ♗c1 was more accurate, according to A. Alekhine.

22... ♖ab8 23. ♗e3 ♖c7 24. ♖c3 ♗d7 25. ♖1c2 ♘f8 26. ♗c1 ♖bc8



A depressing picture! This is what I call full domination; White has only to bring the bacon home...

27. ♔a4!

With the deadly threat 28.b5.

27... b5 28. ♔xb5 ♘e8 29. ♔a4 ♘d8 30. h4!

Black will soon run out of moves — a zugzwang and end of the game.

30... ♗e8

30...g6 31. ♘h2 h5 32. ♘h3 creates an impressive picture!

31. b5

Heavy material losses ensue so Black resigned. An impressive and classical example of full domination...

1-0

□ Beliaevsky Alexander

■ Bareev Evgeny

Minsk 1987

1.d4 f5 2.c4 ♘f6 3.g3 e6 4.♗g2 d5 5.♘f3 c6 6.0-0 ♗d6 7.♗f4 0-0
8.♗xd6 ♜xd6 9.♜c2 b6 10.♘a3 ♘a6 11.♞ac1 ♗b7 12.cxd5 cxd5
13.♘b5 ♜e7 14.♜a4 ♘e8 15.♞c3 ♘ec7 16.♘xc7 ♘xc7



Obviously White's enjoys the initiative on the queenside (and the weak e5-square) and looks like he will also fully dominate on the c-file. But a more detailed examination shows that Black can probably defend. So, White thought to open a second front on the kingside — his spatial advantage helps!

17.h3!

An excellent idea, as White's gets nearly nowhere with 17.♘e5 ♜fc8 18.♞fc1 ♘e8+=

17...♞fc8?!

The battle-field will be turned to the kingside, so Black might have chosen 17...a6! planning ...♘b5-d6.

18.g4 g6

White has a nice advantage after 18...♗e8 19.♖xc8 ♘xc8 20.gxf5 exf5 21.♗e5, as the black d-pawn has turned into a weak one.

19.gxf5 gxf5



20.♗e5

White's idea is revealed — the white rooks will deal with the newly-opened g-file!

20...♗e8 21.♖g3+ ♜h8 22.♜h2! ♗f6 23.♖g1

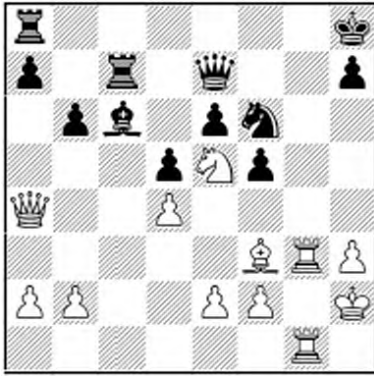
White's attack on the black king via the g-file is growing — in the meanwhile the black rooks are doing nothing!

23...♖c7

The 7th rank needs protection. After 23...a6? 24.♚b4! White wins material: 24...♖c7 (24...♚xb4?? 25.♗f7#) 25.♚xb6+-

24.♗f3 ♘c6

After 24...♗e4 25.♗xe4 fxe4 26.♚xa7! wins on the spot!



25. ♖b3!

The obvious 25. ♘xc6?! is not the best, as after 25... ♖d7 (25... ♖e8 26. ♖c1 ♖ac8 27. ♖a3 ♖xc6 28. ♖xc6 ♖xc6 29. ♖xa7+-) 26. ♖c1 ♖ac8 White loses some of his advantage!

25... ♖g8

There is hardly any defence for Black. For example 25... ♙e8 26. ♖e3 ♖f8 27. ♖g5+- or 25... f4 26. ♖g7 ♖xg7 27. ♖xg7 ♙xg7 28. ♖a3+-

26. ♙h5?!

26. ♖xg8+ ♘xg8 27. ♙h5 was more accurate.

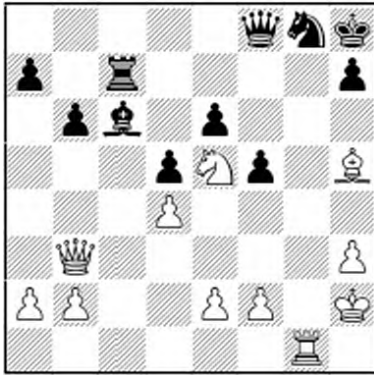
26... ♖f8?!

Black should be more stubborn and try to continue the fight with 26... ♖f8. Then White would have to find 27. ♖g7 ♖xg7 28. ♖xg7 ♙xg7 29. ♖g3+ ♙h8 30. ♘g6+ hxg6 31. ♖xc7 ♙e8 32. ♙f3 ♖f7±

27. ♖xg8+

Back to the 'correct' continuation!

27... ♘xg8



28. ♖g3

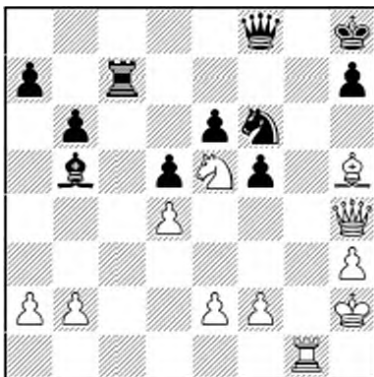
The text is winning, but White also had 28. ♖a3! ♜xa3 29. bxa3 h6 (29... ♙b5 30. ♜f7+-) 30. ♝c1 ♞e7 31. ♙e8+-

28... ♙b5

Alternatives like 28... ♙e8 29. ♙xe8 ♜xe8 30. ♞d7!+- or 28... ♞f6 29. ♞g6+ hxg6 30. ♜xc7 ♞xh5 31. ♜xc6+- prove White's decisive advantage.

29. ♜h4! ♞f6

29... ♝g7 30. ♝xg7 ♞xg7 31. ♜g5+- or 29... ♙e8 30. ♙xe8 ♜xe8 31. ♞g6+ ♞g7 32. ♞e7+-



30. ♙f7!

and Black resigned, as the coming knight-check on g6 is decisive.

1-0

CONCLUSION

Although the domination factor doesn't look like a necessity, sometimes it's the only way to maintain or to gain an advantage.

A good chess player doesn't get fooled; he tries to find out where exactly his chances exist — not where he would 'like' them to...

INITIATIVE

With the term initiative we tend to describe the possibility of creating direct or indirect threats that cannot be ignored.

The player with the initiative thus puts his opponent in the position of having to use his turns responding to threats rather than making his own.

A player with the initiative will often seek to manoeuvre his pieces into more and more advantageous positions as he launches successive attacks.

The player who lacks the initiative may seek to gain (or regain it) through counterattack.

The concept of tempo is closely tied to initiative, as players can acquire the initiative or buttress it by gaining a tempo.

The initiative is important in all phases of the game, but more important in the endgame than in the middlegame and more important in the middlegame than in the opening (Euwe & Meiden 1966). Having the initiative puts the opponent on the defensive.

GM Larry Evans considers four elements of chess: pawn structure, force (material), space (controlling the centre and piece mobility), and time.

As time is measured in tempi, having a time advantage is having the initiative. The initiative should be kept as long as possible and only given up for another advantage.

The following game is full of memories. It comes from the annual team championship of the Balkan countries (men, women, junior and girls sections), which was quite popular in those days.

It was played in the men's section (Romania vs. Yugoslavia) and I was lucky to watch it live, as I was playing in the junior section at that time — I was just 18 years old...

Mihai Suba was a great Romanian GM with a lot of successes and an original way of playing and thinking.

He loved and supported the 'Hedgehog' in times where

everybody else neglected it. He wrote some books, among others the must-read 'Dynamic Chess Strategy' — an excellent and unique book!

- Suba Mihai
- Cebalo Miso
- Skopje 1984

1.c4 c5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♗c3 ♗c6 4.g3 d5 5.cxd5 ♗xd5 6.♙g2 e6 7.0-0 ♙e7 8.d4 0-0



9.♞b1!?

A novelty at that time, in a very well-known position. 9.♗xd5 or 9.e4, are the main moves, even after the text. White is playing a useful move in case Black goes for a ...♗xc3 exchange and also protects the b2-pawn, which is in need in some variations.

9...cxd4?!

I do not like the text move — White scores quite well after it. An interesting alternative is 9...♞a5 10.♙d2!? (10.♞d2!? cxd4 11.♗xd4 ♙b4 [11...♗xd4? 12.♗xd5!+-] 12.♗b3 ♞a6 13.♞d1+=) 10...♗xc3 (10...cxd4?! 11.♗xd4 ♗xc3 12.♙xc3 ♞xa2 13.♗xc6 bxc6 14.♙xc6 ♞b8 15.♞d4 ♙f6 16.♞f4 ♞b6 [16...e5 17.♙xe5±] 17.♙xf6 gxf6 18.♞g4+ ♗h8 19.♞f3 ♗g7 20.b4±) 11.♙xc3 ♞xa2 12.♗d2 ♞a6 (12...cxd4 13.♞a1 ♞xa1 14.♞xa1 dxc3 15.bxc3±) 13.dxc5 ♞b5 14.b4 a5! 15.bxa5 ♞xc5 16.♞c1 e5 (16...♗xa5? 17.♞a1 ♙d8 18.♞b2 f6 19.♞fc1+-) 17.♞b2+= In all the above variations we can easily

observe how well the white rook stands on the b-file.

10. ♖xd4 ♜xd4

10...♙f6 11.♖xc6 bxc6 12.♚c2+ is pleasant for White, but probably playable. Bad is 10...♞db4?! 11.♞f3 (11.♙e3!?) 11...♚xd1 12.♚xd1 ♙f6 13.♞g5 ♜e8 14.♞ge4 ♙e5 15.♙f4 ♙xf4 16.gxf4± Suba,M-Lauridsen,J Coria del Rio 2002.

11. ♚xd4 ♙f6

After 11...♞xc3 12.♚xc3± or 12.bxc3±, White has all the pressure on the queenside. The 'Catalan' bishop on g2 is a monster!

12. ♚c4 ♞xc3

12...♙xc3 13.bxc3 ♞b6 14.♚c5± leaves White with the bishop pair and good pressure on the queenside — see the white rook on b1...

13. bxc3



The opening phase has gone very much in White's favour, as Black has failed to solve his development problems on the queenside. I think that Black should have avoided variations where the b1-rook would become useful; which means to be found on an open or semi-open file!

13... ♚a5

A normal ‘attacking’ move. 13...♖b8? is a bad try after 14.♙a3 ♙e7 (14...♞e8 15.♞fd1 ♙d7 16.♙xb7+-) 15.♞fd1 ♞e8 16.♞c7+-

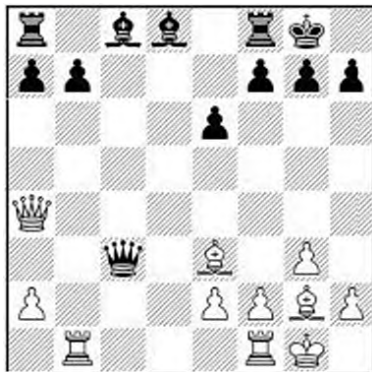
14.♙e3!

Completing development — the c3-pawn is not as important as the open files for the rooks are.

14...♞xc3 15.♞a4

15.♞xc3 was also possible: 15...♙xc3 16.♙xb7! (16.♞fc1?! ♙a5 17.♙xb7 ♙xb7 18.♞xb7 ♙b6!)=) 16...♙xb7 17.♞xb7 a5 18.♞c1 ♞fc8 19.♞a7! ♞ab8 20.♙b6! and the black a-pawn will fall. But it is difficult to calculate this variation in full, especially White’s last two moves. White’s text is based mostly on general concepts than concrete calculation — what we call intuitional moves.

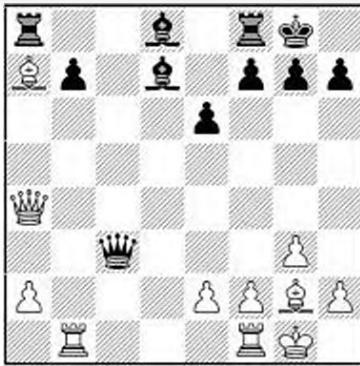
15...♙d8!



16.♙xa7?!

A difficult move. After 16.♞fc1 ♞a5 17.♞xa5 ♙xa5, we have already seen 18.♙xb7 ♙xb7 19.♞xb7 ♙b6! =, but good was 16.♞fd1 ♞a5 17.♞c4 ♙b6 18.♞b5 ♞a3 19.♞d3 ♞e7 20.♙xb6 axb6 21.♞xb6 += The text move looks scary, as it is self-pinning White’s bishop, but it is based on concrete calculation — can’t live without it!

16...♙d7?!



Concrete calculation is not always precise! Here bad was 16...♖c7?! 17.♗d4 ♕a5 18.♙c5 ♜e8 19.a3± or 16...♗a5?! 17.♗xa5 ♙xa5 18.♙c5 ♜d8 19.♙xb7 ♙xb7 20.♞xb7 ♜d2 21.♞fb1! h5 22.♞7b2± but Black could go for 16...♗d2! 17.♙xb7 (17.♞xb7 ♙xb7 18.♙xb7 ♞xa7 19.♗xa7 ♗xe2=; 17.♙f3 ♙d7 18.♗d4 ♗xd4 19.♙xd4 ♞xa2 20.♞xb7=) 17...♙xb7 18.♞xb7 ♗xe2 19.♗d7! ♗c2! or 19...♗xa2 20.♙c5 ♙f6 21.♙xf8 ♞xf8 and it is difficult to see how White will get something more than the better side of a draw.

17.♗xd7 ♞xa7 18.♞fc1

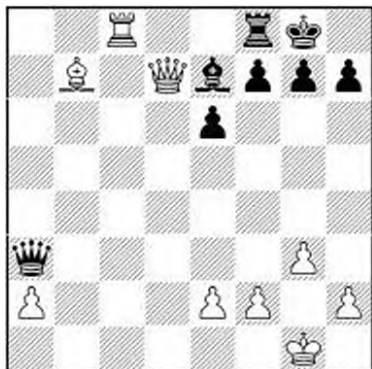


Why does White stand better? Well, it is about the harmonious co-operation of his pieces; look at Black's pieces, how 'isolated' they seem to be...

18...♗a5

18...♗f6 19.a4 (19.♞c2 ♗e7 20.♗xe7 ♙xe7 21.♞xb7±) 19...♗e7 20.♗xe7 ♙xe7 21.♞xb7 ♞xb7 22.♙xb7± or 18...♗a3 19.♞c8 ♙e7

20. ♖xb7 ♜xb7 21. ♙xb7±



...give rather unpleasant endgames, although the opposite-coloured bishops offer Black some hopes of survival.

19. ♜c8! b5?

19... ♖xa2? loses to 20. ♖d1+-, but maybe 19... ♜a8 was the lesser evil: 20. ♖xa8 ♖xa8 21. ♖d2±, as White wins the b7-pawn. But who wants to defend this unpleasant opposite-coloured bishop ending forever...



20. ♙b7!

Another self-pinning move, which was obviously missed by Black. Well, White is not a masochist who likes to pin his bishops around (remember 16. ♙xa7) — but it is important to preserve his queen's dominating position on d7.

20... ♙e7

Black's back rank is rather weak and this can be proven after
 20...b4 21.♖d1! ♔e7



22.♖dc1! (22.♖e8? ♔c5! 23.♗c8 g6 24.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 25.♖d8 ♗xd8
 26.♗xd8 ♖xb7 27.♔g2+) 22...♗g5 (22...♔d8 23.♖1c5 ♗b6 24.♖b5+-)
 23.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 24.♖c8+-

21.♖bc1!



21...♗b4

On 21...♔d8 White wins with 22.♖b8! (22.♖d1?! ♔e7 23.♖e8 ♔b4)
 22...♗a3 23.♖cc8 ♔e7 24.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 25.♖c8! (with the idea ♖c7 —
 Black's 7th rank is weak as well!) 25...♗b4 26.♔g2 ♖xa2 (26...♗e4+
 27.♔h3!+-) 27.♖c7+-

22.♖1c7! ♖xc8 23.♗xc8+! ♔f8 24.♗e8! h6

Or 24...♗b1+ 25.♔g2 ♗g6 (25...♖xb7 26.♗xf7+ ♔h8 27.♗xf8#)

26. ♖c8+-

25. ♖xf7+ ♔h8



26. ♖g6

26. ♖c8 ♖b1+ 27. ♔g2 ♖e4+ 28. f3! ♖xe2+ 29. ♔h3 ♖f1+ 30. ♔g4 ♖a4+ 31. f4+-

26... ♖a4 27. ♖c8

Black resigned, as White's threats (Qf7 — ♔e4) are too strong.

1-0

Approximately a month later the Thessaloniki 1984 Olympiad started. Both M.Suba and I participated — for me this was my 2nd Olympiad and the first as a player!

And again the great Romanian GM played his favourite idea, against the board one Icelandic player at that event, Margeir Petursson:

□ Suba Mihai

■ Petursson Margeir

Thessaloniki 1984

1. c4 c5 2. ♘f3 ♘f6 3. ♘c3 e6 4. g3 ♘c6 5. ♗g2 ♗e7 6. 0-0 0-0 7. d4 d5 8. cxd5 ♘xd5 9. ♖b1



9...♙f6

Black was obviously a bit better prepared, trying an interesting continuation.

10.♘xd5 ♚xd5

10...exd5!? is interesting: 11.dxc5 ♙f5 12.♖a1 ♜e8 13.e3 ♙e4 14.♗b3 ♗a5 15.♙d2 ♚xc5 16.♞ac1 ♗b6 17.♙c3 ♗xb3 18.axb3 ♙xc3 19.♞xc3 ♞ad8 20.♞d1 ½-½ Eingorn,V-Lputian,S Minsk 1987.

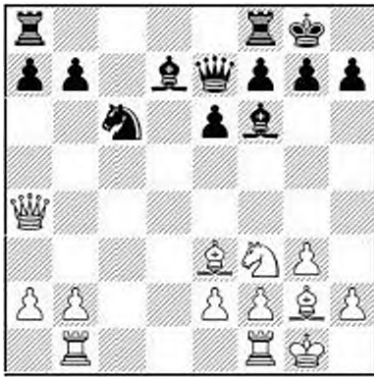
11.dxc5 ♗xc5

11...♗xa2?! 12.♙g5!± is nice for White; his knight can land on d6 in some variations!

12.♗a4!

Again White prepares strong pressure on the queenside.

12....♙d7 13.♙e3 ♗e7



Now it looks like Black has completed his development. The open-centre nature of the position could mean that after a few exchanges the draw will be in hand.

14. ♖e4!

Although White could also play 14. b4!? or 14. ♖fc1, I like this centralisation move.

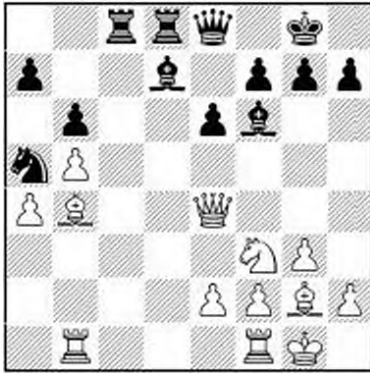
14... ♜ac8 15. b4

Probably better than 15. h4 b6 16. ♖fd1 ♜fd8 17. ♔g5 h6 18. ♔xf6 ♜xf6 19. ♜d2 ♔e8 20. ♜bd1 ♜xd2 21. ♜xd2 ♜d8 22. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 23. ♔e5 ♔xe5 24. ♖xe5 ♜c8 25. ♔f3 ♔c6 ½-½ Olafsson, H-Miles, A Reykjavik 1986.

15... b6 16. ♔d2!

A difficult move — retreating is not in the human nature — but White understood that the bishop should come to the a3-f8 diagonal after he pushes his b-pawn.

16... ♜fd8 17. b5 ♔a5 18. ♔b4 ♜e8 19. a4



19...a6?!

19...♙c3?! wasn't satisfactory either: 20.♙xa5! (20.♙xc3 ♖xc3 21.♖fd1 [21.♜g5 f5 {21...g6? 22.♗h4 h5 23.♜e4+-} 22.♗e5 ♖c5 23.♗a1 ♗e7=] 21...♖c4 22.♗e5∞ ♖xa4? 23.♗c7 ♜c4 24.♖d4+-) 20...♙xa5 (20...bxa5 21.♜e5 ♙xe5 22.♗xe5±) 21.♜e5±, but probably OK was 19...♖c4! 20.♗e3 e5 21.♜d2 ♖d4∞.

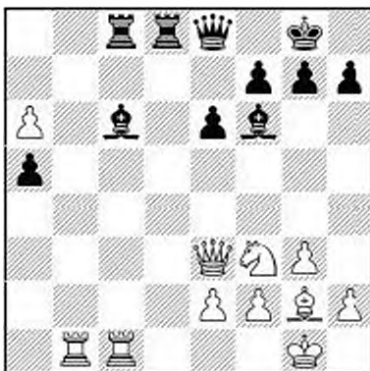
20.♙xa5!

A difficult move again. Exchanging a good bishop for an 'edged' knight is not your daily advice, but here there is a concrete reason: White's passed a-pawn will be quicker.

20...bxa5 21.bxa6

Also strong is 21.b6.

21...♙xa4 22.♖fc1 ♙c6 23.♗e3



23...g6?

A critical mistake. Black had to opt for 23...♖a8 24.a7 ♕d5 25.♖c7, where White stands better but nothing is clear-cut yet.

24.a7 a4 25.♗e5!

Further exchanges will help the more advanced white a-pawn.

25...♙xg2 26.♖xc8! ♖xc8 27.♔xg2 a3

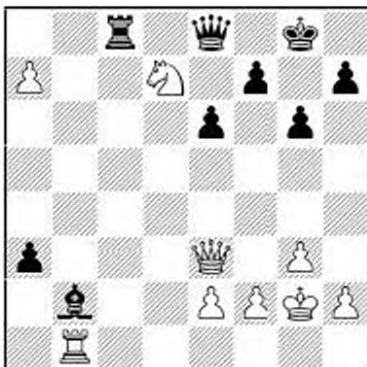
27...♙xe5 28.♖xe5 a3 loses to 29.♖b8 ♖c6+ 30.f3 a2 31.♖xc8+ ♖xc8 32.♖b8+-

28.♗d7!

White must be careful! 28.♖b8? would be a blunder: 28...♖xb8 29.♗d7 ♙b2! 30.axb8=♖ ♖xb8 31.♗xb8 a2 32.♖a7 a1=♖ 33.♖xa1 ♙xa1=

28...♙b2

The knight cannot be taken: 28...♖xd7 29.♖b8 a2 30.a8=♖ ♖xb8 31.♖xb8+ ♔g7 32.♖a3! ♖d5+ (32...a1=♖ 33.♖af8#) 33.e4! ♖xe4+ 34.♔h3! ♖f5+ 35.g4+-



29.♖xa3?!

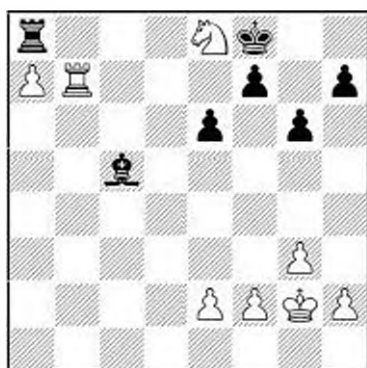
Spectacular, but clearer was 29.♖xb2! axb2 30.♗f6+ ♔f8 31.♖a3+ ♖e7 32.♗xh7+ ♔e8 (32...♔g7 33.♖xe7 b1=♖ 34.♗g5 ♖f5 35.e4 ♖f6

36. ♖b7 ♜c2 37. ♗xe6+ ♔h6 38. ♗f4+-) 33. ♕a4+ ♔d8 34. a8=♚ b1=♚
 35. ♖d4+ ♖d7 36. ♕a5+ ♜c7 37. ♖f6+ ♗e7 38. ♖xe7+ ♔xe7 39. ♖xc7+-

29... ♙xa3 30. ♗f6+ ♔f8?

Black should have tried to defend with 30... ♔h8! 31. ♗xe8 ♜a8
 32. ♖b7 ♙c5 33. ♖b5 (33. ♖xf7!? ♖xe8 34. ♖b7 ♙xa7 35. ♖xa7⊥; 33. ♖c7
 ♙xa7 34. ♖xf7) 33... ♙xa7 34. ♗d6 ♖b8!? (34... ♔g8 35. ♖a5 ♖d8 36. ♗b7
 ♖a8 [36... ♙b6 37. ♖a6+-; 36... ♖d7 37. ♖xa7 ♔g7 38. e4+-] 37. ♖a6 ♔f8
 38. ♗a5 ♔e8 39. ♗c6+-) 35. ♖xb8+ ♙xb8 36. ♗xf7+±

31. ♗xe8 ♜a8 32. ♖b7! ♙c5



33. ♗f6! ♔g7

33... ♖xa7 34. ♗d7+ ♔g7 35. ♗xc5+- or 33... ♙xa7 34. ♗xh7+ ♔g8
 35. ♗g5+-

34. ♗e4 ♙xa7

34... ♙d4 35. ♖b4! ♙xa7 36. ♖a4+-

35. ♗g5

White wins a good pawn and the case of knight vs. bishop with pawns on one side is quite favourable for him.

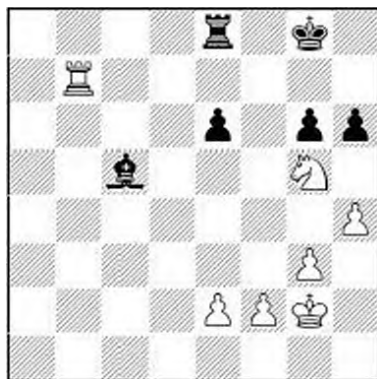
35... ♔g8

35... h6? 36. ♗xe6+ ♔g8 37. ♗c7+-

36. ♖xf7 ♔c5 37. ♗g5 ♜e8 38. h4!

38. ♗xh7? ♔e7.

38...h6



39. ♗f7!

The knight is quite a tricky piece — a second pawn falls...

39... ♔f8 40. ♗e5 g5 41. hxg5 hxg5 42. ♗f3 ♜e7 43. ♝b5

Black resigned: 43...g4 44. ♝g5+ ♜g7 45. ♝xg7+ ♔xg7 46. ♗h2.

1-0

Sacrificing material — mostly pawn(s) — is a common way to create an initiative and take over the driver's seat.

Well, that doesn't automatically mean that you will cross the finishing line first, but your chances are nevertheless greater.

□ Portisch Lajos

■ Matanovic Aleksandar

Adelaide 1971

24... ♗f6



White's advantage is indisputable. He is better co-ordinated and has two advanced pawns. The only technical problem seems to be that both pawns are under attack.

25.h6?

In general this should be a very strong move, if not for 25.hxg6 hxg6 26.♖d2±, with the threat ♜e7. And even better was 25.♖d2! ♜xh5 (25...♙d5 26.♜g5! ♖xd6 27.hxg6 hxg6 28.♞d1 ♞d8 29.♜e4 ♜xe4 30.♙xe4+-; 25...♜e4 26.♖f4+-) 26.♜e5 ♙xg2 27.♙xg2, when Black is helpless against threats such as ♜c6, ♖d5 or d7. With his text move, White goes for a long-term positional sacrifice, based on the black king's weaknesses and his own activity.

25...♖xd6

Black cannot live with this nasty pawn on d6. The main alternative was 25...♙xf3? when White can introduce a nice combinative line: 26.d7! ♖xd7 (26...♙xg2 27.♖xf6!+-) 27.♖xf6 ♖d4 28.♞e5!+-



26. ♖e5!

Another tactical finesse, forcing the black bishop to retreat.

26... ♗e8

Again 26... ♗xg2? allows a strong tactic: 27. ♖d7! ♜xd7 28. ♗xf6 ♜d4 29. ♗e5!+-

27. ♖g4! ♖h5



Black's position looks suspicious, but only concrete calculation will reveal the truth.

28. ♗d5!

White would love to play 28. ♗e5? but this fails to 28... ♜d1+ 29. ♗e1 (29. ♖h2? ♜xg4 30. ♗xh5 ♜xh5+ 31. ♖g1 ♜xh6+) 29... ♜xe1+ 30. ♗xe1 f5=+

28... ♗d7

It is understandable that Black wants to kick away the nasty white knight. Bad would be 28... ♜xd5? 29. ♖f6+ ♖xf6 30. ♗xf6+- or 28... ♜f8? 29. ♖f6+ ♖xf6 30. ♗xf6 b5 (30... ♜xh6? 31. ♗xe8+ ♗xe8 32. ♖xf7+ ♖f8 33. ♗d5#) 31. ♗e7 c4 32. ♗xa7 cxb3 33. axb3+-, but interesting was 28... ♗c6!? 29. ♗xc6 (29. ♗e5? ♗xd5 30. ♗xh5 ♖f8! 31. ♗xd5 ♜xd5 32. ♗h8+ ♖e7 33. ♗xb8 ♜d1+ 34. ♖h2 ♜xg4 35. ♗xa7+ ♖e8=) 29... ♜xc6 30. ♗e7 ♗d8 31. ♗e1!±

29. ♖e5?



This natural move spoils the game! Stronger was 29. ♖d1! ♙e6 (29... ♗e7? 30. ♙xf7+! ♗xf7 31. ♘e5+-) 30. ♘f6+ ♘xf6 31. ♗xf6 ♗f8 32. ♙xe6 fxe6 33. ♗xe6+ ♗f7 34. ♗xf7+ ♙xf7 35. ♖d7+ ♙f6 (35... ♙g8 36. ♗xa7+-) 36. ♗xa7 g5 37. ♖g7! when Black is in deep trouble: 37... ♗a8 (37... b5 38. ♗xh7 ♙g6 39. ♗c7+-) 38. ♗xh7 ♙g6 (38... ♗xa2 39. ♗b7 b5 40. ♗xb5 ♙g6 41. ♗b6+-) 39. ♗b7 ♙xh6 40. ♗xb6+-

29... ♙xg4 30. ♗xh5 ♗f8 31. ♖e5 ♗xh6 32. ♖e7



A critical point of the game...White has sacrificed a second pawn and his activity is great.

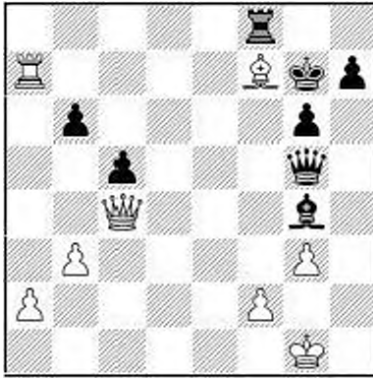
32... ♗f8?!

A better way to 'calm' White down was to return the won material: 32... ♗g7! 33. ♙xf7+ ♙h8 34. ♗xg7+ ♙xg7 35. ♗xa7 ♙f6=

33. ♖c4!

A good double attack!

33... ♗g5 34. ♕xf7+ ♔g7 35. ♝xa7



And now the difference is obvious; the queens are still on the board and the black king is not secure.

35... ♔h6?

Black cracks. 35... ♗d2! was his only move to stay in the game: 36. ♔g2 (36. ♗d5 ♗xd5 37. ♕xd5+ ♔h6 38. ♔g2+=) 36... ♔d7! 37. ♗d5 ♔c6! 38. ♔g8+ ♖f7!! 39. ♝xf7+ ♔xg8 40. ♗xc6 ♔xf7= But this variation is not 'human' and cannot really be found over-the-board and with limited time...

36. ♔g8! ♝xg8 37. ♗xg8 ♗c1+ 38. ♔h2 ♕f3 39. ♗f8+

And Black resigned as he loses the bishop. 39... ♔g5 40. ♗xf3+- White had a forced mate as well: 39. ♝xh7+ ♔g5 40. ♗d8+ ♔f5 41. ♗d7+ ♔e5 42. ♝e7+ ♔f6 43. ♗d6+ ♔g5 44. ♝e5+ ♔h6 45. ♗f8+ ♔h7 46. ♝e7#

1-0

CONCLUSION

Initiative is the modern way to prevail, from the human point of view. One must not forget that when there is action, there is reaction; when there is attack, there is defence.

PREPARATION

Home preparation is a must in our modern times, much more than it was 20-30 years ago. And this is mainly due to computer engines and large databases, which offer an enormous amount of information which wasn't available beforehand.

Of course it is fine and even welcomed to be prepared in an original and very 'personal' way, as this could easily give you the upper hand.

At the end of the day, what really counts after a pleasant opening outcome, are the classical values and the way of handling the middlegame according to common knowledge as proved by the great past masters.

□ Short Nigel

■ L'Ami Erwin

London 2009

1.e4 c6 2.♘c3 d5 3.♘f3



An interesting line to face the never-ending modern lines of the 'Caro-Kann Defence'. I would call it a speciality of N.Short, as he has played it quite a lot, introducing new and interesting ideas.

3...♙g4

A standard way of playing. A very complicated line arises after 3...♘f6 4.e5 ♘e4 5.♘e2 ♗b6 6.d4 c5.

4.h3 ♗xf3

I do not like the idea of giving-up the bishop pair so easily. More combative is 4...♗h5 5.d4!? (This is a rare continuation and not without reason. 5.g4 ♗g6 6.exd5 cxd5 7.♗b5+ ♖c6 8.♗e5 ♜c8 is another theoretical discussion....) 5...e6 (5...dxe4?! 6.♗xe4 ♗xf3 7.♜xf3 ♜xd4 8.♗e3 ♜xb2 9.♗c4 ♜b4+ 10.♗d2 ♗f6?! [10...e6 11.♞b1 ♜e7 12.♗e4♞] 11.♞b1 ♜d6 12.♞xb7± Short,N-Adianto,U Internet 2000) 6.♗d3 ♗f6 (6...dxe4 7.♗xe4 ♗d7 followed by 8...♗gf6 is a solid option. Black's position is slightly worse, but free of weaknesses) 7.e5! ♗fd7 8.g4 ♗g6 9.♗xg6 hxg6 10.♗e2 c5 11.c3 ♗c6 12.♗f1+= Short,N-Postny,E Kolkata 2009.

5.♜xf3 ♗f6 6.♗e2



6...dxe4

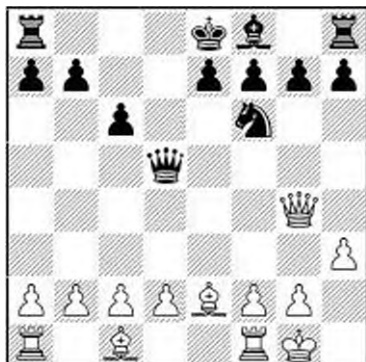
Solid is 6...e6, with more-or-less equal chances, although I would prefer to play White's position after 7.0-0 d4 (7...dxe4 8.♗xe4 ♗xe4 9.♜xe4 ♗d7 10.d4 ♗f6 11.♜e3 ♗d6 12.c4 0-0 13.b3 ♜e7 14.a3 e5 15.♗b2 ♜fe8 16.dxe5 ♗xe5 17.♗xe5 ♜xe5 18.♜xe5 ♜xe5 19.♗f3 ♗f8= Short,N-Anand,V Merida 2001) 8.♗b1 ♗bd7 9.d3 ♗d6 10.♗d1 0-0 11.♜e2 e5 12.c3∞ Short,N-Adianto,U Internet 2000.

7.♗xe4 ♗xe4 8.♜xe4 ♜d5

I think that Black has to go for this. After 8...♗d7 9.0-0 e6, White can play 10.b4! ♗f6 11.♜c4 ♗e7 12.b5 cxb5 13.♜xb5+ ♜d7 14.♞b1

♙xb5 15.♙xb5+ ♔d8 16.d4 ♕c7 17.c4+= Frolov,A-Horvath,C Siofok 1990.

9.♙g4 ♘d7 10.0-0 ♘f6



11.♙a4

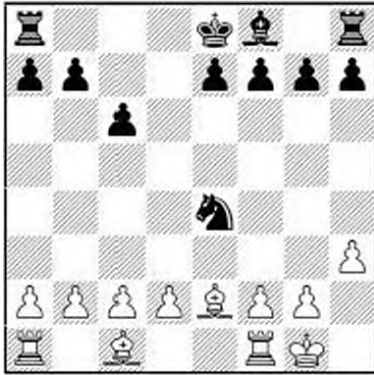
White has tried two other moves here: 11.♙g3 e6 12.♙f3 ♙d6 13.♙xd6 ♙xd6 14.b4! a6 15.a3 ♕e7 16.♙b1 ♖ac8 17.♙e1 g5 18.d3 ♗hg8 19.♙b2 ♘d5 20.g3+= Mitkov,N-Adamson,R Wheeling 2012 and 11.♙b4 ♙d7 12.d3 e6 13.♙h4 ♙e7 14.♙g3 0-0-0 15.♙e3 c5 16.b4+= Borosova,Z-Hladik,L Banska Stiavnica 2013. In both cases Black can improve.

11...♙e4

Black insists on exchanging the queens. After 11...e6 12.d4 ♙e7 13.♙d1 0-0 14.c4 ♙d7 15.♙e3 ♖fd8 16.♙ac1 Czebe,A-Dors,R Slovakia 2011, White enjoys a very pleasant bishop pair middlegame, where the queens being on board cannot be to his disadvantage.

12.♙xe4 ♘xe4

In this endgame White enjoys a pleasant advantage due to his bishop pair and the possibility to set-up the pawn structure as he pleases. Maybe Black can hold, but in my opinion only if you are a modern engine — in human practice Black will more-or-less lose, especially if he is the underdog!



13. ♖e1!

A very tricky and elastic move!

13...g6

What else? If 13...e6? then 14. ♗h5! ♘f6 15. ♖xe6+ ♗e7 16. ♖e5± and after 13...♘f6 White will go for 14.b4! expanding on the queenside and preparing the b5 advance, enlarging the battlefield of his light-squared bishop — remember that Black is missing his!

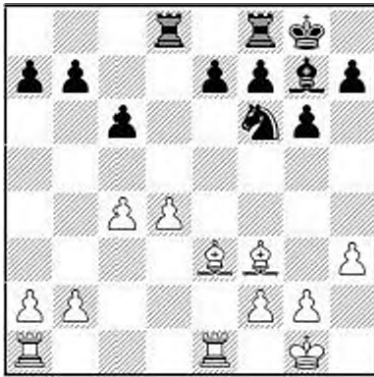
14.d4!

White decides to take-up the centre.

14...♗g7 15. ♗f3 ♘f6 16.c4 ♖d8

Black has no choice, as 16...e6? fails to 17.d5± Keep in mind that White would love to exchange the central pawns, as this would enlarge the battlefield and the domination of his bishop pair.

17. ♗e3 0-0



18.♞ad1

The classical value of centralisation! Another, hypermodern, way of playing is with 18.♞ab1!? ♞d7 19.b4 ♞c8 20.a4+=

18...e6 19.g4!

150 years ago W.Steinitz taught us the idea of restriction in similar positions with the bishop pair. The modern chess player doesn't have to be so 'creative'; just to follow the orders of his great predecessors, adding his own 'spices'...

19...h6 20.h4

White simply wants to kick the black knight away from control of the d5-square, so his future d5 advance will be easier and more effective.

20...♞fe8

A passive way to defend. I feel that 20...h5!? is more combative: 21.gxh5 (maybe the primitive 21.g5 is good: 21...♞g4 22.♙xg4 hxg4 23.♚g2 ♞d7 24.♞d2 ♞fd8 25.♞ed1 f5 26.gxf6 ♙xf6 27.♚g3, when White wins a pawn, but it is not easy to convert) 21...♞xh5 (21...gxh5 22.♚g2 ♞g4 23.d5 ♞xe3+ 24.♞xe3 cxd5 25.cxd5 exd5 26.♙xd5+=) 22.d5 exd5 23.cxd5 cxd5 24.♙xa7 (24.♞xd5 ♞xd5 25.♙xd5 b6 26.b4 ♞d8 27.♙b3 ♞d7 28.♞c1+=) 24...♞a8 25.♙c5 ♞fc8 26.b4+=

21. ♖g2

White is in no hurry; anyway, Black has no counterplay and is doomed to passivity, which is not a good sign...

21... ♜d7?!

Making White's plans easier. 21... ♜d7 was a must, when White can go for 22.g5 hxg5 23.hxg5 ♜h5 24.♖h1 ♜ed8 25.♗h4, maintaining his pleasant advantage, which he still has to convert...

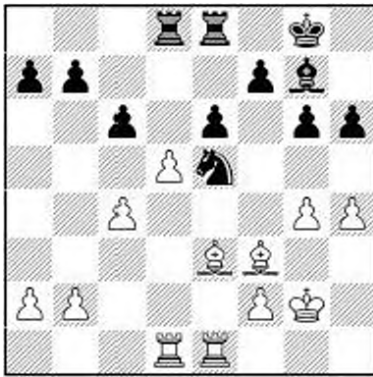


22.d5!

Direct and good, although the simple 22.b3 and then d5, might be even stronger!

22... ♜e5

Again this helps White. More stubborn was 22...exd5 23.cxd5 c5!? (23...cxd5 24.♖xd5±), although after 24.♗f4! ♜e5 25.b3±, White is still very much on top.



23.dxc6!

It was once said that the advantage of having the bishop pair is that at a certain moment you can return one of them! Well, not for free of course!

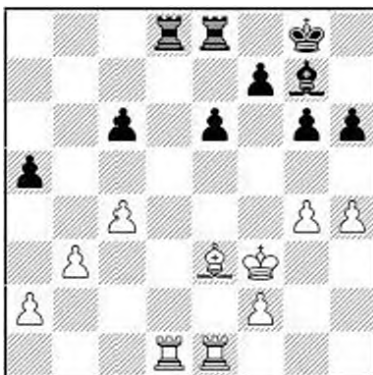
23...♘xf3

After 23...♘xc6 24.b3, White enjoys the bishop pair with an open centre and a flexible majority on the queenside; advantages which according to the classical principles should bring the point home...

24.♕xf3 bxc6 25.b3

White has exchanged his bishop pair advantage for a much-better pawn structure. Fair enough!

25...a5



26.g5!

This clever advance fixes the kingside pawn structure; Black would never get a passed pawn, so his three pawns equal White's two. In a more 'technical' way, theoretically White has won a pawn!

26...hxc5 27.hxc5 ♖a8

Black has no satisfactory move: 27...a4 28.b4 (28.♗xd8 ♗xd8 29.b4±) 28...♖b8 29.a3± or 27...♙c3 28.♗h1 a4 29.♗xd8 ♗xd8 30.♙e4± I think that the last line was his best chance to fight on, as now White also controls the d-file.

28.♗d7!

Penetration is nearly always a good idea and I know that N.Short loves it...

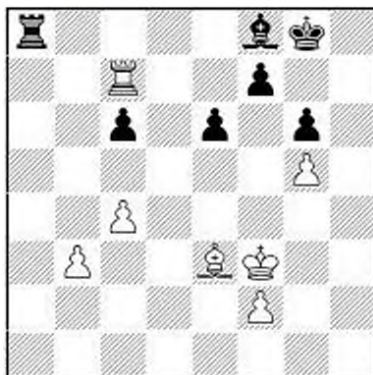
28...♙f8 29.♗ed1 a4 30.♗c7!

Not only attacking the pawn, but preparing the lethal ♗dd7.

30...axb3 31.axb3 ♗ec8

Black will also not survive after 31...♗ab8 32.♗dd7 ♗xb3 33.♗xf7 ♗c3 34.♗f6 ♗xc4 35.♗xg6+ ♙h8 36.♙e2!

32.♗dd7 ♗xc7 33.♗xc7



33...♖b8

Black could try to 'fish' with 33...c5!? 34.♗xc5 ♖b8 (34...♗xc5?! 35.♞xc5 ♖b8 36.♞b5+-), where White has to find 35.♗e3! (the rook ending after 35.♔e4 ♗xc5 36.♞xc5 ♖xb3, offers Black some survival chances) 35...♖xb3 36.♞c8+-

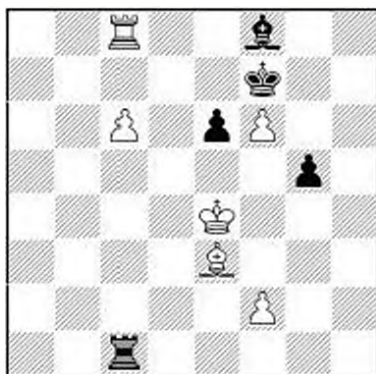
34.♞xc6 ♖xb3 35.♞c8

White has an 'extra' c-pawn and this carries the day.

35...f5

35...♔g7 36.♔e4 and ♗d4+ comes.

36.gxf6 ♔f7 37.♔e4 ♖b7 38.♗d4 g5 39.c5 ♖b1 40.c6 ♞c1 41.♗e3



Black resigned...Nigel Short has a classical education. Of course he is quite fond of tactics too (you can't live without them!) but primarily he knows why, how and when!

1-0

Of course there is the option of the 'other way around', which means following heavy analysed lines and trying to find some improvement or some new idea.

□ Ushenina Anna

■ Svidler Peter

Tromso 2013

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 d5 4.cxd5 ♘xd5 5.e4 ♘xc3 6.bxc3 ♙g7
7.♘f3 c5 8.♞b1 0-0 9.♙e2 cxd4 10.cxd4 ♚a5+ 11.♙d2 ♚xa2 12.0-0
♙g4 13.♙g5 h6 14.♙e3 ♘c6 15.d5 ♘a5 16.♞e1 ♙xf3



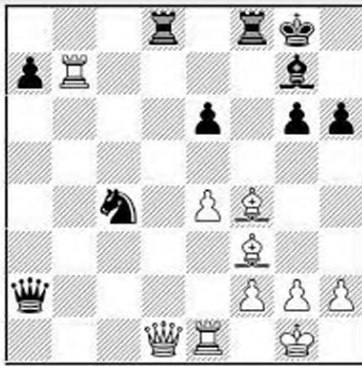
The FIDE ex-Women's World Champion is a hard worker and she constantly proves it. Some 'experts' criticised the FIDE system when she won the title, but very few know her abilities... Here 16...b6 17.♘d4 ♙d7 18.♞a1 (18.♙a6!+=) 18...♚b2 19.♞b1 ♚a2 20.♞a1 ♚b2 21.♞b1 ♚a2 ½-½ Radjabov,T-Svidler,P London 2013, had been played quite recently. Obviously P.Svidler didn't wish to enter a theoretical discussion...

17.♙xf3 ♘c4 18.♙f4 e5

18...g5 weakens Black's position: 19.♙g3 ♙e5?! (19...b6!? 20.♞e2 ♚a5 21.♙g4+=) 20.♞xb7± Esserman,M-Molner,M Saint Louis 2012.

19.dxe6 fxe6 20.♞xb7! ♞ad8

20...♞xf4? loses on the spot after 21.♚d7.



21.♞d7!

An obvious and prepared novelty, played quickly. Previously White had tried 21.♞c1 but after 21...♙b2! 22.♞xb2 ♘xb2 23.♙g3 ♞a5 24.♞f1 ♞d2 25.♞c6 ♞d7 26.♞c1 ♞d2 27.♞c6 ♞d7 28.♞c1 ♞d2 Black was able to draw (1/2-1/2) in Morozevich,A-Nepomniachtchi,I Loo 2013.

21...♞xd7

White holds a nice advantage after 21...♘b2 22.♞xg7+! ♔xg7 23.♞c2 ♞xf4 24.♞c7+ ♞f7 25.♞xd8.

22.♞xd7 ♘e5

Probably best. Again 22...♞xf4? is unsatisfactory: 23.♞xe6+ ♔h7 (23...♞f7 24.♞c1) 24.♞c1 ♙d4 25.♞d7+ ♙g7 26.♞d5 a5 27.♞xc4 (27.♞xc4? ♞xe4!-+) 27...♞xc4 28.♞xc4±

23.♙xe5 ♙xe5



24. ♖f1!

Everything according to home-preparation! The threat is ♕g4.

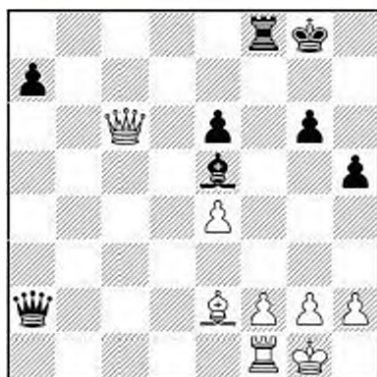
24...h5! 25. ♕e2!

But it seems that there is another way to activate the bishop!
Material is equal and the opposite coloured-bishops might help
the draw, but as long as queens are on the board the black king
remains quite weak...

25...♖f7

I think that Black should opt for 25...a5! 26. ♖c6 (26. ♕b5!? might
be better) 26...♕xh2+ 27. ♔xh2 ♖xe2 28. ♖xe6+ ♔g7 29. ♖e5+ ♔h6
30. ♔g1. White retains a small advantage due to the weaker black
king, but Black should be able to hold.

26. ♖c8+ ♖f8 27. ♖c6



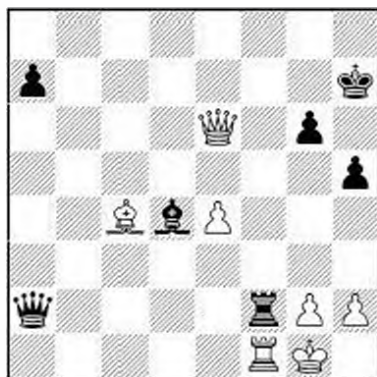
27...♕d4?!

Too optimistic! Again Black should opt for 27...♕xh2+ 28. ♔xh2
♖xe2 29. ♖xe6+ ♔g7 30. ♖e5+ ♔h6 31. ♔g1+=

28. ♕c4! ♖xf2?

A clear blunder. P.Svidler had to go for 28...♙xf2+ 29.♔h1 ♚a3! when after 30.♚d7! White has the upper-hand but he would still be very much in the game, but for no more than a draw in any case... His king remains rather weak and as it is well-known the opposite-coloured bishops always help the attack!

29.♚xe6+ ♔h7



30.♚d7+

and as Black loses a piece after 30...♚f7+ (30...♔h6 31.♙xa2+-) 31.♚xd4, he resigned! An easy game for A.Ushenina, as she knew her preparation, consisting of ideas, moves and variations. Well, not every day is such a bright one...

1-0

CONCLUSION

The modern chess player is obliged to constantly work on his opening preparation.

But, at the end of the day, he has to know what to do with his advantage; if any at all!

So, classical studies and tactical ability are very much in need; opening theory is a part of the preparation...

QUEEN EXCHANGE

The exchange of the queens is a natural fact in a huge amount of games.

But what about offering the exchange of the queens with the creation of doubled and weak pawns simultaneously?

Well, that doesn't sound logical but if there are fair compensatory factors, then everything looks well and justified!

Of course it is not an easy decision to proceed with exchanges that will strategically 'weaken' our position...

But chess is not an absolute game and we have to keep in mind that rules rule (!) but exceptions do the job!

Well, when it is about central pawns it all looks easier, as in M.Botvinnik's next game:

□ Botvinnik Mikhail

■ Sorokin Nikolay

Moscow 1931

19...e5



Black's position is without weaknesses, so if White is to achieve anything he should do it quickly. Black's queen is his best-placed piece, as it keeps White's aggressive advance a5 under control and protects the important e5-pawn, so a superlative defensive job is performed by this important piece.

20. ♖e3!

So, important pieces must be exchanged! If White hesitates with 20.h3 then after 20... ♗e6! 21. ♗xe6 fxe6, Black should feel fine, as he covers d5, opens the f-file, and contests the light squares. So, it is actually a fight to double the e-pawn and he who succeeds in doing so, is the happy one!

20... ♖xe3 21. fxe3 ♗g4 22. a5! ♜c8

After the alternative 22... ♞bd7 23.h3 ♗xf3 24.gxf3 ♜c5 (24... ♜fd8? 25. ♞d5!+-) 25. ♞d5 (25.b4 ♞e6 26. ♗xe6 fxe6 27. ♞a4 and ♜c5±) 25... ♞ab8 26. ♞xf6+ gxf6 27. ♞g2+ ♜h7 28. ♞d6± Black would not last long.

23. ♞c1!

Eyeing up c7 and threatening e5, so Black must cede his good bishop.

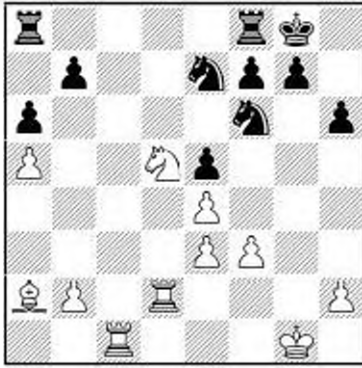
23... ♗xf3

23... ♞e8?! 24.h3 ♗h5 25. ♞d5! (25. ♞h4 ♞e7 26.g4 ♗g6 27. ♗d5±) 25... ♞xe4 26. ♞dc2 ♞cd6 27. ♞c7+-

24. gxf3

Now White's pawn structure is improved and his central doubled pawns are a considerable force. Add to that his strong bishop and you will understand why he holds the advantage.

24... ♞e7 25. ♞d5



25...♘c6?!

Good or bad, Black should have opted for 25...♗fxd5 26.♙xd5 (26.exd5? ♗f5 27.♕f2 ♗d6 [blockading!] 28.♖dc2 ♖fc8∞) 26...♗xd5 27.exd5 (27.♖xd5±) 27...♖fc8 28.♖dc2 ♖xc2 29.♖xc2 ♗d8 30.e4 ♗d7 31.♖c8+ ♕h7 32.♕f2± or 25...♗exd5 26.♙xd5 (26.exd5? ♖fc8 27.♖dc2 ♖xc2 28.♖xc2 ♗e8 29.♕f2 [29.d6 ♗d8] 29...♕f8 30.e4 ♕e7=) 26...♗xd5 27.exd5± which transposes to the above line.

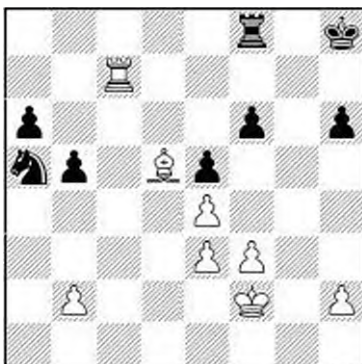
26.♗xf6+ gxf6 27.♖d7 ♖ab8

Or 27...♗xa5 28.♖cc7 ♗ad8 29.♙xf7+ ♕h8 30.♖xd8 ♖xd8 31.♙d5 (31.b4 ♗c6 32.♖xb7 ♗d1+ 33.♕f2 ♖b1 34.♕g3! ♖xb4 35.♖c7 ♖b6 36.♕g4+-) 31...b5 32.♕f2+-

28.♕f2!

Forcing Black's hand, as the threat 29.♖g1+ is lethal.

28...♗xa5 29.♖cc7 ♖bc8 30.♖xf7 ♖xc7 31.♖xc7+ ♕h8 32.♙d5 b5



Unfortunately for Black, 32...♖c6 33.♙xb7+- or 32...♙b8 33.♔g3 is curtains anyway.

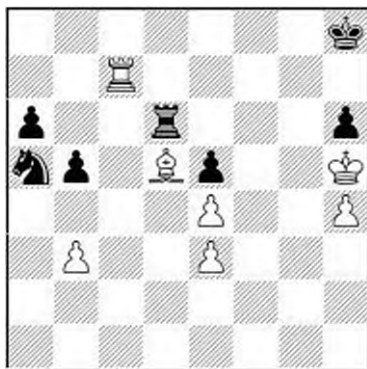
33.b3!

33.♙a7 ♖c4 34.b3 ♖b6 35.♙xa6 ♖xd5 36.exd5 also wins, but there is no need to allow the badly-placed a5-knight to be exchanged!

33...♙d8 34.♔g3

34.♙f7 also looks good: 34...♙d6 35.♔g3 ♖c6 36.♔g4 ♖b4 37.♔f5 ♖xd5 38.exd5 ♙xd5 39.♔g6 ♔g8 40.♙a7 ♔f8±, but there is no need to go after such pawns. The white king will deliver the decisive blow.

34...f5 35.♔h4 fxe4 36.fxe4 ♙d6 37.♔h5 ♙f6 38.h3 ♙d6 39.h4 ♙b6 40.♔g4 ♙f6 41.♙a7 ♙b6 42.♙e7 ♙d6 43.♙c7 ♙f6 44.♙a7 ♙b6 45.♙c7 ♙f6 46.♔h5 ♙d6



47.♙f7!

Creating a mating net. Black's days are numbered.

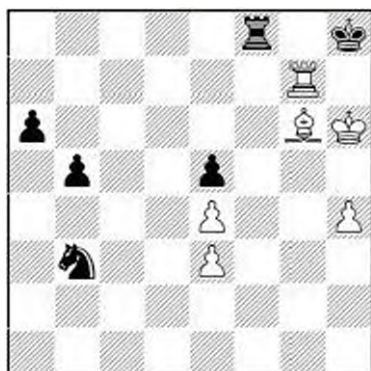
47...♙f6

47...♔g7 48.b4! wins the knight!

48.♙g6 ♖xb3 49.♔xh6 ♙f8

Or 49...♔g8 50.♔g5 ♙f1 (50...♙f8 51.♙f5 ♙e8 52.h5+-) 51.♙f5+-

50. ♖h7+ ♔g8 51. ♖g7+ ♔h8



52. ♙f7! ♖xf7 53. ♖xf7 ♔g8 54. ♔g6 ♚d2 55. ♖d7

1-0

The next example of V.Smyslov is even 'more' difficult:

□ Smyslov Vassily

■ Reshevsky Samuel Herman

The Hague/Moscow 1948

24... ♚b8



White seems to stand better. He has gained the bishop pair and he can put pressure on the weak, backward black d-pawn. Well all this sounds good for some future 'handling'... V.Smyslov thought about the present and he proceeded accordingly...

25. ♙xe6!

Giving up the strong bishop is very effective. White is using the temporary disconnection of Black's pieces to his advantage.

25...fxe6 26.♖h4! ♗d7

26...♗xh4 27.gxh4 is all the same.

27.♗d8+ ♗xd8 28.♙xd8 ♜d7 29.♙c7



White wins a good pawn and Black's days are numbered...

29...♜c5 30.♙xd6 ♜c8 31.♙b6 ♜a4 32.♙xe6 ♜xb2 33.♙xe5 ♜c4

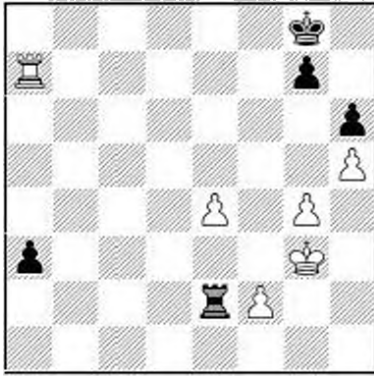
Or 33...♙xc3 34.♙d4 ♜c2 35.♙e7+-

34.♙e6 ♜xb6 35.♙xb6 ♜xc3 36.♙xb7 ♜c2

Fighting bravely, S.Reshevsky has avoided an immediate collapse and reached a rook endgame only a pawn down. However the white pawn mass on the kingside puts an end to Black's desperate resistance.

37.h4 ♜xa2 38.♙g2 a5 39.h5 a4 40.♙a7 ♙g8 41.g4 a3 42.♙g3 ♜e2

42...♜a1 43.♙f4 a2 44.♙f5+-



43.♔f3!

Of course White can't afford the pawn exchange. The a-pawn makes no difference.

43...♖a2 44.♔e3 ♕f8 45.f3 ♖a1 46.♔f4

Under the protection of his pawns the white king calmly goes into the enemy camp.

46...a2 47.e5 ♕g8 48.♔f5 ♖f1 49.♖xa2 ♖xf3+ 50.♔g6 ♕f8 51.♖a8+ ♕e7 52.♖a7+

1-0

Well, it is not always about material; strategy is above all:

□ Rogozenco Dorian

■ Morozevich Alexander

Istanbul 2000

21.g3



An about equal position at first sight, as White just needs to castle to feel comfortable.

21...♙f6!

A difficult move, as the black kingside pawn structure is shattered, but Black correctly evaluated that the positive sides are more important. 21...c5 22.0-0= was nothing to be afraid of.

22.♙xf6 gxf6



The weaknesses of Black's pawn structure are not important, because White can attack them only with the rook, but he defends them easily with the king. More important is that White is obliged to keep his king on e1 to defend the d2-square from Black's rook.

23.h5!

The only and best way to activate the rook.

23...h6!

It is too early for 23...♖d3 24.♙d1 (24.h6 ♜b3 25.♞h4 ♞xb2 26.♞d4 ♔f8=) 24...♙b3 25.♔e2 ♙c4 26.♔e1 ♙b3 (26...♞d5 27.♞h4+=) 27.♔e2=

24.♞h4! c5!

24...♞d3 25.♞d4! ♞b3 26.♞d2=



25.♙e2?!

White relaxed too early, thinking that he had averted the troubles. As is often the case, he needed to play another accurate move for that: 25.b4! = Not so good is 25.♙g4 f5 26.♙e2 ♔g7 27.♙c4 ♔f6=+

25...♙b3!

Keeping the white king in danger!

26.♞f4 ♔g7 27.g4 ♞d6 28.♞e4 ♔f8 29.♞f4

29.♙c4? loses to 29...♞d1+ 30.♔e2 ♞b1!-+

29...a5 30.♞e4 ♞d8 31.♞f4 ♔e7 32.♞e4+ ♔d6



33. ♖d1?!

33. ♜f4! ♔e5 34. ♜f5+ ♔e6 35. ♜f4, when Black still has to find a way to break through.

33... ♖e6!

Now Black is ready for both ...b5 and ...f5.

34. ♖e2

34. ♜f4 ♔e5 35. ♖c2 b5=+

34... f5! 35. gxf5 ♗xf5 36. ♜f4 ♔e5

White is in trouble — and in time-trouble!



37. ♜f3

37. ♖c4 f6+ or 37. a4 ♜g8+

37...b5! 38.e4?

Of course not 38.♙xb5? ♜g4+, but weakening the e-pawn cannot be helpful. White had to fight with 38.♞f4+

38...♙e6+ 39.♞c3

39.♙xb5 ♜g4 40.♞d3 ♞xd3 41.♙xd3 ♙xh5+

39...c4 40.f3 ♚f4 41.♞c2 ♞d4 42.♙d1 b4 43.axb4 axb4 44.♙e2 ♚e3 45.♞c1



45...♞d2! 46.♙xc4 ♞h2 47.♙f1 ♞h1 48.♞c2 ♙h3

White resigned, as after 49.♞e2+ ♚xf3 50.♞f2+ ♚xe4 51.♞xf7 ♞xf1+ 52.♞xf1 ♙xf1 53.♚xf1 ♚d3 the end is near.

0-1

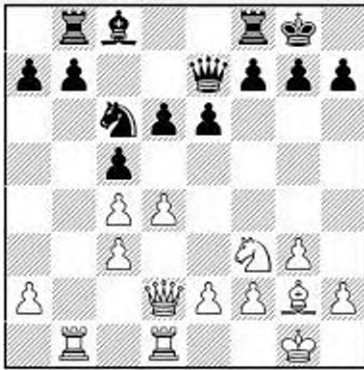
Initiative and strategic compensation are quite common guides for accepting structural weaknesses.

□ Khalifman Alexander

■ Chiburdanidze Maia

Bazna 2007

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 ♙b4+ 4.♘c3 c5 5.g3 ♘c6 6.♙g2 ♘e4 7.♙d2 ♙xc3 8.bxc3 ♘xd2 9.♞xd2 d6 10.0-0 0-0 11.♞fd1 ♞e7 12.♞ab1 ♞b8



An original position. Black is aiming to go for ...b6 and ...a6, putting pressure on White's weak queenside pawn-structure. A logical plan and White has to do something about it...

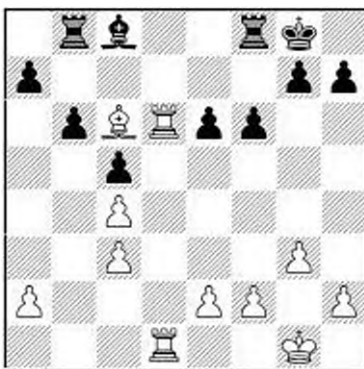
13.dxc5! dxc5 14.♖d6!

White's two last moves looked a bit strange, but the real aim is to make Black's development uncomfortable!

14...♗xd6 15.♙xd6 ♠a5 16.♜e5! b6

Or 16...f6 17.♜c6 ♠xc6 18.♙xc6, as in the game.

17.♙bd1 f6 18.♜c6 ♠xc6 19.♙xc6



After some further exchange, White dominates the only open file, while Black can't really create an attack on the weak white c-pawns.

19...f5

19...♔a6 20.♕b5! ♕c8 21.f4±

20.f4 ♕a6 21.♕b5! ♕xb5 22.cxb5 ♖be8 23.♞d7 ♞f7



Black thought that she might hold this ending, but the possession of an open file and a more active king are decisive factors.

24.♔f2! e5

Black decides to do ‘something’, as passivity can’t help: 24...♞ee7 25.♞d8+ ♞f8 26.e4 ♞xd8 27.♞xd8+ ♔f7 28.e5+-

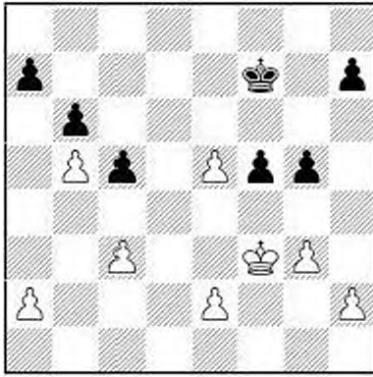
25.♞d8! ♞xd8?!

25...♔f8 26.♞xe8+ ♔xe8 27.fxe5±, was Black’s only chance...

26.♞xd8+ ♞f8 27.♞xf8+! ♔xf8 28.fxe5

The pawn ending is lost.

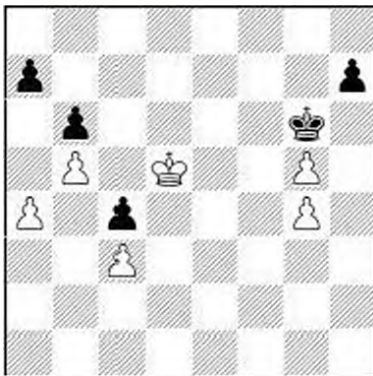
28...♔f7 29.♔f3 g5



30.h4! ♖e6

Black could try 30...h6 31.hxg5 hxg5 32.e4 ♖e6, but White is on the right track after 33.c4! ♖xe5 34.exf5 ♖xf5 35.g4+ ♖e5 36.♖e3+-, as the opposition decides.

31.hxg5 ♖xe5 32.g4! f4 33.a4 c4 34.e4 fxe3 35.♖xe3 ♖d5 36.♖f4 ♖e6 37.♖e4 ♖f7 38.♖d5 ♖g6



39.♖c6! ♖xg5 40.♖b7 ♖xg4 41.♖xa7 h5 42.a5 1-0

Repulsing an attack or more generally an initiative is a fair target for a queen exchange of this type.

□ Kasparov Garry

■ Karpov Anatoly

Moscow 1985 ●



It seems that White has the upper hand...

19...♙h6!

A planned well-beforehand queen exchange offer. Black shatters his pawn structure, but saves his pawn, and the opposite-coloured bishop ending is easy to handle.

20. ♙xh6

20. ♙e4 doesn't help. After 20...♙b5! Black stands quite active!

20...g×h6 21. ♟fe1 ♙c4! 22. a3 b5 23. ♟ad1 ♟f5 24. ♙b2 ♟d5



White cannot prove any advantage, so he accepted the draw offer. 1/2-

□ Tal Mihail

■ Najdorf Miguel

Belgrade 1970 ●



White is on the attack, but Black has already foreseen the defence.

24...♔h6!

A 'typical' idea, by now! 24...g6?! 25.♔h4 would be quite dangerous for Black.

25.♔xh6 gxh6

Black has shattered his own pawn structure, but repulsed White's attack and has enough counterplay down the c-file.

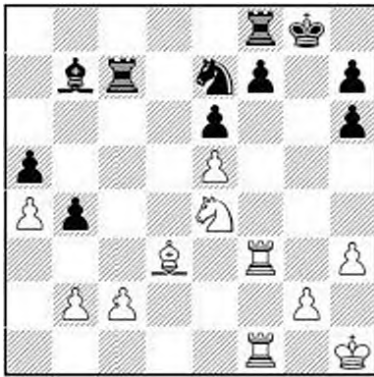
26.♖f3

26.♗f6+ ♗xf6 27.♖xf6 ♔g7 or 26.♗d6 ♖c7 27.♗xb7 ♖xb7 28.♗e4 ♗d7, are not worse for Black.

26...♖c7?!

After the text Black should be in trouble. Better was 26...♗e7!=

27.♖df1 ♗e7



28. ♖g3+! ♜h8

28... ♘g6? 29. ♗f6+ ♜h8 30. ♗xh7!±

29. ♗d6

29. ♗f6!? was dangerous: 29... ♙c8! (29... ♗g6? 30. ♗xh7! ♖g8 31. ♗f6+-; 29... ♗d8? 30. ♙xh7+-; 29... ♗f5? 30. ♙xf5 exf5 31. ♖xf5 ♗xc2 32. ♗h5 ♙c8 33. ♗xh6 ♙f5 34. ♗h5!+-) 30. b3 ♖c5 31. ♗xh7 ♖g8 32. ♖e3 ♗f5 33. ♙xf5 exf5 34. ♗f6 ♖f8 35. ♖f2+=

29... ♗c6!

29... ♗g6?! 30. ♙xg6 hxg6 31. ♖xg6± or 29... ♗g8? 30. ♙c4! ♙c8 31. b3+-

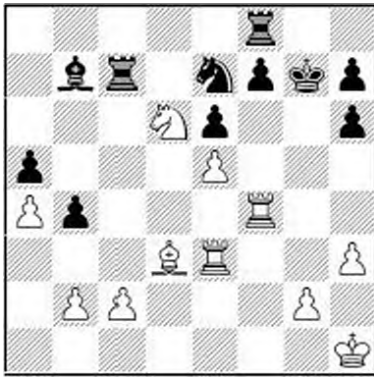
30. ♖e3 ♜g7!

By playing only moves, Black stays in the game.

31. ♖f4

31. ♖f6? ♗xe5!

31... ♗e7



32. ♖b5?!

White could consider 32. ♖xf7+ ♜xf7 33. ♗e8+ ♔f8 (33... ♗h8 34. ♗xc7 ♗d5 35. ♗xd5 ♘xd5 36. ♔g1+=) 34. ♗xc7 ♗d5 35. ♗xd5 ♘xd5 36. ♔g1+= Black should be able to keep the draw in this difficult ending but not without great effort!

32... ♗g6 33. ♜d4 ♘d5!

33... ♙c6? 34. ♜c4+-

34. c4

34. ♗e8+? ♜xe8 35. ♙xe8 ♜xc2+

34... ♖xc3 35. ♖xc3 ♜c5! 36. ♗e8+ ♔h8 37. ♗f6 ♜fc8

37... ♗xe5? 38. ♗xd5 ♗c6 39. ♙xc6 ♜xc6 40. ♗f4+-

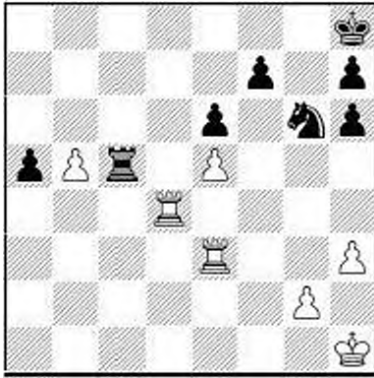
38. c4 ♙xc4

38... ♙c6 39. ♙xc6 ♜5xc6 40. ♜ee4 ♜c5 41. ♗d7=

39. ♗e4 ♙xb5!

39... ♜xe5? 40. ♙xc4! f5 41. ♗d6!+-

40. ♗xc5 ♜xc5 41. axb5



Adjourned and agreed drawn. After 41...♙xb5 42.♖d7 ♔g7 43.♖a7 ♜xe5, Black cannot lose.

1/2-1/2

CONCLUSION

Stereotypes do not make the master; think outside of the box and try to find the best move!

THE BAD BISHOP

Normally, a 'bad bishop' is a serious drawback in one's position — but not always. In fact, possession of the initiative or other assets can sometimes outweigh the presence of a bad bishop; this bishop can sometimes take an active part in an attack.

Moreover, when defending, as GM Mihai Suba once noted, sometimes 'a bad bishop defends good pawns' (although it would be more accurate to say 'important' or 'necessary' pawns), and thus becomes a valuable piece, which the stronger side is forced to exchange in order to break through the defence.

The great, deep-thinking researcher and Master Isaac Lipnitsky commented in his book 'Questions of Modern Chess Theory' (Kiev 1956): 'It would be wrong to say that a creatively concrete approach to the position lessens the influence of the rules of chess or contradicts them. The whole point is that in any given position, the contradiction of any rules (or generalities) occurs only at the price of the reaffirmation and victory of other (rules)... Chess dogmatism does not occur only when:

1. Established rules are followed without regard for circumstances of the position; it also occurs when:
2. The evaluation of a particular position is made primarily on the basis of only the obvious, the already known and established rules and generalisations.'

Keep in mind that the dynamic approach characteristic of modern chess has in effect made general rules and principles 'useless' for the purpose of making decisions in the majority of concrete positions.

Of course, a thorough acquaintance with the general principles, techniques and methods enriches and sharpens our intuition, but still every position is rather unique and it should be examined as such.

The first example is rather illuminating:

□ Sznepik Aleksander

■ Bukal Vladimir

Zagreb 1979 ●



In this typical 'French' structure, Black seems to be in dire straits. He needs not only to somehow exchange the strong white knight on d6, but also to activate his (usually) bad d7-bishop. But how to do this?

19...♘c4!

A pawn sacrifice can do the job!

20.♘xc4?!

White should not have taken the pawn. 20.♘xb7 ♜fb8 21.♘d6 (21.b3? ♙b5!≠ or 21.♘c5 ♜xb2 22.a3 ♜ab8=+) 21...♘xd6 (21...♜xb2!?) 22.♘xc4 dxc4 23.♙xc4 ♜c8 24.♙a6 ♜cc2≡) 22.exd6 ♙xd6 23.♙c3 ♙b4= was better, proving that Black's position is not bad at all!

20...dxc4 21.♙xc4 ♙c6

For a mere pawn, Black has solved all his problems and he even holds the initiative due to his powerful bishop! Yes, the previously 'bad' one has now come to life!

22.♙d3 ♜fd8 23.♜fd1 ♜d7 24.♙e3 ♜ad8 25.g3 ♙f7

White would be happy to return the pawn after 25...♙xf3? 26.♙xf3 ♜xd4 27.♜xd4 ♜xd4 28.♜d1= An option always to keep in

mind!

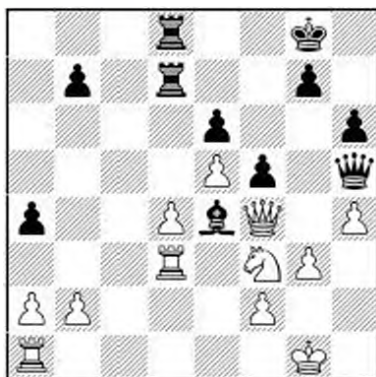
26.♖d3

26.♘e1 is also not an option: 26...f4 27.♗xf4 (27.gxf4 ♖g6+ 28.♗g3 ♗e4+) 27...♗xf4 28.gxf4 ♕xd4+

26...♗h5 27.♗f4

Or 27.♖ad1 f4! 28.gxf4 (28.♗xf4? ♗f7+) 28...♗f7+

27...♕e4



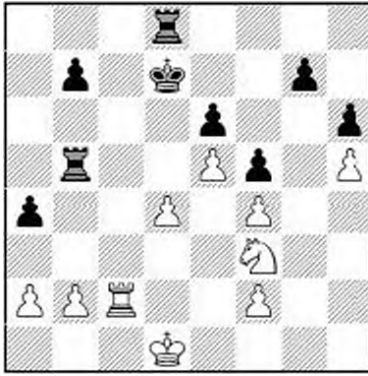
28.♖ad1

White is forced to give up the exchange, as after 28.♖c3 g5 29.hxg5 ♕xd4! 30.♖e1 ♕c6 he can resign. What a future for the formerly bad light-squared bishop!

28...♕xd3 29.♖xd3 ♗g4 30.♖c3?!

30.♗e3 ♗e4 31.b3 axb3 32.♖xb3 ♖c8+ was a bit 'better'.

30...♗xf4 31.gxf4 ♖d5 32.♕f1 ♖b5 33.♖c2 ♕f7 34.h5 ♕e7 35.♕e2 ♕d7 36.♕d1



36...Ra8! 37. Nd2

White was lost anyway: 37. Qd2 a3 38. b3 (38. bxa3 Rxa3 39. Qe2 Rba5+) 38... Rxb3 39. axb3 a2+

37...Rb4 38. Nf3 a3 39. b3 Rxb3 40. Nd2 Rb4 0-1

□ Knaak Rainer

■ Plachetka Jan

Bratislava 1983

1. d4 Nf6 2. c4 e6 3. Nc3 Bb4 4. e3 b6 5. Ng3 Qxc3+ 7. bxc3 d5 8. Qf3 0-0 9. cxd5 exd5 10. Qxa6 Nxa6

At first sight Black seems to have solved his opening 'problems'. White's bishop does not look like the 'best piece' in this particular position, as his central pawns are placed on the bishop's colour. So, it is important for White to somehow activate this piece by opening up the centre.



11. ♖e2!

Freeing his f-pawn with gain of tempo.

11... ♜b8

Or 11... ♖c8 12.0-0 c5 13.f3!+=

12.0-0 c5 13.f3!

So, here it is! The start of a central pawn-roller idea, made possible by ...♙a6.

13... ♜c6



14. ♗b2

White's 'bad' bishop proves to be a good protector of his central pawns. At least for the time being, White can feel safe in the centre.

14... ♖d7

After 14...c4 15.e4 White's b2-bishop will return to the c1-h6 diagonal with powerful threats.

15.e4!

And the central white pawns are rolling!

15...cxd4 16.cxd4 ♖e6

The white d-pawn is protected by a small combination:
16...dxe4? 17.fxe4 ♘xd4 18.♚f2! ♘e6 19.♙xf6 gxf6 20.♘f5 ♖h8
21.♚b2 ♘g7 22.♚xf6 ♗g8 23.♘d6+-

17.e5

White makes his bishop even 'worse', a quite irrelevant consideration! More important is the creation of the white kingside pawn majority — the white f-pawn is coming!

17...♘d7 18.♘h5

It is too early for 18.f4?! f5! — a typical defensive idea.

18...♗fd8 19.♗ad1 ♘f8 20.f4!

After some preparations, White's kingside pawns are operating.

20...f5

What else? If White is allowed to play 21.f5, his attack would be lethal.

21.g4! ♘g6

Or 21...fxg4 22.f5 ♖h6 23.♚xg4+-

22.gxf5 ♚xf5



23.♔c1!

A 'bad' bishop that protects 'good' pawns (d4, f4) again!

23...♟f8 24.♘g3 ♚h3 25.f5

White's position is already won, as his pawn mass is unstoppable.

25...♞h4 26.♞d3 ♞ae8 27.♔b2! ♞b4 28.♞b3 ♞xa2 29.♞a3 ♞c8

Or 29...♞b4 30.♞h5+-

30.♞xa2 ♞xf5 31.♞a3 ♞h4 32.♞f5 1-0

□ Kimelfeld Rudolf

■ Dvoretzky Mark

Moscow 1972 ○



Black's bishop is bad and if White manages to get his knight to the d4-square (with a pawn on f4 too), Black's position would become strategically critical. On the other hand, his bad bishop is protecting an important pawn, which keeps his centre intact, and the point is that White can never realise his intentions! Actually Black is threatening ...d4 (or ...b5-b4), penetrating into White's camp via c2, so, in a way, he has the initiative.

19.f4

White could think about:

- a) 19.d4 ♖c4 (19...b5=+) 20.♞d1 b5 21.♞d2 b4 22.♜e2 ♜fc8 23.♚f1 ♜c2 24.♞e1 ♞f7 25.♜f4 (25.♞d1 ♚a4! 26.♞xc2 [26.b3? ♞xa2!-+] 26...♞xc2+ 27.♞e1 ♚f5=+) 25...♞c1+ 26.♞d1 ♞8c4 27.♜e2 ♞1c2=+
- b) 19.♞e2 b5 20.a3 (20.♞fe1 b4 21.♜d1 ♞c1 22.f3 ♞fc8=) 20...a5 21.f4 b4 22.axb4 axb4 23.♜a2 b3 24.♜b4 ♞a8=+
- c) 19.f3 b5 20.♞f2 b4 21.♜e2 ♚b5 22.♞e3 ½-½ Englert,F-Brynell,S Copenhagen 2013.

These variations prove the viability of Black's position (and of the bad bishop too!).

19...d4! 20.♜e2

Endings arising after 20.♜b5 ♞c2 (20...♞xb5!? 21.♞xb5 b6 22.♞b4 ♞c2 23.a3 ♞d2=+) 21.♜xd4 ♞xb2 22.♜xe6 (22.♞a5!? ♞b4 23.♜c2 ♞a4 24.♞xa4 ♚xa4 25.♜d4 ♞d8 26.♜xe6 ♞xd3 27.♜c5 ♞a3=+) 22...♞xe6 23.♞xe6 ♞xa2 are difficult to defend, as the two black passed pawns on the queenside are always more dangerous than the white d-pawn.

20...♞c2



21.f5?!

White had to go for the line mentioned above, starting with 21.♜xd4.

21...exf5 22.♜xd4 ♞xb2 23.♞c1

Black holds a pleasant advantage after 23.♖e7 ♜f7 24.♗xf5 ♘xf5 (24...♙f8 25.♞xf7+ ♚xf7) 25.♞e8+ ♜f8 26.♞xf8+ ♚xf8 27.♞xf5+ ♚e7

23...g6! 24.♞c7

24.♞d5 ♜f7 25.♞c7 ♘e8

24...♞e8! 25.♗f3

I think that White should seek salvation in 25.♞xe8+ ♘xe8 26.♗e6 ♘c6 27.♞g7+ ♚h8 28.♞c7 h5 29.♗f4 ♚g8 30.g3

25...♞xe5 26.♗xe5 ♘e6

The rest of the moves are unavailable. Black holds a clear advantage and has every reason to be happy with his formerly bad bishop!

0-1

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Sarantos Vasilios

Athens 2001 ○



By comparing the bishops at first glance, we will come to the conclusion that Black has the superior one, as the central pawns are placed on dark squares. But both bishops have limited mobility, so we cannot really be sure of the comparison. Here there is something that it is more important; the b-file, which

White can seize.

22. ♖a3!

Sooner-or-later White will try to get a rook to b6, sacrificing the exchange. Then his bishop will become a tremendous piece!

22... ♜fa8 23. ♝b3 ♚d8 24. ♞fb1

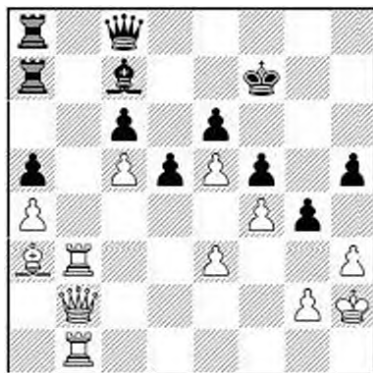
White has dominated the b-file, but still it is difficult to improve. Some preparatory moves cannot do any harm!



24... ♚c8 25. ♚b2 ♜6a7 26. h3! h5

Opening a second front with 26...gxf3 27.gxf3 ♔h8 28. ♔h2 can be good only for White, as he can more easily transfer his forces to the kingside.

27. ♔h2 ♜f7



28. ♖b6! ♗xb6?

Black shouldn't have accepted the exchange sacrifice and tried instead to defend with 28... ♖e8 29. ♖b7 ♗d8. White could then attempt to triple on the b-file with the queen behind the rooks and look to invade. But this is far from easy: 30. ♖b3 ♖e7 31. ♖e2 ♔g6 32. ♖1b2 and so on.

29. cxb6 ♖b7 30. ♖c3 ♗d7 31. ♗c5

White dominates; the black rooks are too passive.

31... ♖a6 32. ♗d4 ♖a8 33. ♖c5 ♖a6 34. ♔g3!

The white king joins the attack!

34... ♖a8 35. ♖c1 ♔e8?

The last mistake. Necessary was 35... h4+! 36. ♔f2 (36. ♔xh4? ♖h8+ 37. ♔g3 ♗d8! 38. ♔h2 ♖h4+) 36... g3+ 37. ♔e2 ♔e8 and the fight continues.

36. hxg4 h4+

36... hxg4 37. ♖h1 is curtains and 36... fxg4 37. ♖h1 is not much different.

37. ♔xh4 ♖h7+ 38. ♔g3 ♖c8 39. g5 ♖h5 40. ♗d6

40. ♖xa5 was fine as well.

40... ♔f7 41. ♖xc6 ♖g4+ 42. ♔f2 ♖h4+ 43. ♔e2 ♖g4+ 44. ♔e1 ♖h4+ 45. ♔e2 ♖g4+ 46. ♔d2 ♖xg2+ 47. ♔c3 ♖xc6+ 48. ♖xc6 ♖e7 49. b7 ♖f1 50. ♔b2! ♖e2+ 51. ♔a3 ♗d3+ 52. ♗c3 ♖b1 53. ♗b2

The 'bad' bishop secured the white king in the end! And in general it was proved to be much more valuable than the black rook...

Well, if the bad bishop can prevail so easily, then it might be a good thought to exchange it as soon as is possible!

A bit of a strange thought indeed, but let's have a look at the next two games, which might change your approach!

The ex-World Champion Bobby Fischer was an expert in handling the bishop. He has played many beautiful games and his contribution to the 'handling theory' is enormous.

But you have to keep in mind that, although he was fond of bishops, he also knew what to do with the knights! The next example is good proof:

□ Fischer Robert

■ Petrosian Tigran

Buenos Aires 1971 ○



This is another well-known position from a game of the great Robert Fischer.

22. ♖xd7+!

'Exchanging' (transforming) advantages is a quite common feature in modern chess games. It is true that White had a powerful knight on c5 and the decision to exchange it for the (relatively bad) d7-bishop was not easy at all, but nevertheless it was the correct one, as now White's minor piece is much stronger than Black's. White has a much healthier pawn structure (Black has weak and isolated a- and d-pawns) and the presence of pawns on both flanks nearly always favours the bishop. One should not forget that the black a-pawn will be

a permanent target of the white bishop, as Black cannot push it to a5; White's reply then with b5 (if he cannot play bxa5 winning a pawn) will give him a strong passed pawn.

22...♞xd7 23.♞c1

Adding the occupation of the c-file to his advantages.

23...♞d6

Or 23...d4 24.♞c4 ♞ad8 25.a3±

24.♞c7

Penetrating to the 7th rank is also nearly always correct.

24...♞d7

The alternative was 24...♞e8 25.♞b7 ♞c8 26.♔f2 ♞c7 27.♔e3±

25.♞e2 g6 26.♔f2!

White needs all his pieces for the final assault! The king is an important piece and we should always think about how to make it work more effectively.

26...h5 27.f4 h4

27...♞b6 28.♞ee7 ♞f6 29.g3± is not an improvement.

28.♔f3 f5 29.♔e3



29...d4+

What else? If 29...♘f6 30.♔d4 ♘e4 31.♚ec2 and White is in full control over the entire board.

30.♔d2 ♘b6

Or 30...♘f6 31.♙c4! ♘e4+ 32.♔d3 ♚ad8 33.a3 and Black has run out of useful moves. The harmonious co-ordination of the white forces is extraordinary.

31.♚ee7 ♘d5 32.♚f7+ ♔e8 33.♚b7 ♘xb4 34.♙c4

The text move was enough to force Black to resign, but there was also a mate starting with 34.♚h7! A famous and well-known example, which can teach us to think outside of the box, something that matures the trainee and allow him to climb the mountain!

1-0

□ Goetsche Frank

■ Grivas Efstratios

Dortmund 1991 ●



17...♘xd3!

A seemingly irrational exchange of the excellently placed e5-knight for the restricted d3-bishop. Black simplifies the position

by exchanging pieces, obtains the advantage of the bishop pair and prepares to launch an attack (by ...♖a4 and ...♗d4) in case of the inferior 18.cxd3. Thus the e4-pawn is further weakened.

18.♖xd3 ♖ae8 19.♗hf1 ♗xf1 20.♗xf1 ♖a4! 21.b3 ♖d4!

Offering another exchange. White must play with great care so as not to lose material.

22.♗c1 ♗f7!

More black pieces will contribute to the pressure on e4 (rook on e8, bishop on g6).

23.♗f4 ♗g6 24.♟f5 ♗xf5! 25.♖xd4 ♗xd4 26.exf5 ♗f6

With his last few moves Black exchanged two clear strategic advantages (bishop pair, isolated e-pawn) for a more decisive one, the possession of the open e-file, through which he will invade the enemy lines. The limited material complicates White's defensive task, as he cannot control all possible entry points (e2, e1). The position can be considered won for Black.

Such instances of transformation of advantages are quite common in modern chess. Knowledge of all the strategic elements and their correct application in practice allow for several such operations. Naturally, experience also has its say!

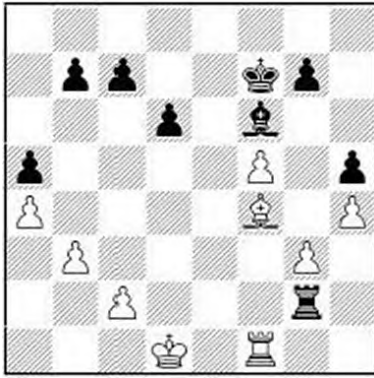
27.♗f1 ♗e2 28.g3

No salvation was offered by 28.g4 ♗h2 29.g5 ♗e5 30.f6 gxf6 31.gxf6 ♟f7 32.♗f3 ♗h1!

28...♗h2 29.h4 ♗g2 30.♗f4 h5!

Immobilising the white kingside pawns. The activation of the black king will prove decisive.

31.a4 a5 32.♟c1 ♟f7 33.♟d1



33...♔e5!

The final detail. White will either lose material or allow Black a passed e-pawn, a much more active king and possession of the 7th rank; these are obvious advantages that suffice for victory.

34.♙xe5 dxe5 35.♖f3 b6

White resigned in view of 36.♜c3 c5 37.♞d3 ♔f6 38.♞d6+ ♔xf5 39.♞xb6 ♞xg3 40.♞b5 g5! 41.hxg5 h4.

0-1

CONCLUSION

The definition of the bad bishop in practice is a difficult task. Keeping a cool and objective head is a primary precondition to understand what is bad and what is good — and obviously you mustn't be carried away by general conclusions.

The real bad bishop is harmless; the 'bad' bishop can bite!

THE CAPABLANCA MANOEUVRE

This is one of the means of trying to counter the 'Queen's Gambit Declined' (QGD) minority attack, which was first used by the great Jose Raul Capablanca during his World Championship match with Alexander Alekhine.

This plan still occurs in games played today and represents a major weapon in the defending side's general arsenal of ideas.

J.R.Capablanca's remarkable intuition led him to understand that in the 'QGD — Exchange Variation' pawn structure formation, the very best place for a black knight is on the d6-square. From here it not only helps defend against the minority attack (b4-b5) but it is ready to hop into either c4 or e4 at the right moment.

Additionally the knight can be used to support an exchange of the light-squared bishops with ...♗f5 (White's bishop presumably standing on d3).

This is one of Black's major themes in this structural formation because it makes b4-b5 even harder for White to achieve and may also help to expose the c4-square.

Well, before we go on, it is good to know some basic things about the life of the great Maestro:

José Raúl Capablanca y Graupera (19 November 1888 — 8 March 1942) was a Cuban chess player who was World Chess Champion from 1921 to 1927. A chess prodigy, he is considered by many as one of the greatest players of all time, widely renowned for his exceptional endgame skill and speed of play.

Born in Havana, he beat Cuban champion Juan Corzo in a match at the age of 13 years. His victory over Frank Marshall in a match in 1909 earned him an invitation to the 1911 San Sebastian tournament, which he won ahead of players such as Akiba Rubinstein, Aron Nimzowitsch and Siegbert Tarrasch.

During the next several years, J.R.Capablanca had a strong series of tournament results. After several unsuccessful attempts to arrange a match with the then World Champion Emanuel

Lasker, J.R.Capablanca finally won the title from E.Lasker in 1921. J.R.Capablanca was undefeated for 8 years from February 10, 1916 to March 21, 1924, a period which included the World Championship match with E.Lasker.

J.R.Capablanca lost the title in 1927 to Alexander Alekhine, who had never beaten him before the match. Following unsuccessful attempts to arrange a return match over many years, relations between them became bitter.

J.R.Capablanca continued his excellent tournament results in this period but withdrew from serious chess in 1931. He made a comeback in 1934, with some good results, but also showed symptoms of high blood pressure. He died in 1942 of 'a cerebral hemorrhage provoked by hypertension'.

J.R.Capablanca excelled in simple positions and endgames; Bobby Fischer described him as possessing a 'real light touch'. He could play tactical chess when necessary, and had good defensive technique.

He wrote several chess books during his career, of which Chess Fundamentals was regarded by Mikhail Botvinnik as the best chess book ever written.

J.R. Capablanca preferred to not present detailed analysis but focused on critical moments in a game. His style of chess was influential in the play of future World Champions Bobby Fischer and Anatoly Karpov.

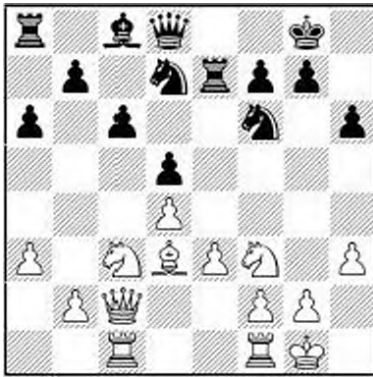
Here is the historic game:

□ Alekhine Alexander

■ Capablanca Jose Raul

Buenos Aires 1927

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 ♘d7 4.♘c3 ♘gf6 5.♙g5 ♙e7 6.e3 0-0 7.♞c1 c6
8.♞c2 a6 9.a3 h6 10.♙h4 ♞e8 11.cxd5 exd5 12.♙d3 ♘h5 13.♙xe7
♞xe7 14.0-0 ♘hf6 15.h3



It was all the way back in 1927 when the great Capa first introduced this very important idea:

15...♖e8! 16.♗e2 ♘d6

This is a really superb post for the knight, as it's now very difficult for White to achieve any of his desired pawn levers (b4-b5 or e3-e4). The game now sees steady simplification after which neither side has much to play for.

17.♘g3 ♗f8 18.♗e5 f6



Black can afford this dangerous-looking move as White cannot really benefit from the holes around the black king.

19.♘g6 ♗xg6 20.♙xg6 ♙e6 21.♗e2 ♚d7 22.♗f4



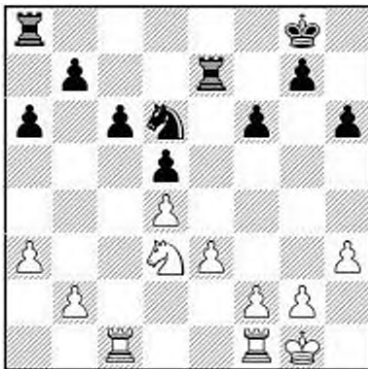
22...♙f5!

Of course. The exchange of the light-squared bishops helps Black to better control the valuable c4-square. As previously mentioned, another point behind having the knight on d6 is that it is often able to support this exchange.

23.♙xf5 ♗xf5

23...♗xf5 is playable but Black is satisfied with the draw.

24.♗xf5 ♘xf5 25.♘d3 ♘d6



In an equal position both sides decided to call it a day.

1/2-1/2

No real attention was paid to the Capa's manoeuvre; the game thought to be a well-played one and that was all...

The usual 'suspect', the 'Soviet School', took over and understood the importance of the manoeuvre for the QGD pawn structure (or Carlsbad as it is sometimes called) and started implementing it often:

□ Bobotsov Milko

■ Petrosian Tigran

Lugano 1968

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 d5 4.cxd5 exd5 5.♘c3 c6 6.♙g5 ♙e7 7.♚c2 g6 8.e3 ♙f5 9.♙d3 ♙xd3 10.♚xd3 ♘bd7



Black has little to complain about with his opening outcome; in general he scores well from this position.

11.♙h6

Another try is 11.0-0 0-0 12.h3 ♜e8 13.♙f4 ♙f8 14.♘e5 ♙g7 15.♙h2 ♘xe5 16.♙xe5 ♘e4 17.♙xg7 ♘xg7 18.♘xe4 ♜xe4 19.b4 a6 20.a4 ♚d6 21.b5 c5 22.dxc5 ♚xc5 23.bxa6 ♜xa6 24.♞fb1 ♞axa4 25.♞xa4 ♞xa4 26.♞xb7 d4 27.exd4 ♚c1+ 28.♙h2 ♚f4+ 29.♚g3 ♚xg3+ 30.♙xg3 ♞xd4 31.♙f3 ♞c4 32.♙g3 ♞d4 33.♙f3 ♞c4 34.♙g3 ♞d4 ½-½ Bu,X-Wei,Y Wuxi 2016.

11...♘g4 12.♙f4 0-0 13.0-0 ♜e8 14.h3 ♘gf6 15.♘e5 ♘b6 16.♙g5 ♘e4 17.♙xe7 ♚xe7 18.♚c2 ♘d6!

Black preserves his valuable knight and places it directly on d6.

19. ♖a4 ♜bc4!

The good centralised white knight should be exchanged and not the edge one!

20. ♜xc4 ♜xc4 21. ♖c5 ♜d6



Black's strategy has triumphed; he has no problems at all and he can start thinking of his kingside activity.

22. ♖ac1 ♜g5 23. ♜d1 h5 24. ♜h1 ♖e7!

A good plan: Black will double rooks on the e-file or on his 2nd rank, preparing a well-timed invasion.

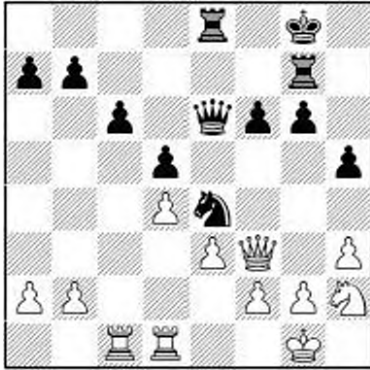
25. ♜d3 ♜e4 26. ♜c5 ♜d6 27. ♜d3 ♜f5 28. ♜e5 f6 29. ♜f3 ♖g7

29...g5 30. ♜h2 ♜g6 was more accurate.

30. ♜h2 ♖e8 31. ♜g1 ♜e4 32. ♜f3 ♜e6!

Black would also be in the driver's seat after 32... ♜xf3 33. ♜xf3 g5, but there is no reason to exchange queens, as then his attack would lack steam.

33. ♖fd1



33...g5!

A good tactical shot.

34.♖xh5 f5! 35.♜e1 g4 36.hxg4 fxg4 37.f3?!

Losing quickly, but even after 37.♖h4 g3 38.fxg3 ♘xg3 39.♞c2 ♖g6 40.♜f2 ♘e4 41.♜fe2 ♜e7! Black's attack is strong.

37...gxf3 38.♘xf3

38.♖xf3 ♜f8 39.♖e2 ♘g3 40.♖d1 ♖h6+

38...♜h7 39.♖e5 ♖c8! 40.♖f4 ♜f8 41.♖e5 ♜f5

and White resigned, as his queen is lost.

0-1

The importance of preserving a knight (and the queen in most cases) on the board can be seen in the following game:

□ **Andersson Ulf**

■ **Atalik Suat**

Kusadasi 2006

1.♘f3 d5 2.d4 ♘f6 3.c4 e6 4.♘c3 c6 5.cxd5 exd5 6.♙g5 ♙e7 7.♖c2 g6 8.e3 ♙f5 9.♙d3 ♙xd3 10.♖xd3 ♘bd7 11.0-0 0-0 12.♜ab1 a5 13.♖c2 ♜e8 14.a3 ♘b6 15.♘a4?!

This move looks really bad — and it has to be bad. White has to opt for 15.♖e5 ♜fd7 16.♙xe7 ♞xe7 17.♞xd7 ♞xd7 18.♞a4 ♜c8!∞, as in Kaposztas,M-Szalai,K Hungary 2007.

15...♞xa4 16.♞xa4



16...♞e4! 17.♙xe7 ♞xe7

Black is ready to place his knight on d6 and then try his chances on both sides.

18.♞c2 ♞a4 19.♞d2 ♞xd2?!

Of course there was no point to this exchange, as the white knight has no real prospects. 19...♞d6 20.♞be1 ♞d7=+ was the correct follow-up.

20.♞xd2 ♞a5 21.♞c3! ♞xc3 22.bxc3 ♞b5 23.♞fe1 ♞f5 24.♞f1 ♞f8
25.♞e2

The endgame is equal and neither side can do much.

25...♞f7

Or 25...f4 26.♞d3 ♞f3 27.g3=

26.♞d3 ♞e6 27.h4 ♞d6 28.g3 ♞h6 29.♞h1 ♞fe8 30.♞be1 ♞c8 31.♞b1
♞e6 32.♞b2 ♞d6 33.♞bb1 ♞ce8 34.♞be1 ♞c8 35.♞b1 ♞ce8

1/2-1/2

The next two games are an even more vivid demonstration of Black's strategic themes.

Black exchanges the light-squared bishops in the opening and with the knight on d6 effectively stymies any hope that White might have had of playing b4-b5.

The knight later plays a decisive role in both Black's kingside pawn advance and an eventual harvest of White's queenside pawns (or in the attack).

□ Nikolic Predrag

■ Kramnik Vladimir

Monte Carlo 1998

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 d5 4.♘c3 c6 5.cxd5 exd5 6.♙g5 ♙e7 7.e3
♙f5 8.♙d3 ♙xd3 9.♚xd3 ♘bd7 10.0-0 0-0 11.♞ab1 a5 12.a3 ♘e4
13.♙xe7 ♚xe7 14.b4



A typical minority attack for which Black seems to be fully prepared.

14...b5!

A black knight is prepared to safely enter the c4-square sooner-or-later.

15.♚c2 axb4 16.axb4 ♘d6!

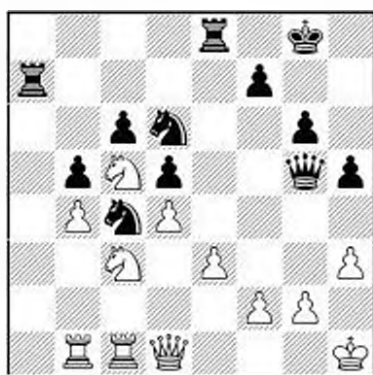
Avoiding future exchanges which would ease White's position. The d6-knight is a much more useful piece than any of its opposing knights.

17. ♖b3 ♜b6 18. ♗e5 ♜fc8 19. ♜d3 ♜bc4 20. ♜c5 ♜e8 21. h3 g6 22. ♜c1 ♜a7!

Black prepares the full occupation of the a-file (or not?). His active pieces and plans secure the advantage.

23. ♖d1 h5 24. ♕h1 ♜g5 25. ♜bb1

It's quite clear that something went wrong for White in the middlegame. He succeeded neither in his minority attack, which Black managed to properly halt, nor in a central break. Black's reactions were excellent and, as a result, he has taken over the important a-file and has placed his knights on excellent central squares. Black has a great advantage, but no position can be won just by sitting back and waiting — a typical mistake that we see in a lot of games. Having achieved a huge advantage only means that we have the better chances of winning, but not that we have already won! Black must form a plan to convert his huge advantage.



25... ♜ae7!?

Of course 25... ♜ea8 is the move that 99.99% of all serious chess players would choose but Kramnik belongs to the other 0.01% minority, which consists of the absolute top genii! He judged that

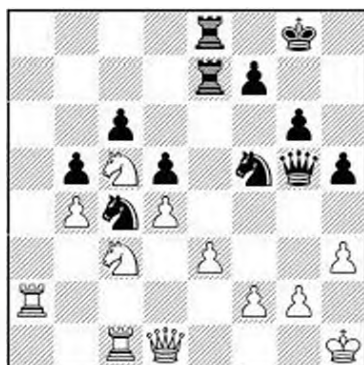
he could not 'expect' much from the a-file and that the real target is the white king, so he chose to transfer his forces towards him. Doubling rooks on the e-file and sacrificing a knight on e3 was seriously considered by Kramnik, although this is hardly a standard plan in such positions. A powerful plan which will break down White's defence.

26. ♖a1 ♜f5

Now the threat of ...♜xe3 becomes very real!

27. ♖a2

There was no reason to prepare the next sac further. White's position falls apart as Black's activity is too powerful. This game is highly instructional, as it shows how the 'logical imagination' of a strong GM converts an unquestionable positional advantage into a full point on the scorecard, without 'sitting on his hands' and waiting for the fruits to fall. It is of great importance to shake the tree well!



27... ♜cxe3! 28. fxe3 ♖xe3 29. ♖f2

There was no real alternative: 29. ♖d2 ♖h4 30. ♖aa1 ♜g3+ 31. ♔h2 ♜e2 32. ♜xe2 ♖xe2 33. ♖d1 ♖8e3+

29... ♖h4

Combining the attack with threats of material gains; the weak white pawns (d4, b4) can fall apart.

30.♖d2

White could try 30.♔g1 although after 30...♗xd4 (30...♙e1+ 31.♖xe1 ♙xe1+ 32.♙xe1 ♖xd4=+) 31.♖d2 ♗f5 32.♗e2 ♖f6 Black would be in the driver's seat anyway.

30...♗xd4

Also possible was 30...♖xd4 31.♖xd4 ♗xd4 32.♔g1 (32.♙d2 ♗f5 33.♔g1 h4=+) 32...♗f5 33.♙f4 h4=+ but there is no point to exchanging queens when in attack.

31.♙cf1?

31.♗d3? ♗b3-+ was not a real alternative, but White had to opt for 31.♔g1 ♗f5 32.♗e2 ♖f6, transposing to the line mentioned above on White's 30th move.

31...♗f5! 32.♙xf5

Making Black's task easier. More practical chances were to be found in 32.♔g1 ♖xb4 33.♗xd5 ♖xc5 34.♗f6+ ♔g7 35.♗xe8+ ♙xe8 or in 32.♙f4 ♖g5! 33.♔g1 ♙xh3, although White's position would be objectively lost in both cases.

32...gxf5 33.♗d1

Or 33.♗d3 ♖g3! 34.♙d1 ♙xd3 35.♖xd3 ♙e1+-+

33...♙e1 34.♔g1 ♙8e2! 35.♖c3 ♙xd1 0-1

□ Portisch Lajos

■ Kasparov Garry

Skelleftea 1989

1.d4 d5 2.♗f3 ♗f6 3.c4 e6 4.cxd5 exd5 5.♗c3 c6 6.♖c2 ♗a6 7.a3
♗c7 8.♙g5 g6 9.e3 ♙f5 10.♙d3 ♙xd3 11.♖xd3 ♙e7 12.0-0 0-0 13.b4
♗e4 14.♙f4 ♗xc3



15. ♖xc3?!

White should definitely take out Black's remaining knight via 15. ♗xc7 ♖xc7 16. ♖xc3= Probably he missed Black's clever sixteenth move.

15... ♗d6 16. ♗xd6 ♠b5!

Very clever. Now Black's knight gets to the ideal square and it becomes much easier for him to advance on the kingside than it is for White to make progress on the other flank.

17. ♖b3 ♠xd6 18. a4 a6

A clear mistake would be 18... a5?! 19. b5! cxb5 20. ♖xd5!∞.

19. ♠e5?!

The knight will be driven away from here via ...f7-f6. 19. g3 might have been a better plan, intending to reinforce White's king position with ♠f3-h4-g2. It would have been very difficult for Black to make progress after that, but of course he would be the only one to have chances.

19... ♖e8 20. ♖fe1 ♖g5 21. h3?!

21. g3 was better here too, not least because Black's breakthrough may come via ...f7-f5-f4.

21... ♗g7 22. ♖c2 ♖e6 23. ♖ac1 ♖ae8 24. ♖b1

And here 24.♔d1 was better, keeping the queen in contact with the kingside.

24...♖h5! 25.♖b3



Black should be quite satisfied by the opening outcome and his middlegame prospects. White seems to have no active plan at his disposal, as his minority attack cannot progress. As a result of this, Black's hands on the kingside are free and as his pieces are well-placed, his kingside pawns must start rolling. This can be done best by the ...f6, ...g5 and ...h5 structural formation.

25...f6 26.♘d3

It seems that White could put up a more stubborn defence after 26.♘f3 g5 27.♘h2 but this is not the case after 27...f5!♣

26...g5 27.♔d1 ♖g6!

Of course! Black's queen will prove to be more useful than its counterpart.

28.♗c2 ♜6e7! 29.♞ed1

Maybe White had to try 29.♘c5 when Black should calmly retreat with 29...♗f7 (29...♗xc2 30.♞xc2 f5 31.♘d3 f4 32.♘e5 fxe3 33.fxe3 ♘f7 34.♘xf7 ♔xf7 35.b5!+= or 29...f5 30.♘d3 f4 31.♘e5+= should only help White) 30.♘d3 h5, when the attack will grow strong.

29...h5 30.♚b1

After 30.♗e1, Black would again avoid the exchange of queens with 30...♚h6! in order to maintain his chances against White's king.

30...h4 31.♚c2 g4 32.♗f4?

This loses. White's best try was 32.hxg4 ♚xg4 33.♗f4 after which 33...♗h6 34.♗h2 ♚g8 gives Black very dangerous attacking chances, but nothing that's crystal clear.

32...♚xc2

Now Black accepts the queen exchange, as he has a clear winning continuation to follow.

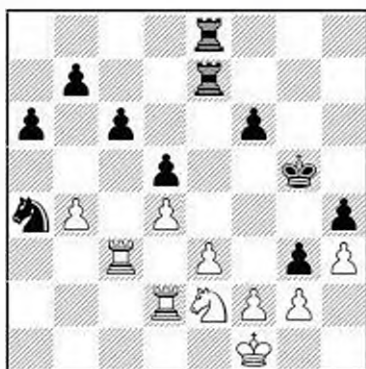
33.♚xc2 g3! 34.♚d3

34.fxg3 is powerfully met by 34...♗f5!-+

34...♗h6 35.♗f1 ♗g5 36.♗e2?!

In time-trouble White's resistance crumbles and we see the d6-knight make a decisive entrance. 36.♚e2 was best, though Black could then play 36...♗e4 37.f3 ♗d6 intending 38...♗c4.

36...♗c4! 37.♚cc3 ♗b2 38.♚d2 ♗xa4



The first pawn falls, with more to follow.

39.♖b3 ♘b6 40.♗g1

Or 40.fxg3 ♘c4+

40...♗c4 41.♗f3+ ♔h5 42.♖dd3 a5! 43.bxa5 ♖a8 44.♖d1 ♖xa5
45.♖e1 b5 46.♖e2 ♖a1+ 47.♖e1 ♖ea7 48.fxg3 ♖xe1+

48...hxg3 would also have been good.

49.♔xe1 ♖a1+ 50.♔e2 hxg3 51.♗e1 ♖a2+ 52.♔d1 ♖d2+ 53.♔c1 ♖e2
54.♔d1 ♖xe3 55.♖xe3 ♗xe3+ 56.♔e2 ♗f5 57.♗c2 ♗h4 58.♗b4

58.♔f1 ♔g5 59.♗b4 ♔f4 60.♗xc6 ♔e4+ would see Black's king
make a decisive entrance.

58...♗xg2 59.♔f3 ♗h4+ 60.♔xg3 ♗f5+ 61.♔f4 ♗xd4 62.♔e3 ♗f5+
0-1

Of course, Black is not always in the driver's seat — but at least
he can't complain about the opening outcome!

□ Wang Yue

■ Carlsen Magnus

Dresden 2008

1.d4 ♗f6 2.c4 e6 3.♗c3 ♖b4 4.♖c2 d5 5.cxd5 exd5 6.♔g5 h6
7.♔xf6 ♖xf6 8.♗f3 0-0 9.e3 ♔f5 10.♔d3 ♔xd3 11.♖xd3 c6 12.0-0
♗d7 13.a3 ♔xc3 14.♖xc3 ♗b6



As already said, the 'QGD-Carlsbad' structure with only knights on the board is considered comfortable for Black. The present game doesn't change that evaluation but sheds light on some niceties.

15. ♖e5 ♜f5 16. ♝fc1 f6 17. ♜d3 ♜c4 18. ♜c5 ♜d6 19. ♜c2!

The exchange of the queens is essential for White's defence and by it he keeps an equal game.

19... ♜xc2

In my opinion, Black should seriously consider 19... ♜h5∞.

20. ♝xc2 ♝ae8 21. g3 g5

This move creates an object of attack for White (h2-h4). 21...h5!? = was the main alternative.

22. ♜g2 ♜g7 23. a4 ♝e7 24. ♝h1 ♜g6 25. ♝c3 h5 26. h4 ♝h8

26...g4!? maintains an equal game as the transfer of White's knight to f4 is harmless.

27. ♝cc1

27.hxg5!? fxg5 28. ♜d3 ♜f6∞.

27... ♝hh7 28. ♝h2 ♜f5?!

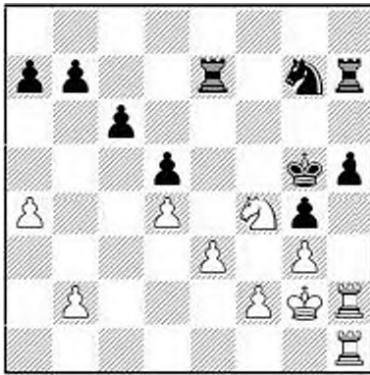
28...g4 was still possible, with a completely dead position.

29. hxg5 fxg5 30. ♜d3 g4

Now the situation is completely different: the white knight has the e5-square, and Black's h5-pawn is weak.

31. ♝ch1 ♜g5 32. ♜f4 ♜g7

32...h4? 33.gxh4+ ♝xh4 34. ♝xh4 ♜xh4+ 35. ♝xh4!+-



33.b4!

The 'two weaknesses rule'! White can be active on both sides of the board and this fact guarantees him the advantage.

33...a6 34.b5 axb5 35.axb5 ♖h6 36.♖a1 ♜f5 37.♖a8 h4!?

37...♖g7+= is possible but the text move gives White a seemingly attractive possibility.

38.gxh4+

38.♖g8+ ♖g7 39.♖xg7+ ♜xg7 40.♖xh4 ♖xh4 41.gxh4+ ♜xh4 42.bxc6 bxc6 43.♜g6+ ♜g5 44.♜e5 is hardly enough for victory, e.g. after 44...♜h5 45.♜xc6 ♜f5 but White could have considered it.

38...♜xh4+ 39.♖xh4!?

A 'brilliant move' but Black miraculously holds his ground. Therefore 39.♜f1+= may have been better.

39...♜xh4

The alternative 39...♖xh4!? 40.♖g8+ ♜f5 41.♜g6 ♖hh7 42.♜xe7+ ♖xe7 43.bxc6 bxc6 44.♜g3 looks bad but after the active 44...♖c7! 45.♖xg4 c5 46.♖f4+ ♜e6 47.dxc5 ♖xc5 Black should hold.

40.♖g8

40.bxc6 bxc6 41.♖g8 ♖a7∞.

40...♗f7 41.f3

41.bxc6 ♗xc6! (41...bxc6? 42.f3!+-) 42.♔g6+ ♕h5 43.♔e5 ♗f5
44.♔xc6 bxc6=

41...♗xf4 42.exf4 cxb5!

Again accurate, as 42...gxf3+? 43.♕xf3 should be lost for Black:
43...cxb5 44.f5 b4 45.♕f4 b3 46.♗g1.

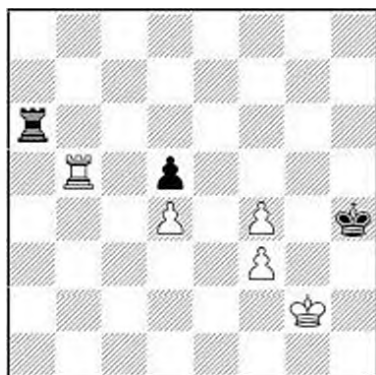
43.♗xg4+

43.fxg4 ♖a6! 44.f5 (44.♕f3 ♖a3+ 45.♕e2 b4=) 44...b4 45.♕f3 ♖a1!
46.♗h8+ ♕g5 47.♗h5+ ♕f6 48.♗h6+ ♕g5 49.♗g6+ ♕h4 50.♕f4 ♗f1+
51.♕e5 b5! 52.♗b6 ♕xg4 53.f6 ♕g5=

43...♕h5 44.♗g5+ ♕h4 45.♗g7!

45.♗xd5?! ♗b6!

45...♕h5 46.♗xb7 ♖a6 47.♗xb5 ♕h4!



48.♗b2

48.♗xd5 ♖a2+ 49.♕f1 ♕g3 50.f5 ♕xf3 51.♕e1 ♕e4= or 48.♕f2 ♖a2+
49.♕e3 ♖a3+ 50.♕e2 ♖a2+ 51.♕d3 ♖a3+ 52.♕c2 (52.♕d2 ♕g3 53.f5
♕xf3=) 52...♗xf3 53.♗xd5 ♕g4 54.♗d8 ♕f5! 55.d5 ♕e4 56.d6 ♕d5=

48...♖a4 49.♞d2 ♔h5

Despite two extra pawns, White can't strengthen his position.

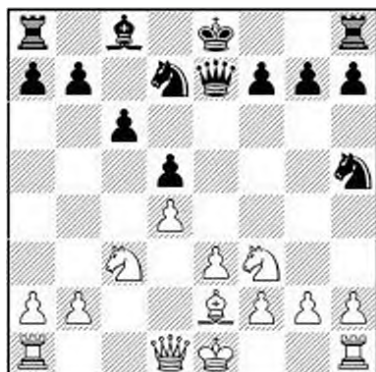
50.♔g3 ♜b4 51.♞d1 ♜a4 52.♔h3 ♜a3 53.♞h1 ♞d3 54.♔g3+ ♔g6
55.♞h4 ♞d2 56.♞g4+ ♔f6 57.f5 1/2-1/2

□ Artemiev Vladislav

■ Inarkiev Ernesto

Sochi 2015

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 d5 4.♘c3 ♘bd7 5.cxd5 exd5 6.♙f4 c6 7.e3
♘h5 8.♙g5 ♙e7 9.♙xe7 ♚xe7 10.♙e2



10...g6!

Probably best; the knight is heading to d6 via g7-f5.

11.♘d2 ♘g7 12.a3 0-0 13.b4 a6 14.0-0 ♘f5 15.♚c1 ♘b6 16.♚b2
♘d6

Black has completed his usual plan, but White also stands fine as many minor pieces are still on the board.

17.a4 ♙e6 18.♞fc1 f5!

Starting his own activity on the kingside.

19.♞e1

19.b5 looks natural. Black would opt for 19...cxb5 20.axb5 a5∞.

19...♖f6 20.a5

White changes his strategy, aiming to play on the dark squares. First he blocks the queenside and then he will re-inforce the e5-square.

20...♘d7 21.f4! g5 22.♘f3 h6?!

22...gxf4 23.exf4 ♘e4∞.

23.♘e5 ♕h8 24.♘a4!

White now stands better and Black should organise his defence.

24...♖g8



25.♗d3?!

25.♘c5 ♖g7 26.♗f3!+=

25...♖g7 26.♖e2 ♗e7 27.♖f1 ♘f6 28.♘c5 ♖ag8 29.♗b1 ♗c8 30.♗e1 ♗e8 31.♗g3 ♗e7 32.♗c2 ♖h7 33.♗h3 ♗e8 34.♗d3 ♗e7 35.♗g3 ♗e8 36.♗h3 ♗e7 37.♗g3 ♖hg7 38.♗h3 ♖h7 39.♕h1 ♗e8 40.♕g1

White couldn't find anything attractive to improve his position and he called it a day.

1/2-1/2

CONCLUSION

So the main characteristics of this manoeuvre (taking into account the stronger side as White and the defending side as Black) are:

1. The defending side places his knight on the d6/d3-square, making the minority attack with b4-b5/...b5-b4 harder.
2. The defending side should preserve the major pieces (queen & rooks), exchanging all other minor pieces if possible.
3. The defending side can launch an attack on the kingside, using his pawn structure. This is better done with the pawns placed on f6-g5-h5, not weakening the e5-square.
4. The best reaction for the stronger side is a well-timed e4 break in the centre.

THE FOREPOST

The strategic element of the forepost is directly related to those of the open file and the outpost.

From this one can deduce the actual definition of the term (which was introduced into English-language chess literature in my book series 'Chess College' — Gambit 2006), i.e. an outpost on an open file, on which we can place a minor piece.

But what is the use of the forepost? Why is it so important?

With the use of the forepost we achieve the blocking of a file that we are not immediately able to control. Behind the forepost we can double our rooks or manoeuvre them with complete freedom.

At an appropriate moment the forepost can be removed, allowing our rooks to spring into action. If necessary, the file can be blocked again in the same way.

The piece occupying the forepost may simultaneously be able to create threats, so that the opponent is unable to fulfil all defensive requirements of his position and allow the invasion of our rooks.

In general, the combination of an open file, a forepost and an outpost is a significant strategic advantage in itself and may easily suffice for victory.

Especially, a forepost deep in the opponent's camp can create many more difficulties for him, as he does not have enough space for manoeuvres at his disposal.

In certain rare cases the forepost may be used on diagonals that need to be blocked, utilising the same mechanism.

We will start our examination with a forepost deep in the opponent's camp, on a7 (h7) and even on some neighbouring square!

Example 1 ○



This is the main example, describing the concept.

1. ♖a7!

Unexpectedly, White conquers the a-file by temporarily blocking it on a square deep inside Black's camp; Black can do nothing about it.

1... ♟f5 2. ♜a6 ♞fc8 3. ♝ca1 e5 4. ♙c5 ♞xa6 5. ♞xa6

White won without much trouble; the a-file and his chances to win are fairly increased.

1-0

Well, the constructed example is nice, but what about the real world? We do not really know when this concept was firstly implemented, but we can take a good look at the next game for the FIDE World Championship (Candidates):

□ Spassky Boris

■ Karpov Anatoly

Leningrad 1974 ●

31...f4



White already occupies the a-file (the only open one), but Black's rooks are not so badly placed and even pressing down the c-file.

32. ♖a7!

This is the first time that this concept was used between such strong players.

32... ♜bb7

After 32... ♜a8 33. ♕f2! ♜xa2 34. ♚xa2 it would be easier for White to penetrate into Black's camp.



33. ♚e1!

White is targeting the b6-square, so his queen must be transferred to the g1-a7 diagonal.

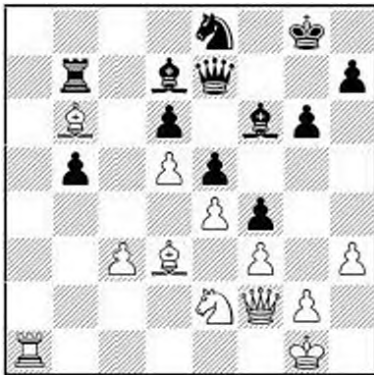
33... ♚d8 34. ♚f2 ♜c8 35. ♜a6 ♕f6!

Precise defence; Black tries to kick the white queen away from this diagonal.

36. ♖b6 ♜e7

Black could even go for 36... ♗h4!? 37. ♗xd8 ♗xf2+ 38. ♔xf2 ♜xd8 39. ♝a7+=

37. ♝a7 ♞cb8 38. ♞xb7 ♞xb7



39. ♕f1!

Preserving the queen on the important diagonal.

39... ♗h4 40. ♜g1 ♕g7 41. ♝a7?!

There is no point in exchanging the rook that controls the only open file on the board. White could preserve a small, but lasting advantage with the natural 41. ♝a8 ♖f6 42. ♗a5+=

41... ♝xa7 42. ♗xa7 ♜d8 43. ♜b6 ♜c7 44. ♜xc7 ♖xc7

The position is now equal and very close to the draw.

**45. ♗b8 ♖e8 46. ♖c1 ♗d8! 47. ♗a7 ♗a5 48. c4 bxc4 49. ♗xc4 ♕f7
50. ♖b3 ♗c7 51. ♗f2 g5 52. ♗e1 h5 53. ♖c1 ♖f6 54. ♖d3 ♕g6 55. ♗a6
g4 56. hxg4 hxg4 57. ♖b2 ♖h7 58. ♖c4 ♖g5 59. ♕f2 ♕f6 60. ♗b4 ♖f7
½-½**

Not long afterwards, in the Nice Olympiad, a classical and very well-known game was played:

□ Karpov Anatoly

■ Unzicker Wolfgang

Nice 1974

23...♔d8



A.Karpov was probably 'inspired' by the previous game...

24.♙a7!

Now every white piece has the opportunity to take up natural and strong positions. At the same time, Black's normal 'blood circulation' has been disrupted, and the guilty party in this instance is the knight on b7.

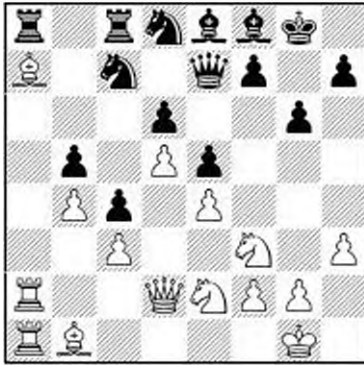
24...♞e8 25.♙c2

Here comes the rooks' doubling on the a-file.

25...♞c7 26.♖ea1 ♔e7 27.♙b1 ♙e8

The main problem of Black's cramped position is that he cannot exchange any pieces and he has not enough space for their regrouping, so he to just sit in a passive position, waiting for White to show his hand.

28.♞e2 ♞d8



White's spatial advantage is great but Black's position is solid and defensible. So, White uses the rule of the two weaknesses: as he cannot win (at least directly) on the queenside, he opens a second front on the kingside. And that's the power of the spatial advantage, as pieces can be transferred to either side in no time.

29. ♖h2! ♗g7 30. f4 f6

Bleak is 30...exf4 31. ♖xf4 ♜b7 (31...♗h6? 32. ♖xg6!+-) 32. ♜f3±

31. f5! g5?!

Black should refrain from creating new weaknesses on the kingside. He should strongly think of 31...♗d7 32. ♜f1± or 31...gxf5 32.exf5 ♜f7 33. ♜f1±

32. ♗c2!

The bishop will be transferred to the d1-h5 diagonal.

32...♗f7 33. ♜g3 ♜b7

33...h5 looks like the only move, but in fact helps White to completely open the kingside: 34. ♗d1 h4 35. ♜gf1 ♗e8 36. g3 hxg3 37. ♖xg3 ♗f7 38. ♜f3 ♜f8 39. h4 gxh4 40. ♖xh4+-

34. ♗d1 h6

On principle, this move should not be made until it is forced.

The weakening of g6 only accelerates Black's demise.

35. ♖h5!

After the exchange of the light-squared bishops, the light squares will be rather weak and White will invade via them.

35... ♜e8 36. ♜d1! ♞d8



37. ♝a3

As Black has no useful move, White takes his time to make the first time-control (move 40) and will only then decide how to finish the job!

37... ♜f8 38. ♝1a2 ♜g8 39. ♞g4! ♜f8 40. ♞e3 ♜g8 41. ♙xf7+ ♞xf7

If 41... ♜xf7 then 42. ♜h5 ♜xh5 43. ♞xh5 ♜f7 44. ♙b6! and the end is near...

42. ♜h5 ♞d8

42... ♞h8 keeps the white queen away from g6, but cannot save the game: 43. ♞g4 ♜xh5 44. ♞xh5 ♜f7 45. ♙b6+-

43. ♜g6! ♜f8 44. ♞h5

Black resigned as the threats of ♞g4 and ♙b6 cannot be met. The threat of moving the a7-bishop has been a continual nightmare for Black!

1-0

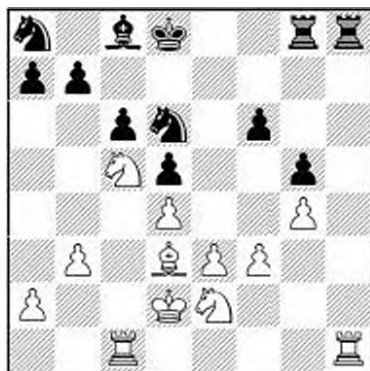
The concept was seen in another top game, this time for the FIDE World Championship of 1985:

□ Kasparov Garry

■ Karpov Anatoly

Moscow 1985

26...♖a8



White holds a small advantage, but it is not easy to propose a good plan, or is it not so?

27.♗h7!

A reflection of the a7-square; the idea remains the same.

27...♝f8?!

Too passive. Black should opt for 27...♝g7 28.♗f5 ♝gg8 29.♖g3+=

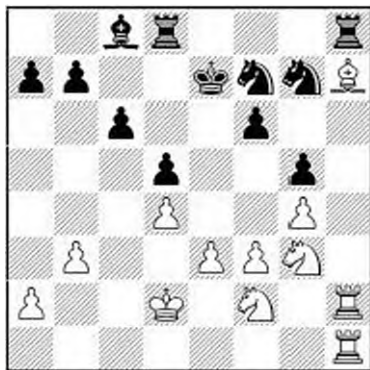
28.♝h6! ♜c7 29.♖g3 ♜f7 30.♝h2 ♜e6 31.♖d3!

Correctly preserving the knight, as Black lacks any other serious plan than exchanging some pieces.

31...♖g7 32.♝ch1 ♜e7 33.♖f2

The 'early' 33.♗g6?! ♝xh2+ 34.♝xh2 ♝h8 gives White nothing.

33...♖d8



34.♙f5?!

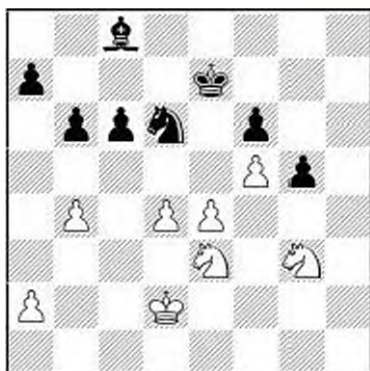
There is no point in this. As in the previous game, White should open a second front: 34.♖c3! ♗e6 35.e4 ♘d6 36.a4±

34...♗xh2 35.♗xh2 ♘xf5 36.gxf5 ♗h8! 37.♗xh8 ♘xh8

Now White has lost most of his advantage and the game steers towards the safe waters of a draw.

38.e4 ♘f7 39.♘g4 ♘d6! 40.♘e3 dxe4 41.fxe4 b6 42.b4?!

White's last inaccuracy. He should opt for 42.e5 ♘f7 (42...♘e8?! 43.♘e4±) 43.♘g4 fxe5 44.dxe5 c5 45.♖d3+=



42...♗a6! 43.♘g4 ♘b5 44.♖d3 ♘a3+

White has nothing better than 45.♖d2 ♘b5 46.♖d3 ♘a3+.

1/2-1/2

□ Tu Hoang Thong

■ Komliakov Viktor

Moscow 1994

23...♔e7



It seems that Black should be more-or-less OK, but the truth is that White stands better.

24.♔a6!

Not exactly the a7-square but one very near to it; the idea remains the same.

24...♖c7 25.♗a5 ♜ca7 26.♗ha1



Both sides have done their duty and doubled their rooks on the

a-file. White keeps the advantage, as anytime he moves his a6-bishop Black will be obliged to hand White a passed pawn after ... Bxa5 as White will reply bxa5 .

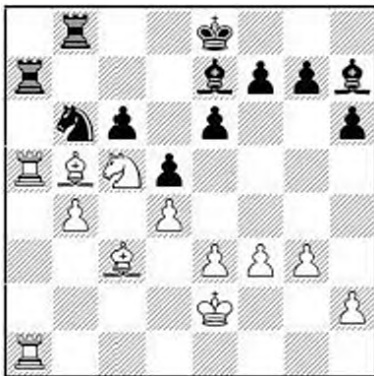
26... Ke8 ?

A blunder. Black had to go for 26... Qd8 27. Ke2 Nc4 28. Qb7 ! Nxa5 29. Qxa8 Bxa8 30. bxa5 Ke8 31. e4 ±

27. Ke2 ?

27. Qb5 ! would win: 27... Bxa5 28. Qxc6 + Kd8 29. bxa5 +-

27... Bb8 28. Qb5 !



28... Bxa5 ?

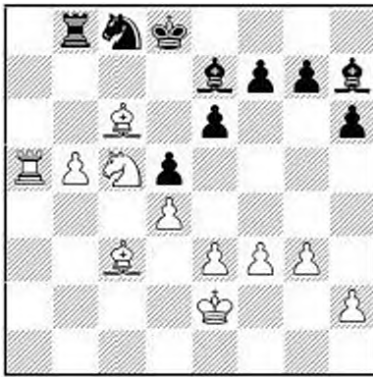
Black blunders again. More stubborn was 28... Bc7 29. Na6 Bcc8 30. Qd3 (30. Nxb8 ? cxb5 ±) 30... Qxd3 + 31. Kxd3 Bb7 32. Nc5 ±

29. Qxc6 + Kd8 30. Bxa5

30. bxa5 was good as well.

30... Nc8 31. b5

White wins.



31...♔d6?! 32.♖d7! 1-0

One of most important features in this concept is the well-timed removal of the forepost.

It must be effective and at least allow us to achieve our main target; the domination of the open file.

The ideal situation is for it to be removed with a lethal double attack, as in the next two games:

□ Trifunovic Petar

■ Aaron Manuel

Beverwijk 1962 ○



31.♗g8!

A double attack on h7 and d8 serves up a violent solution — Black resigned.

1-0

□ Von Popiel Ignatz

■ Marco Georg

Monte Carlo 1902 ○



In a way the d4-bishop is a kind of forepost, but obviously a bad one.

36. ♖d1?

A blunder. 36. ♗h4! was winning for White: 36... ♕h7 37. ♗f3 ♖c5 38. e5+-

But after the text move Black resigned! He could turn the tables here with a double threat after 36... ♗g1! which reveals one of the main powers of the forepost: the perfect time to remove it!

1-0

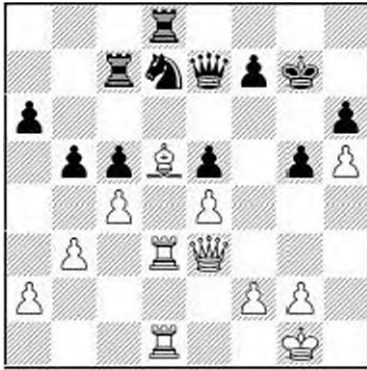
But of course things are not often so ideal! Sometimes we need to go for complications:

□ Jussupow Artur

■ Karpov Anatoly

London 1989

29... ♗d7



The forepost has worked well and White has been able to double rooks on the open d-file.

30. ♖xf7!?

A radical decision! White based his idea on the long-term pin on the d-file.

30... ♔xf7

Possible was 30... ♖xf7 although after 31. ♗h3 with attacking ideas such as ♖d6-g6 and ♖1d6, White seems to have the upper hand.

31. ♗d2

The ending after 31. ♗h3 is unclear: 31... ♖e6 32. ♖xe6+ ♔xe6 33. ♖d6+ ♔e7 34. ♖xh6 ♔f8 35. ♖xd8 ♔xd8 36. ♖xa6 bxc4 37. bxc4 ♔e7. White prefers to continue the pinning.

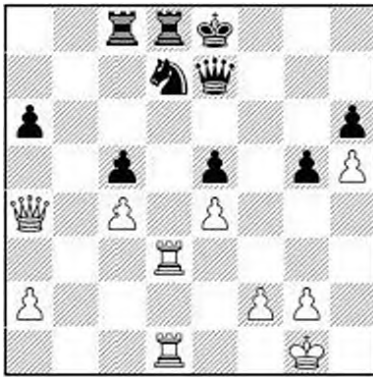
31... ♔e8 32. ♖a5 bxc4?!

32... ♖c6! 33. cxb5 axb5 34. ♖xb5∞.

33. bxc4?!

33. ♖d6! with ideas like ♖xa6 and ♖e6 or simply ♖xh6, was much better.

33... ♖cc8?! 34. ♖a4!



34...♖c7?

Black had to opt for 34...♖b8! when still nothing is clear after 35.♗c6 ♖b6 36.♗c7 ♗e6 37.♕d5.

35.♗xa6 ♖b8 36.♗g6+ ♔f8?!

Hastening the end, but also losing was 36...♔d8 37.♗f3 ♔c8 38.♗f7 or 36...♗f7 37.♗xf7+ ♔xf7 38.♗xd7+ ♗xd7 39.♗xd7+.

37.♗f3+ 1-0

- So Wesley
- Shirov Alexei
- Malmö 2011

1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.e3 e6 5.b3 ♘bd7 6.♙d3 ♙d6 7.♙b2 ♗e7 8.♘e5 ♙b4+ 9.♘d2 ♘xe5 10.dxe5 ♘d7 11.a3 ♙a5 12.0-0 f6 13.♘f3 ♙c7 14.exf6 ♘xf6 15.♘e5 0-0 16.f4 ♙d7 17.♗f3 ♙e8 18.♗c2 ♙xe5 19.♙xe5 ♘e4 20.♙xe4 dxe4 21.♗ff1 ♙g6



White stands somehow better, as he has much the better bishop.

22.c5!

An excellent move, preparing the d6-forepost!

22...♟fd8 23.♞d6 ♞f7 24.♟ad1

Now Black has to accept passivity and White can prepare plans both in the centre and on the kingside, while the queenside also comes to mind!

24...♞f5 25.♟d4 ♟d7 26.h3! h5

Black cannot allow a future g4 advance.

27.♟fd1 ♞g6 28.♞h2 h4

It is understandable that Black wants to 'kill' the advance g4 forever, but his pawn on h4 will be a permanent weakness. Natural is 28...♟ad8 29.♞f2, when White can prepare ♞h4 and ♟g1, with g4 to come.

29.♞f2 ♞h5 30.♟1d2 ♞h7?

Allowing a tactical shot. Black had to wait with something like 30...♟ad8, when White can continue with 31.a4, trying to create plans on the queenside as well!



31. ♖e5!

The forepost is removed with effect!

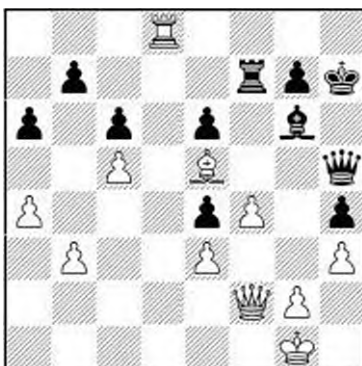
31... ♜f7

Black's resources are limited: 31... ♜xd4 32. ♜xd4 ♜f8 33. ♞d7 ♜f7 34. ♜xf7 ♜xf7 35. ♜xh4+- or 31... ♞d5 32. ♜b4! ♜f7 (32... ♜xd2 33. ♜xd2 ♜f7 34. ♜e1!+-) 33. ♜xd5 exd5 34. ♜xh4+-

32. ♞d7 ♜af8 33. ♞2d6 ♔g8 34. ♜xf7 ♜xf7 35. ♞d8+ ♔h7

White has improved his position a lot, as he fully controls the only open file and his rook has already broken into Black's camp. Now new weaknesses should be created.

36. a4 a6 37. ♜e1 ♞g6 38. ♔g1 ♞f5 39. ♜f2 ♞g6



White's main idea is to attack the black king with something like ♜d2, ♜b8 and ♜d8. But some preparations must be made first, as

Black might have ...♖g6-g3 and ...♙xh3, as counterplay. Anyway Black cannot improve his position and White is in no hurry.

40.♔f1 ♜f5 41.♔e1 ♚e8 42.♞d2 ♞g6 43.♞b8 ♞g3+

43...♞f8 44.♔f1 ♞h5 45.♔g1 ♞g6 46.♞e2!+-

44.♞f2!

White wins material and the game!

44...♚h5 45.♞xb7 ♜f7 46.♞xg3 ♞xg3 47.♞b6 ♞d7 48.♚d6!

The forepost returns, depriving Black of any counterplay along the d-file.

48...e5 49.fxe5 ♜f7 50.e6 ♜f2 51.♚xg3 ♞xg2 52.♚f4 g5 53.♔f1 ♞c2
54.♚xg5 ♞xc5 55.h4 ♔g6 56.e7 ♔f5 57.♞b8 ♞e5 58.♞f8+ ♔g4
59.♔g2

After 59...♚g6 60.♞f4+ ♔h5 61.♔g3 c5 (61...♞d5 62.♞f8) 62.♞f8
Black is in zugzwang.

1-0

□ Sasikiran Krishnan

■ Yu Yangyi

Tabriz 2014

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 b6 4.a3 ♚a6 5.♞b3 ♘c6 6.♞c2 ♘a5 7.e4
♚b7 8.♘c3 c5 9.d5 exd5 10.exd5 ♚e7 11.♚d3 ♚a6 12.b3 0-0 13.0-0
♘b7 14.♞e1 ♘d6 15.♚f4 ♞e8 16.h3 ♚f8



Black has a passive position and lacks space, so he wants to relieve the pressure somewhat by exchanging off pieces...

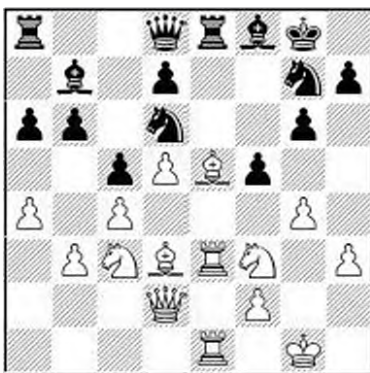
17. ♖e5!

But White is having none of it — a forepost is created!

17... ♗g6 18. ♜e3 ♜h5 19. ♝ae1 ♜g7 20. ♗g4!

White is probably winning already. Not only does he have more space and a clear attack, but Black's bishop and rook cannot come to the defence meaning he will be outnumbered when the showdown comes.

20... ♖b7 21. ♚d2 a6 22. a4 f5



Time for the forepost to be removed!

23. ♖xd6! ♜xe3 24. ♚xe3 ♖xd6 25. ♚h6!

With the threat ♖g5.

25...♗e7 26.gxf5! ♜xf5 27.♗xf5 gxf5

27...♗f8 28.♞f4 gxf5 29.♞xf5 h6 30.♜e4+-

28.♝h1! ♗f6

There is no defence. If 28...♞f8 White finishes off the game with the beautiful 29.♞g1+ ♝h8 30.♜e5!+-

29.♞g1+ ♝h8 30.♜h4! 1-0

Well done by now and I think that the concept has been fully understood.

But I am always of the opinion that a trainer or an author should back his opinion and prove that he knows his subjects.

And what better way than the implementation of the subject in his/her own games?

So, five games of mine will follow. Although I wasn't successful in all of them, I was able to improve by learning from my mistakes and keeping an objective mind.

□ Komljenovic Davor

■ Grivas Efstratios

Munich 1987

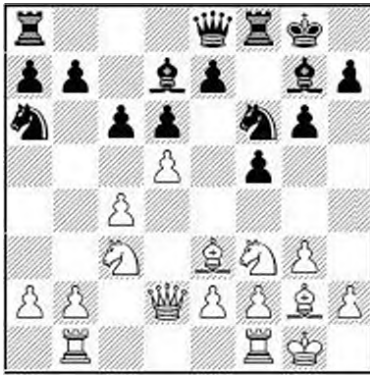
1.d4 f5 2.♜f3 ♜f6 3.g3 g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7 5.0-0 0-0 6.c4 d6 7.♜c3 ♞e8
8.d5 ♜a6 9.♗e3

A new continuation that doesn't trouble Black. White's main options in this position are 9.♜d4 and 9.♞b1.

9...c6 10.♞b1

10.♞c1 and 10.♞b3 are also possible, and more in the spirit of the position.

10...♗d7 11.♞d2?!



It becomes evident that White is not operating on the basis of a specific plan but is just making some 'simple' moves. This approach cannot bring any positive results.

11...d4! 12. e4 h6!

This had escaped White's attention. The next few moves are forced.

13. g5 c5 14. e3 dxe3 15. ex3 dxc7



Black has obtained the bishop pair and his position strikes one as more harmonious in general. His immediate plan is to start play on the queenside. The only plan apparently available to White is the advance e4, which requires a lot of preparatory moves (h4, f4, exd3); still, it is his only decent plan.

16. b4?

As mentioned above, this cannot be the right idea. With this move White further weakens his dark squares and offers Black the semi-open c-file, with a ready-made target on it (the c4-pawn).

16...cxb4 17.♞xb4 b6 18.♞f4 ♖a6 19.♞bb1 ♝c8!



20.♖b5

The only way to avoid material losses. Black had of course foreseen this continuation and now proceeds to transform his advantage: the strategic advantages of the semi-open file and the backward c-pawn are exchanged for an open file and a better minor piece (knight vs bishop).

20...♙xb5! 21.cxb5 ♖c5 22.♞h4 ♙xg5 23.♞xg5



Black is better, mainly thanks to his excellent knight. On c5, this knight fulfils an important task, that of Black's forepost on the c-

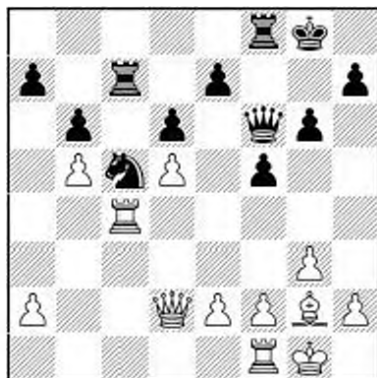
file. Black is planning to firstly improve the placement of his queen and then to double his rooks on the c-file, awaiting a suitable moment to move the c5-knight and occupy the file. White's greatest cause for headache is the passivity of his position.

23...♖f7! 24.♗b4 ♕f6! 25.♕d2

After 25.♕xf6 exf6! Black would also enjoy possession of the semi-open e-file. On the other hand, the black queen is now dominantly placed on the long a1-h8 diagonal, controlling several important squares.

25...♞c7! 26.♞c4?

White fails to withstand the pressure and blunders badly. The correct move-order was 26.♞c1 ♞fc8 27.♞bc4, when Black stands better but the conversion of his advantage into victory will require some more hard work. So, now the lethal effect of the forepost comes, revealing a double attack, which seals the victory. It is true that strategy is crowned by tactics...



26...♘e4!

The forepost moves with direct effect!

27.♕c2 ♞xc4 28.♕xc4 ♘d2 0-1

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Genov Petar

Iraklion 1993

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 ♠6 4.g3 ♔a6 5.♚b3 c6?!

5...♘c6 remains the main line.

6.♔g5!

If you want to become a good player you shouldn't play so early on automatic pilot! The 'natural' 6.♔g2?! d5 would fully justify Black's last move. Since the h1-a8 diagonal will be blocked after ...d5, the white bishop will have no targets on g2.

6...d5



7.cxd5! cxd5

7...exd5?! 8.♔xf6! ♚xf6 9.♘c3 ♘d7 10.♔g2 followed by 0-0, ♜fe1 and e4 promises a clear advantage to White.

8.e3! ♔xf1 9.♙xf1 ♔e7 10.♙g2 ♘c6!

The only continuation so as not to lose control of the c-file. After 10...♘bd7?! 11.♚c1 0-0 12.♘c3 ♠6 13.♘a4 Black's problems would be insoluble. Another bad move, handing a tempo to White, is 10...h6?! 11.♔xf6 ♔xf6 12.♚c1 0-0 13.♘c3 ♚d7 14.♚c2 ♘c6 15.♚a4 ♜fc8 16.♚ac1 ♚c7 17.♘xd5 ♚xd5 18.♚xc6 ♚d7 19.♚c2 ♚ac8 20.♚xc7 1-0 Grivas,E-Tsouktakos,N Athens 2004.

11.♖c1 ♘a5 12.♚b5+! ♚d7 13.♚a6!

Threatening 14.♘e5!

13...♙d6 14.♙xf6 gxf6 15.♘c3 ♚b7 16.♚e2

The exchange of queens would significantly relieve Black (16.♚xb7? ♘xb7 17.♘b5 ♙d7!), who now faces a multitude of problems: not only must he cater for the c-file, but also for his kingside weaknesses. This is the concept of the 'Rule of the Two Weaknesses'.

16...0-0 17.♖c2!



What we practically have here is a case of a forepost (the c3-knight) very close to the white camp. White will double rooks on the c-file and at the same time develop an initiative on the flank where the exposed black king resides. At the appropriate moment the forepost will be removed in such a way that Black will be unable to defend against all of White's threats. A simple plan, but the execution is difficult!

17...♗ac8 18.♗ac1 ♙g7 19.♘e1!

A strong move, aimed at the transfer of the knight(s) to the f4-square; from there, in combination with the approach of the white queen (Qh5) they will be able to create direct threats against the black king.

19...f5 20.♘d3 ♘c4?!



This appears strong, but in reality only serves to complicate Black's defensive task, as this knight works as a second forepost for White. Better is 20...♘c6 and ...♘e7, assigning the knight to the defence of the king.

21.♚h5 h6 22.♘e2! ♚a6?

With the false impression of imminent material gain, thanks to the double threat 23...♚xa2 and 23...♘xe3+. The defensive 22...♚d7 was essential.

23.♘ef4!



23...♚e7

23...♚xa2 is no improvement: 24.♚h4! ♜c7 25.♘h5+ ♚h7 26.♘f6+ ♚g7 27.♘f4 ♜fc8 (27...♘xf4 28.gxf4 intending ♜g1 and ♚h3+)

28.♔h1! ♕e7 29.g4!

24.b3 ♖d6 25.♗e5! ♕g5



This move loses in spectacular fashion, but in any event there was no salvation. Black could not free his position by 25...♗xc2 26.♗xc2 ♖c8 in view of 27.♗xf7 ♗xf7 (27...♗xc2 28.♖g6+ ♔f8 29.♗xe6+ ♔e8 30.♗e5+!) 28.♖g6+ ♔f8 (28...♔h8 29.♗xc8+ ♖xc8 30.♖xf7) 29.♗xe6+ ♔e8 30.♖c7, winning for White.

26.♗xe6+!!

White's great positional superiority creates the basic requirements for tactical combinations!

26...fxe6 27.♖c7+ ♔h8 28.♖g6

Black cannot avoid mate.

1-0

In the next game the forepost is not a central one but a mere 'edge' one. But it still helps!

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Kolani Leonard

Ankara 1993

1.d4 d6 2.e4 ♗f6 3.f3 g6 4.♕e3 c6 5.c4 ♗bd7 6.♗c3 a6?! 7.a4!

Black has already developed the queen's knight to d7, so he does not have the standard manoeuvre ...♞a6-b4 at his disposal after 7...a5.

7...♞a5 8.♙d3 ♙g7 9.♞ge2 0-0 10.0-0 e5



11.♞b1!

Preparing to meet 11...c5 with 12.b4! cxb4 13.♞a2. Similarly, after 11...exd4 12.b4! White would have the edge.

11...♞c7 12.♞d2 ♞e8 13.b4 b6 14.b5

Fighting for control of the d5-square. Black has no choice.

14...axb5 15.axb5 c5 16.d5

After 16.dxe5 ♞xe5! Black has adequate counterplay.

16...♙b7 17.♞a1 ♞f8?!

The direct 17...♞xa1 18.♞xa1 ♞a8 seems better. White would retain a plus thanks to his space advantage and kingside attacking potential, but Black would in turn have partly got rid of his problems on the a-file.

18.♞b2 ♞6d7 19.g3 f6 20.♞a4!



White uses the a4-knight as a forepost. His spatial superiority allows him to develop an initiative on both sides of the board but, for this venture to prove successful, he must refrain from exchanging pieces; this would help Black, who is suffering from a lack of space.

20...♖a7 21.♖a2 ♜ea8 22.♟fa1 ♚b8 23.♙d2

As Black can only wait, White improves the placement of his pieces in preparation for the f4 break, which anyway is the only really promising idea at his disposal.

23...♔f7 24.♚c2 ♔g8 25.♘c1 ♚d8 26.♙f1 ♔f7 27.♙h3 ♚b8 28.♘d3 ♚d8 29.♞e1 ♙c8 30.♞ea1 ♙b7 31.♟f1 ♙c8 32.f4

After several preparatory moves, White proceeds according to plan.

32...♔g8 33.♞a3 ♔h8 34.fxe5

Another good option was 34.f5 g5 35.♙g4! intending h4, ♔g2 and ♞h1.

34...♘xe5 35.♘xe5 dxe5

This move offers White a passed d-pawn, but 35...fxe5 36.♙xc8 ♞xc8 37.♞af3 is too dangerous to contemplate.

36.♙xc8 ♞xc8 37.♟fa1 ♞ca8 38.♚b3 ♘d7



If Black could place his knight on d6 he wouldn't face any real problems. However, things are not so simple yet.

39. ♖c3!

The time has come to remove the forepost, since White has, thanks to his purposeful strategy, increased his advantage (in addition to his spatial plus, better bishop and forepost, he now also has a protected passed pawn). Naturally, the white rooks will not manage to infiltrate into the enemy camp as they will be promptly exchanged. However, the occupation of the a-file by the white queen will prove just as significant, in combination with the advance of the white pawns on the kingside (minority attack!) this will further increase White's plus.

39... ♜xa3 40. ♜xa3 ♜xa3 41. ♚xa3 ♚b8 42. g4!

Preventing a possible pawn-break with ...f5, while also clearing the g3-square for the knight, which can help the advance of the kingside pawns. Indeed, the advances g5 and h4-h5 are an integral part of White's plan, since he cannot hope to win only on one flank, but needs to combine play on both.

42... h6 43. ♗e2 ♜h7 44. ♗g3 ♗f8 45. ♚a6 ♗d7 46. h4!



White now threatens 47.h5, gaining the f5-square for his knight. White's superiority would be clear, perhaps even decisive, but Black anyway had to sit tight. The sacrifice he now employs offers nothing of value and hence should have been avoided.

46...f5? 47.gxf5 ♖f6 48.fxg6+ ♔xg6 49.♔g2 ♔h7 50.♚a3!

The queen's mission on the a-file has ended, as new and more significant inroads have been created on the kingside.

50...♞e8 51.♞f5 ♞d6 52.♚g3 ♚f8 53.♞xd6 ♚xd6 54.h5 ♚f6 55.♚g4 ♔g8 56.♙e1 ♚d8 57.♙g3 ♚f6 58.♚f5 ♚xf5 59.exf5 e4

1-0

The next two games you certainly can't call a success for the author!

- Grivas Efstratios
 - Gabriel Christian
- Budapest 1994

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♞f3 ♞f6 4.♞c3 ♙e7 5.♙g5 0-0 6.e3 h6 7.♙h4 b6 8.♙d3 dxc4

This move is not considered the most accurate. The continuation 8...♙b7 9.0-0 ♞bd7 10.♚e2 ♞e4 lends a dynamic character to the position.

9.♙xc4 ♙b7 10.0-0 ♞bd7 11.♚e2



11...♘e4

Black is trying to free his position by exchanges. Instead, the premature 11...c5?! 12.♖fd1 would be fraught with danger for Black.

12.♘xe4! ♙xe4

After the alternative 12...♙xh4 13.♘c3! ♙f6 14.♖fd1 ♚e7 15.♙a6! White is in the driving seat.



13.♙g3! ♙d6 14.♖fd1 ♙xg3 15.hxg3 ♚e7 16.♖ac1 ♖fd8 17.♙d3!

Both sides have played useful moves, preparing for the eventual ...c5 advance.

17...♙xd3 18.♖xd3 c5 19.♖dc3! ♘f6?

Black should refrain from releasing the tension and wait with 19...a5 20.♚b5 ♖ab8.

20. dxc5! ♖e4 21. ♖c4 ♗xc5 22. ♗d4! ♜f8 23. b4! ♗d7 24. ♗c6 ♞e8

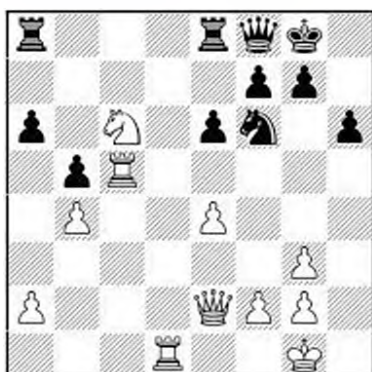
White's superiority is obvious. He controls the c-file while the c6-knight (the forepost) radiates power. Moreover, the black pieces are huddled on the back rank, devoid of any prospects.



25. e4 ♗f6 26. ♞d1?!

There was no reason for this move. Much better was 26. a4! or even 26. ♖4c3 and ♞a3.

26... b5!? 27. ♞c5 a6



28. ♜c2?!

White has strayed from the right path. After 28. a4! bxa4 29. ♜c4 he would retain his advantage.

28... ♗h8 29. ♗e5 ♗g8 30. ♗c6 ♗h8 31. a3 ♞ec8 32. ♗e5?!



From the 26th move onwards White has been playing without a particular plan for converting his superiority. Consequently, he slowly ruins his position. 32.f3 and 33.♖c1 was necessary.

32...♗xc5 33.bxc5 ♖c8 34.c6 ♜e7 35.♔h1?!

White should of course continue with 35.f3! ♜c7 36.♜c3, when he retains the better chances, despite the childish mistakes committed so far.

35...♔g8! 36.a4 b4 37.♜c4 a5 38.f4 ♜c7 39.♗d3 ♜b6 40.♔h2 h5 41.♜b5 ♜c7 42.♗d4

White could continue pressing for victory, but instead agreed to a draw, disappointed with his many mistakes.

1/2-1/2

□ Nikolaidis Ioannis

■ Grivas Efstratios

Karditsa 1998

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.g3 ♗g7 4.♗g2 0-0 5.♘f3 d6 6.0-0 ♘c6 7.♘c3 ♗f5 8.♗g5 ♘e4?!

A mediocre reaction to a rather mediocre line (8.♗g5). 8...h6 9.♗xf6 ♗xf6 is preferable.

9.♘xe4 ♗xe4 10.d5 ♗xf3?

Black fails to understand the problems of the position. 10...♘b8 should be preferred.

11.exf3!



Intending to apply pressure on the semi-open e-file and the backward e7-pawn in particular.

11...♘e5 12.♙c1 b6?!

The immediate 12...♙f6 is better. Black mistakenly feared White's c5 advance.

13.♙e1 ♗f6 14.h4!

Naturally, 14.♙xf6? exf6 would immediately solve Black's problems.

14...a5 15.f4! ♘d7 16.♙e2!

Black's position is already lost. White threatens to double rooks on the e-file and place his light-squared bishop on h3, while Black is devoid of any substantial prospects.

16...♘c5 17.♗h3 ♖g7 18.h5 h6

Ugly, but what else is there?

19.♗xf6+ exf6



20. ♖d4!

If Black were given time to play 20...f5, shutting out the white bishop, a great part of his difficulties would vanish.

20... ♖e8 21. ♖ce1 ♖xe2 22. ♖xe2 ♖f8 23. hxg6 fxg6?



Black's only chance lay in 23... ♖e8! 24. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 25. gxf7 ♖xf7, retaining some survival chances despite the material deficit.

24. ♗e6!

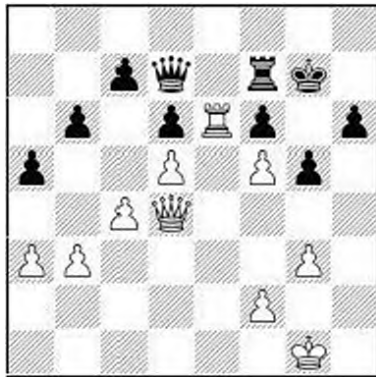
The forepost! Now the black rook will be aimlessly moving to and fro, while White will have all the time in the world to organise his future plans.

24... ♖e8 25. ♖e3 ♖e7 26. f5 g5?

The final error. 26...gxf5 27. ♖f4 ♗h8 was essential.

27.h3! ♖e8 28.a3 ♜d7 29.♙xd7! ♚xd7 30.♞e6! ♜f7

No better is 30...♞xe6 31.fxe6 ♚e7 32.g4! White will bring his king to f5 and then advance his queenside pawns, while in the meantime Black will run out of useful moves.



31.♚d1! ♜f8 32.♚e2! 1-0

Black resigned due to 32...♜f7 33.♚h5! A very 'clean' game, despite (or rather thanks to!) Black's mistakes, where several strategic elements were encountered: open and semi-open files, forepost and passed pawn!

CONCLUSION

The forepost is an important strategical concept, which is not widely spread among low-rated players but vastly used by the top.

It is important to understand and implement it properly. And always keep in mind that it is directly and strongly connected with the concepts of the open file and the outpost.

THE HUNGARIAN KNIGHT-TOUR

One of the main advices of the experts is to not place your pieces on the edge of the board.

Centralisation and initiative are a must in our days and chess players are usually focused on these two assets.

I also believe in these assets but I do not feel ashamed to use some edge squares for my pieces, if this is necessary for my plans...

I have noticed some games where a knight is placed temporarily on h1/h8, as a part of its route to 'more' central squares!

Sometimes this knight-tour is connected with the g4/...g5 advance and pressure on the centre.

I named the concept 'The Hungarian Knight-Tour' mainly because I primarily met it in Hungarian players' games!

But let's see what it is about after all:

□ Lukacs Peter

■ Horvath Gyula

Budapest 1989 ○



White should feel happy due to his more centralised pieces. But it is essential to force the e5 advance, activating his rooks and his knight as well. The not-so-well-placed knight should be transferred to a better square, namely c6 or e6.

29.g4!?

Preparing the knight-route to the d4-square via h1.

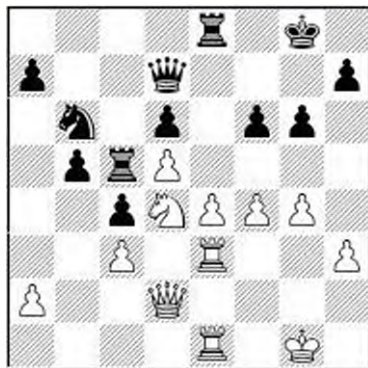
29...♚a6?

Black loses valuable time. He should also think of improving his knight and this is better done by heading for the c5-square. So, 29...♞d7! was a must: 30.♞h1 ♜c7 31.♞g3 ♞c5 32.♞f5 ♞d3 33.♞f1∞. He obviously thought that his knight on b6 defends against the e5-advance, because of the pressure on the d5-pawn.

30.♞h1 ♜c8 31.h3 ♞e8?!

Although Black has lost time with his queen, he should again opt for placing his knight on c5: 31...♜c7 32.♞g3 ♞d7 33.♞f5 ♚a6 34.♞e7+ ♜h8 35.♞c6+=

32.♞g3 g6 33.♞e2 ♚d7 34.♞d4



Now Black is in trouble — the white knight makes the difference...

34...♞cc8 35.♞d1?

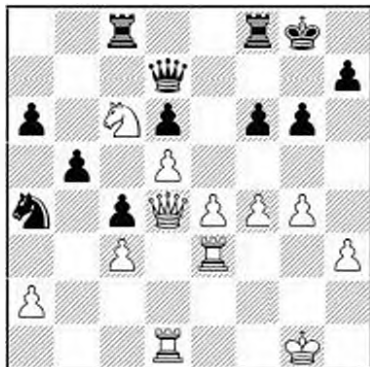
Here White could play 35.f5! After 35...g5 (35...a6 36.fxg6 hxg6 37.♞f1 ♚e7 38.♞e6±) 36.♞e6, and ideas as ♚d4 and h4-♞h3, he would have a nearly decisive advantage.

35...♞a4! 36.♞c6?!

Again 36.f5! ♖c5 37.♗e6 would be preferable. But White was focused on the e5-advance...

36...a6 37.♕d4 ♝f8

Now everything has been prepared for the final assault, something quite common in modern players' games; something that it is driven by the 'plan'!



38.e5! fxe5 39.fxe5 dxe5?

The decisive mistake. Black should have opted for 39...♖ce8!
40.e6 ♕g7+=

40.♝xe5?

After 40.♗xe5! ♕d6 41.g5! the threat of ♗g4 is difficult to be met...

40...♝xc6?

Panic! Black had to try to defend with 40...♖ce8 41.♖de1 ♝xe5
42.♕xe5±

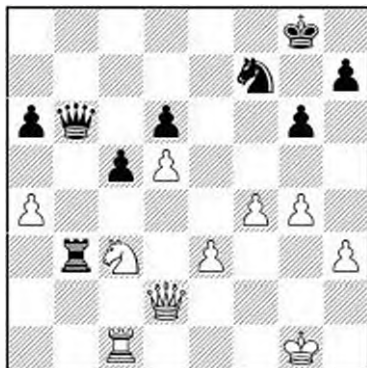
41.dxc6 ♕xc6 42.♝e7 ♕f6 43.♕xf6 ♝xf6 44.♝d8+ ♝f8 45.♝dd7

1-0

I was lucky to watch the 2nd example live, as I was present at the 2013 Tata Steel event:

□ Nikolic Predrag
■ Rapport Richard
Wijk aan Zee 2013 ○

31. ♖d2



Black's knight looks more-or-less OK, but still it lacks any good attacking square. And passivity is not welcomed by the new generation!

31...g5!?

After 31...♔g7 32.g5! h6 33.h4 ♖b4 34.♙c2 chances would be more-or-less equal.

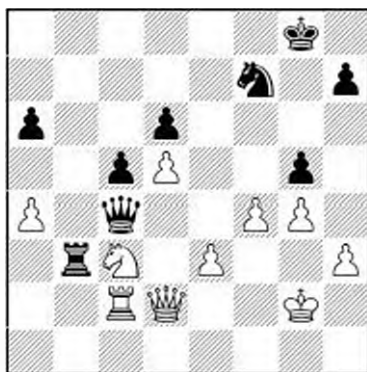
32.♙c2?!

The active 32.♘e4! should be best: 32...♖b4 (32...gxf4 33.exf4 ♖b4 34.♘f6+ ♔g7 35.♘h5+ ♔f8 36.♖xb4 ♙xb4 37.a5+=) 33.♖xb4 ♙xb4 34.♘xg5 ♘xg5 35.fxg5 ♙xa4 36.♙b1 ♙a2! (36...♙b4?! 37.♙a1 ♙b6 38.♔f2±) 37.♙b6 a5 38.♙xd6 a4 39.♙d8+ ♔f7 40.♙d7+ ♔g6 41.d6 ♙d2 42.♙a7 ♔xg5 43.d7 h5 44.gxh5 ♔xh5 45.♔f1 a3 46.♔e1 ♙d6= Note that if White wants to have a passed & protected pawn with f5, then he would have to live with an excellently-placed black knight on e5.

32...♖b4!

Now Black improves his queen before any further operations.

33.♔h2 ♚c4 34.♔g2



34...♗h8!

The knight-tour begins...

35.♔f2 ♗g6 36.♗e2

White could think of 36.fxg5 ♗e5∞.

36...♚xa4 37.♖b2?!

White's time-trouble was a key-factor here, as he missed his chance with 37.♖a2 ♚c4 38.fxg5 ♗e5 39.♗f4∞.

37...gxf4 38.exf4?

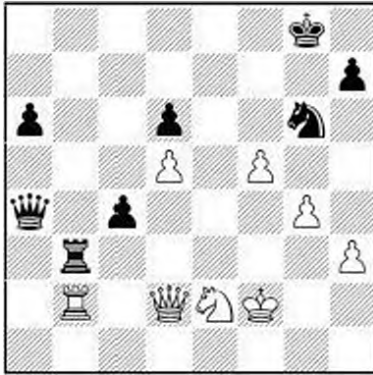
Another grave mistake. Forced was 38.♖xb3 ♚xb3 39.exf4 ♚xh3 40.♚b2! ♚h4+ (40...♚xg4 41.♚b8+ ♔f7 42.♚xd6) 41.♔e3 ♚e7+ 42.♔f3 a5=+

38...c4?

Returning the favour. 38...♖xh3! 39.♖b8+ ♔f7 40.♖b7+ ♗e7+ was rather easy...

39.f5?

Ping-pong time-trouble mistakes. 39.♖xb3! seems to hold: 39...cxb3 40.f5! ♗e5 41.♚g5+ ♔f7 42.♚h5+=



39...c3!

Decisive — Black wins the white knight!

40.♖xc3

40.♖e3 cxb2 41.♖e6+ ♔g7 42.fxg6 ♖b7-+

40...♗f4+ 41.♔e1

41.♗xf4 ♖xb2+ 42.♔g3 ♗xf4 43.♔xf4 a5-+

41...♗g3+ 42.♔d1 ♖xc3 43.♖b8+

43.fxg6 ♗f3+ 44.♖e2 ♗h1+ 45.♖e1 ♖c1+-+

43...♔g7 44.♖b7+ ♔f6 45.fxg6 ♗f3+ 46.♖e2 ♗h1+

and White resigned due to 47.♖e1 ♗xd5+ 48.♗d2 ♗h1+ 49.♖e1 ♖d3+ 50.♔c2 ♗xe1 51.♔xd3 ♗f1+ 52.♔d4 ♗f2+ 53.♔c3 ♗f3+.

0-1

□ Ghaem Maghami Ehsan
 ■ Salem AR Saleh
 Khanty-Mansiysk 2013 ○



White's spatial advantage is an important factor in this position, as it deprives Black of any form of counterplay. But something can still be improved!

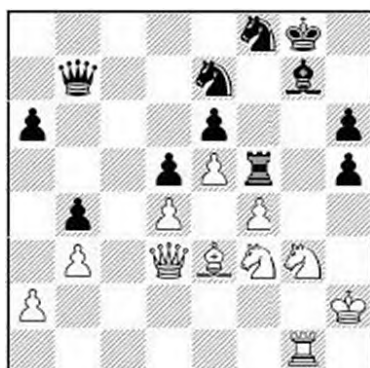
31. ♖h1! ♜f5 32. ♘g3 ♝e7!?

Black decided to sac the exchange, hoping for a good blockade on the light squares. 32...♜f7 33.h4± and h5 wasn't too appealing to him...

33.h4!?

33.♘xf5 exf5 34.♚d2 ♝e6 was Black's idea, although after 35.h4! White should win. But the Hungarian Knight looks too important to exchange it for a rook...

33...♔g8 34.h5 gxh5



35. ♖h4!

Very well-played and decisive, as now the blockade on f5 will be broken.

35... ♖b5

Black is without defence. Also easy was 35... ♖f7 36. f5 exf5 37. ♖gxf5 ♖xf5 38. ♖xf5+-

36. ♖xb5 axb5 37. ♖hxf5 ♖xf5 38. ♖xf5 exf5 39. ♖c1 ♖e6 40. ♖c6 ♖f7 41. ♖d6 ♖f8 42. ♖xd5 1-0

□ Iljin Artem

■ Wilschut Peter

Leiden 2013 ○



It seems that Black's activity on the kingside is promising, but in reality it only weakens his position!

19. fxg5! hxg5 20. g4!

And now the Black centre will fall under heavy attack.

20... ♖d7 21. gxf5 ♖xf5 22. ♖h1

A well-known idea, but here I would have opted for 22. ♖h1 ♖h6 23. ♖g1 ♖h7 24. ♖af1 ♖e6 25. ♖g3+=

22... ♖h3! 23. ♖f2 ♖e6?!

Black missed the active 23...♘g4! After 24.♙xf8+ ♜xf8 25.♚xe4 ♜f6 26.♚c2 ♚e6, White cannot really afford to protect his extra pawn: 27.♜f2 (27.♙d2? ♜g4+) 27...♚xe3 28.♚d3=

24.♜g3

The knight has completed its mission and now the black centre is rather weak...

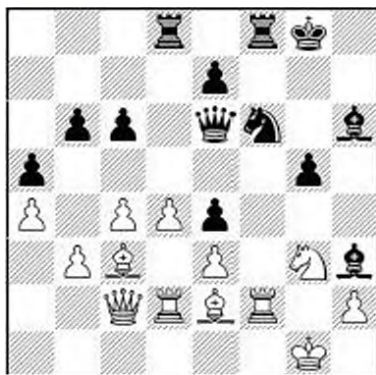
24...♙h6 25.♚d1

Also good was 25.a5 b5 26.♙f1 ♙xf1 27.♚axf1 ♜g4 28.♙xf8+ ♜xf8 29.♚xf8+ ♙xf8 30.cxb5 cxb5 31.♚xe4±

25...♚ad8 26.♚d2

White seems to be in no hurry with the d5-advance, but here it was quite good: 26.d5! cxd5 27.♙xf6 exf6 28.cxd5±

26...a5



27.♙f1?

A bad idea, losing the advantage. 27.d5! again was strong.

27...♙g4?

And Black returns the favour! 27...♙xf1 28.♚xf1 ♜g4 was unclear.

28.♙g2

Now the e4-pawn is lost...

28...♖f7 29.♘xe4 ♘xe4 30.♗xe4 ♗xe4 31.♙xe4 ♙d7 32.♖xf7 ♚xf7
33.c5 g4 34.♚f2 1-0

CONCLUSION

Obviously, dogmatic treatment should be forbidden! Our pieces should seek centralisation in general, but any square is good and should be used for this purpose!

If we keep this in mind, we will be able to find manoeuvres such as ♘h1/h8, which in certain cases will improve our position.

THE ROYAL CENTRE

The centre is the most important part of the board, as it is a keystone to dominating and controlling the entire game.

A logical concept which we are trained in since our chess childhood and we try to implement in our games, either fighting to gain or to destroy it!

But what about the so-called Royal Centre? The centre which is constructed by four central doubled e- and d-pawns; a rare case as nobody is willing to allow his opponent to take this luxury!

Naturally, there are some games where this concept was met — and usually the weaker side was driven by a weak player!

□ Alekhine Alexander

■ Betak Miroslav

Czechoslovakia 1925



A really impressive white centre which deprives Black of mobility and active plans; this is exactly what the powerful centre does!

17. ♖h4 ♜d7

17... ♙xg5 wouldn't save Black, but nevertheless he had to try it:
18. ♖xg6 hxg6 19. ♙xg5 ♜xg5 20. ♖c1 ♜h4+ 21. ♙d2 ♜e7 22. e6! fxe6
23. ♖xf8+ ♙xf8 24. dxe6 ♜xe6 25. e5 ♜d7 26. ♜f1+ ♙g8 27. ♜g2+-

18. ♖f5

18. ♖xg6 hxg6 19. e6+- looks stronger.

18... ♗xf5 19. exf5 ♜xe5

Desperation, but even 19... ♗xg5 20. f6 ♗xc1 21. ♖xc1+- was curtains.

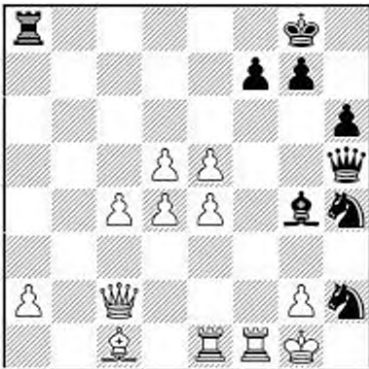
20. dxe5 ♖xd5 21. f6 ♖xe5 22. fxe7 ♖xe7 23. ♗d2 ♜ad8 24. ♖c2 1-0

□ Osieka Udo

■ Schienmann Bruno

Germany 1990

32. e4



A fine centre, but Black's attack is more dangerous!

32... ♜2f3+?

32... ♗f3! was decisive: 33. e6 ♜xf1 34. ♖xf1 ♗xg2 35. exf7+ ♜f8+-

33. ♖xf3?

After 33. gxf3 ♜xf3+ 34. ♖xf3 ♗xf3 35. ♖b2, White would be three pawns up but his stripped-bare king is a big obstacle to overcome; Black is better.

33... ♜xf3+?

Concluding a series of silly moves! Good was 33...♙xf3! 34.gxf3
 ♜xf3+ 35.♔f1 ♚h1+-+

34.gxf3 ♙xf3 35.♚h2?!

As mentioned beforehand, 35.♚b2 was the only move.

35...♚g4+ 36.♔f1 ♙xe4

The white centre is falling apart...

37.a3 ♙d3+?!

37...♚f3+! 38.♔g1 ♜a4+

**38.♔f2 ♚xd4+ 39.♙e3 ♚xc4 40.d6 ♜xa3 41.♚g3 ♙f5 42.♚f4 ♜a2+
 43.♔g1 ♚c2 44.♚f2 ♚c3! 45.♙d4 ♚b4 46.♚e3 ♜d2 47.♚f1 ♙h3**

47...♜xd4! 48.♜xf5 ♜d1+ 49.♔f2 ♚h4+ 50.♚g3 ♚d4+ 51.♚e3 ♜d2+-+

**48.♚f2 ♜xd4 49.♚xh3 ♜g4+ 50.♔f1 ♚b1+ 51.♔e2 ♚c2+ 52.♔f3
 ♚e4# 0-1**

- Skjoldan Benjamin
 - Minina Veronika
- Malmö 2003

27.e4



Of course Black is lost; his pieces are uncoordinated and the white centre is impressive.

27...c6

Black has to try something. Of no help is the alternative 27...♖d8
28.♗e3 ♗e8 29.♗c4±

28.d6?!

The text blunders a pawn. Natural was 28.♗e3.

28...♗e6?!

Black had to try 28...♙xd6, although he will lose after 29.h4 ♖h5
30.♖c3 ♙e7 31.d5.

29.d5! cxd5 30.exd5 ♗c5 31.e6! fxe6 32.dxe6?!

32.♖c3 is mate in 8! But anyway, White is winning.

32...♗xe6 33.♖xg5 ♗xg5 34.d7 ♖b8

34...♗d8 35.♗e8 ♗f7 36.♗xf7+-

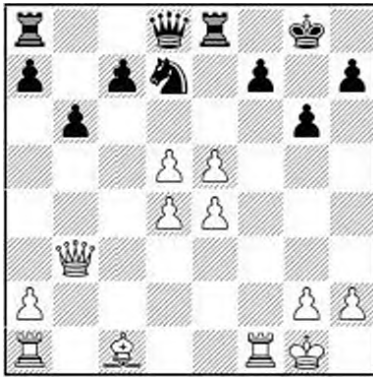
35.♗e8 1-0

□ Piche Guy

■ Dumont Felix

Repentigny 2008

**1.f4 d5 2.e3 g6 3.♗f3 ♙g7 4.d4 ♗f6 5.c4 ♙f5 6.♗c3 0-0 7.♖b3 b6
8.cxd5 ♗e4 9.♙c4 ♗d7 10.♗e5 ♙xe5 11.fxe5 e6 12.0-0 ♗xc3
13.bxc3 ♖e8 14.e4 exd5 15.♙xd5 ♙e6 16.c4 ♙xd5 17.cxd5**



Strong centre, space, dark-square weaknesses around the black king; what else does White need to win?

17...♖h4 18.♗f3 f6

18...♜f8 19.♙a3+-

19.e6

19.exf6 was winning as well: 19...♜xe4 20.f7+ ♔g7 21.♙a3 ♜f8 22.g3!+-

19...♞b8 20.g3! ♗h5 21.♗xf6 g5

21...♞a6 22.♗f7+ ♔h8 23.♙f4+-

22.♗f7+! ♗xf7 23.exf7+ ♔f8 24.fxe8=♗+ ♔xe8 25.♙xg5 ♞a6 26.a3 ♔d7 27.♜f7+ ♔c8 28.♜f8+ ♔b7 29.♞xa8 ♔xa8 1-0

- Fekete Albert
- Egedi Istvan
- Hungary 2008



In the endgame this centre is not so strong, as it can be considered as a deficit of doubled, useless pawns! Here it is not easy for White to create a passed pawn, while Black can think of his two majorities on either side of the board (a7-b6 vs a3 and h6-g7 vs h2).

39...♗g2 40.♞c1 ♔d7 41.e6+!

White has to be active, so he is obliged to 'destroy' his centre. But by exchanging his two central pawns for the black c- and f-pawns, he achieves two connected passed pawns!

41...fxe6 42.dxe6+ ♔xe6 43.♞xc7 g5+ 44.♔f3 ♞xh2 45.d5+ ♔d6?

45...♔e5! 46.♞e7+ ♔d6 47.♞e6+ ♔d7 would be unclear.

46.♞c6+ ♔d7 47.♞g6?

Passed pawns must be pushed! 47.e5 ♞d2 48.e6+ ♔e7 49.♞c7+ ♔f8 50.♔e4 would be curtains!

47...♞h1 48.♔e3 ♔e7 49.e5 ♞e1+ 50.♔d4 ♞d1+ 51.♔e4 ♞e1+ 52.♔f5 ♞f1+ 53.♔g4 ♞g1+ 54.♔f3 ♞f1+ 55.♔g2



55...♖f5?

55...♖e1! 56.d6+ ♔d7 57.♖g7+ ♔d8 58.♖g8+=

56.d6+ ♔f7

56...♔d7 57.♖g7+ ♔c6 58.♖c7+ ♔d5 59.d7+-

57.e6+

Not bad, but 57.d7 was clearer.

57...♔xg6 58.d7 ♖d5 59.e7 ♖xd7 60.e8♖+ ♖f7 61.♔g3 ♔g7 62.♗e5+ ♔h7 63.♗e6 ♔g7 64.♗e8 ♖f8 65.♗e5+ ♔g6 66.♗d4 ♖f7 67.♗h8 h5 68.♗g8+ ♖g7 69.♗e6+ ♔h7 70.♗f6 ♔g8 71.♗h6 g4 72.♗xh5 ♔f8 73.♗d5 ♖c7? 74.♗d6+?

74.♗d8+-

74...♖e7 75.♔xg4 ♔e8 76.♔f5 ♖d7 77.♗c6 ♔d8 78.♔e6 ♖c7 79.♗a8+ ♖c8 80.♗d5+?

80.♗b7 ♖c7 81.♗d5+ ♔e8 82.♗a8+ or 80.♗xa7 were easy wins.

80...♔c7 81.♗e5+ ♔b7 82.♔d7 ♖c5 83.♗e4+ ♔b8 84.a4 ♖c7+ 85.♔d6 ♖c5 86.♗e7 a5 87.♗f7 ♔a8 88.♗e8+ ♔b7 89.♗e7+

White has a winning position but for some reason he agreed to a draw!

1/2-1/2

□ Dazj Andrea

■ Cocciaretto Marco

Porto Sant Elpidio 2008

31.d4



White stands better, although the weakness of the white king should not be underestimated.

31...♖b8 32.♙b4?

32.a4± was natural.



32...c3?

32...♖xb5 was forced, although White remains on top: 33.♙f2 ♖b3 34.e6 fxe6 35.dxe6 ♙xe6 36.d5 ♙h3 37.e5 ♖xd5 38.e6 ♙xe6

39.♖xe6 c3 40.♗e1 c2 41.♙d2±

33.♙xc3?!

33.♗e2! ♗xe2 34.♖xe2 ♖xb5 35.♙xc3+-

33...♖xb5 34.♗f2?

Blundering a piece...

34...♗xc3

And Black won in 64 moves.

35.♗e3 ♗c2 36.♗e2 ♗c3 37.♖d1 ♖b2 38.♖d3 ♖b1+ 39.♔f2 ♖f1+
40.♗xf1 ♗c2+ 41.♗e2 ♗c1 42.♗e1 ♗c2+ 43.♖d2 ♗c3 44.d6 ♙g4
45.♗e3 ♗c1 46.d5 ♗h1 47.h4 ♗h2+ 48.♔f1 ♙h3+ 49.♔e1 ♗h1+
50.♗g1 ♗xg1+ 51.♔e2 ♗f1+ 52.♔e3 ♗g1+ 53.♔d3 ♙f1+ 54.♔c3
♗xg3+ 55.♔d4 ♗xa3 56.d7 ♗b4+ 57.♔e3 ♗c3+ 58.♔f2 ♗xd2+
59.♔xf1 ♗f4+ 60.♔g1 ♗g3+ 61.♔f1 ♗xh4 62.e6 fxe6 63.dxe6 ♔f8
64.e5 ♔e7 0-1

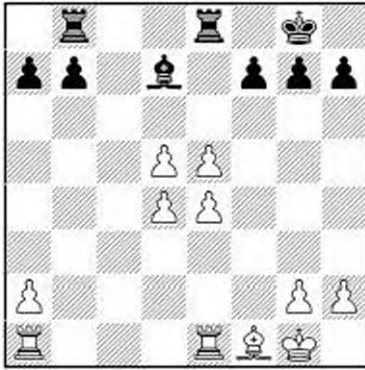
1-0

□ Fizzotti Mario

■ Moroni Luca Jr

Robecchetto 2008

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.♘c3 ♙b4 5.♙g5 ♘c6 6.e3 ♙d7 7.cxd5
exd5 8.♗b3 ♙xc3+ 9.bxc3 ♖b8 10.♙xf6 ♗xf6 11.♗xd5 ♗e6
12.♗xe6+ ♙xe6 13.e4 ♘e7 14.d5 ♙d7 15.♙d3 ♘g6 16.0-0 0-0
17.♖fe1 ♖fe8 18.♘d4 ♘e5 19.♙f1 c6 20.f4 c5 21.fxe5 cxd4 22.cxd4



Of course this case is easy, as White has the impressive centre with two good pawns up and Black has no counterplay!

22...♞e7 23.♞ac1 ♔g4 24.d6 ♞d7 25.h3 ♔h5 26.♞c7 ♞xc7 27.dxc7
 ♞c8 28.♞c1 ♔f8 29.d5 a6 30.d6 ♔e8 31.♔c4 ♔d7 32.♔d5 b5 33.♔b7
 33.♔c6+ ♔e6 34.d7.

1-0

□ Hoareau William
 ■ Stephan Victor
 Aix les Bains 2009

1.d4 g6 2.g3 ♘f6 3.♔g2 ♔g7 4.♘f3 0-0 5.0-0 d6 6.b3 e5 7.♔b2 e4
 8.♘fd2 d5 9.c4 e3 10.fxe3 ♔h6 11.e4 ♘g4 12.cxd5 ♘e3 13.♞c1
 ♘xf1 14.♞xf1 ♘d7 15.e5 ♘b6 16.e4



White has sacrificed an exchange, but this looks too little for

a position with such an impressive centre. Black must find an active plan.

16...f5! 17.exf6?!

White is losing his advantage. Why not 17.♖d3! fxe4 18.♗xe4 ♗xd5 19.♗bc3±

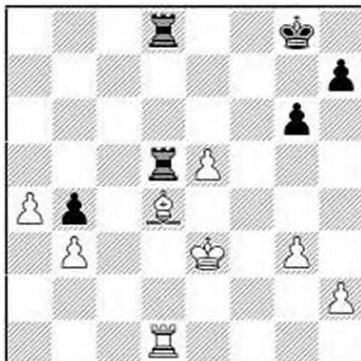
17...♙e3+ 18.♔h1 ♚xf6 19.♚xf6 ♜xf6 20.♗f1 ♙h6 21.♗bd2 ♜f2 22.♙c3 ♙d7 23.♔g1 ♜ff8?!

Black must stay active. 23...♚af8 24.♜e1 ♙b5 would lead to unclear play.

24.♜e1 ♜ae8 25.♗c4 ♙g7 26.♗e5?!

26.e5! ♗xc4 27.bxc4±

26...c5! 27.dxc6 ♙xc6 28.♗c4 ♜d8 29.♗xb6 axb6 30.e5 ♙h6 31.♙b4 ♜fe8 32.♙c3 b5 33.♙xc6 bxc6 34.a4 b4 35.♙b2 ♜d5 36.♔f2 c5 37.♗e3 ♙xe3+ 38.♔xe3 cxd4+ 39.♙xd4 ♜ed8 40.♜d1



40...♜xe5+!

Black is now fine. The game ended in a draw in 69 moves, after some blunders...

41.♔d3 ♜c5 42.♔e4 ♜c2 43.h4 ♜e2+ 44.♔d3 ♜g2 45.♔c4 ♜xg3 46.a5 ♜g4 47.a6 ♔f7 48.a7 ♔e6 49.♔b5 ♜xh4 50.♙b6 ♜xd1 51.a8♚ ♜d5+ 52.♔a6 ♜f4 53.♚e8+ ♔f5 54.♚f7+ ♔e4 55.♚xh7 ♜f6 56.♚h4+

♔e5 57.♖g3+ ♕f5 58.♗f3+ ♔e5 59.♚e2+ ♕f5 60.♖b7 g5 61.♗f3+ ♕e6 62.♗e4 ♜e5 63.♗xb4 ♕f5 64.♙c7 ♞f7 65.♗d6 ♞ee7 66.♗d5+ ♕g6 67.♗c6+ ♕h5 68.♗h1+ ♕g6 69.♗c6+ ♕h5 ½-½

□ Howell David

■ Nielsen Peter Heine

Amsterdam 2010

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 a6 4.♙xc6 dxc6 5.0-0 ♘e7 6.♘xe5 ♗d4 7.♗h5 g6 8.♗g5 ♙g7 9.♘d3 f5 10.e5 c5 11.b3 b6 12.♙b2 ♗g4 13.♗e3 ♘d5 14.♗e1 f4 15.f3 ♗g5 16.c4 ♙f5 17.♘xc5 hxc5 18.cxd5 ♙d3 19.♘c3 0-0 20.♘e4 ♗f5 21.♘xc5 ♙xf1 22.♖xf1 ♞ad8 23.♗e4 ♞fe8 24.d4 ♗xe4 25.fxe4



Black is an exchange up but a 'position' down (!), as he has no counterplay. For example: 25...a5 26.♘e6 ♞d7 27.♞c1 ♞ee7 28.d6+-

1-0

□ Tikkanen Hans

■ Andreasson Ingvar

Sweden 2012

1.c4 e5 2.g3 ♘c6 3.♙g2 g6 4.♘c3 ♙g7 5.e4 d6 6.♘ge2 ♙e6 7.♘d5 ♘ge7 8.0-0 0-0 9.h3 ♗d7 10.♖h2 ♞ae8 11.♗a4 f5 12.d3 ♞f7 13.♙g5 ♘c8 14.♗b5 f4 15.gxf4 h6 16.♙h4 ♞ef8 17.♙g3 a6 18.♗b3 ♘d8 19.fxe5 dxe5 20.f4 c6 21.fxe5 ♞xf1 22.♞xf1 ♞xf1 23.♙xf1 cxd5 24.cxd5 ♙f7 25.d4



Three pawns for a piece for White, but here the pawns are worth more, as they are central and dominating. It is obvious that at some certain moment Black will have to return the piece for at best two pawns...

25...g5 26.♖c3 ♜h7 27.♚a4

27.♙e2! looks better: 27...h5 (27...♞e7 28.♚b6±) 28.♚d1 ♚e8
29.♚c1 ♙h6 30.♙f2±

27...♚e7?!

27...♚xa4! 28.♞xa4 ♙g6 29.♙d3 ♞e7 offered more survival chances.

28.♚c4 ♞c6 29.e6 ♞b6?!

Good or bad, Black had to go for 29...♙xe6 30.e5! (30.dxe6 ♙xd4
31.♙e2±30...♙f7 31.e6 ♙xe6 32.dxe6 ♙xd4 33.♙g2±

30.♚c5! ♙xd4 31.♚xe7 ♞xe7 32.exf7 ♜g7 33.♙c7?!

33.e5! ♞bxd5 34.e6+- was lethal.

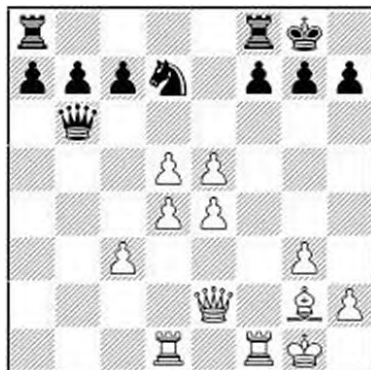
33...♞d7 34.♙c4 ♞c8?!

Black's last chance lay in 34...♞g6! 35.♙b3 ♙e5+ 36.♙xe5+ ♞gxe5±

**35.♙e2 ♙e5+ 36.♙xe5+ ♞xe5 37.♙h5 ♞d6 38.♜g3 b5 39.b4 ♞dxf7
40.♜f2 1-0**

□ Gombas Csongor
 ■ Meca Rares Stefan
 Calimanesti 2016

1.c4 e5 2.♘c3 ♘f6 3.e3 ♘c6 4.g3 ♙c5 5.♙g2 0-0 6.♘ge2 d6 7.0-0
 ♙g4 8.d3 ♙xe2 9.♚xe2 ♙b4 10.♙d2 ♙xc3 11.♙xc3 d5 12.♞ad1 ♚e7
 13.cxd5 ♘b4 14.e4 ♘xa2 15.f4 ♚c5+ 16.d4 ♘xc3 17.bxc3 ♚b6
 18.fxe5 ♘d7



An impressive and fully-supported centre! Black is plain lost!

19.e6

Much easier was 19.♙h3! ♘xe5 20.♞b1 ♚h6 21.♙g2 ♘g6
 22.♞xb7+-

19...fxe6 20.dxe6?

Why not 20.♞b1! ♚a5 (20...♚d6 21.e5 ♚e7 22.♞xf8+ ♘xf8
 23.♞xb7+-) 21.dxe6 ♘b6 22.♚c2+-

20...♚xe6 21.e5 c6 22.♙e4 ♞xf1+?

22...♘b6! 23.♞a1 ♘d5 24.♞xf8+ ♞xf8 25.♙xd5 ♚xd5 26.♞xa7 ♚b3±
 would allow Black to fight.

23.♞xf1 b5 24.♚h5?

24.♙f5! ♚e8 25.♚e4 ♘f8 26.e6+-

24...g6 25.♖h6 ♜f8 26.♝xf8+ ♘xf8 27.♖f4 ♖f7?

27...b4! 28.cxb4 ♖c4=

28.♙xc6

White was happy with a draw, as otherwise he would win with
28...♖b3 29.♖f3 ♖b1+ 30.♖f1+-

1/2-1/2

CONCLUSION

The Royal Centre is not a joke! It gives full control over the board and usually limits our opponent's counterplay to a minimum.

It is a concept we would love to have but we shouldn't dare allow it our opponent, although in chess nothing is absolute — take things case by case!

THE SUPERFLUOUS KNIGHT

One of the most intriguing ideas that has actually been codified is the brainchild of the Russian trainer, the late IM Mark Dvoretsky.

In quite a number of excellent editions and books, he discusses positions in which one side conquers a key square (an outpost, for instance) and is able to occupy it with a number of pieces.

Very often, he points out, a defender will more or less blindly exchange at least one pair of pieces on that square, even though he cannot contest it enough times to rid himself of all the pieces which may eventually settle there. But the defender has an alternative strategy which is often superior:

‘If the square cannot be won back by means of exchanges, then one may...forget about exchanges altogether (after all, only one of the opponent’s pieces will be able to occupy the ‘important high ground’, and the others will turn out to be, so to speak, superfluous’ — Mark Dvoretsky.

He called the multiple claimants to a single outpost ‘superfluous pieces’.

Example 1

Suba Mihai

1991 ○ ●



White has a great square in the centre (d5), which is defended and supported by pawns (c4 & e4) and cannot be attacked by the opponent’s pawns. Naturally, White would love to have one of his pieces on this square. If there are two knights that want to get to the square (c3 & d5), then only one will reach it, while the other

has to settle for a less-promising square. This piece (the c3-knight) is called an 'extra' piece because it has to wait for when the other piece, which occupies this great square, moves or is traded. M.Dvoretsky's concept is for the weaker side; not to allow the trade of an 'extra' piece — to keep it out of play.

White to move should play 1.♗xc7! ♖xc7 2.♗d5 with the clear advantage of a dominating knight against a limited bishop and automatic play on the queenside by b4, bxc5 etc. Black to move should avoid the exchange and make the knight on c3 superfluous, e.g. 1...Ne6! keeping the game alive with good counterchances on the kingside, according to M.Suba.

'Superfluous' may sound a bit fancy and more common seems to be the 'extra piece' (Lishnaya Figura' was the original article title of M.Dvoretsky's work published back in 1981 in G4 — Shakhmatnoye Obozreniye) which refers to the same, basically: having one great square for a piece but two pieces who would like to be there.

As a result, one of these two pieces is extra. While its colleague shines, the extra piece doesn't really have a good place where it can be assigned a useful task.

For the opponent it is important to recognise this problem of the other player and avoid exchanging the problem piece.

Of course the concept in question is not so easy to understand and furthermore to implement.

But this is the 'fate' of a player that wishes to improve and climb to the top; to deal with the difficult; to think outside the box...

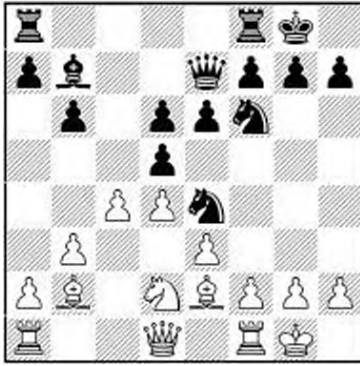
To better understand the concept, let's see a game from a long time ago...

□ Zukertort Johannes Hermann

■ Blackburne Joseph Henry

London 1883

1.c4 e6 2.e3 ♗f6 3.♗f3 b6 4.♗e2 ♗b7 5.0-0 d5 6.d4 ♗d6 7.♗c3 0-0
8.b3 ♗bd7 9.♗b2 ♖e7 10.♗b5 ♗e4 11.♗xd6 cxd6 12.♗d2 ♗df6



13.f3?!

Here White could have understood the superfluous knight theme and continued with the strange but fully-justified 13.♖b1! By avoiding the exchange on d2, White intends to drive the knight away from e4. The black f6-knight is superfluous and in general the black knights are stepping all over each other after the simple retreat 13.♖b1! Play might continue 13...♗d7 (13...e5? 14.f3 ♘g5 15.dxe5 dxe5 16.♙a3±) 14.f3 ♗ef6 15.♗c3± White has more space, a healthier pawn structure and a concrete plan to continue with. This idea has already been pointed out by A.Jussupow.

13...♗xd2 14.♚xd2 dxc4 15.♙xc4 d5 16.♙d3 ♜fc8 17.♞ae1 ♜c7
 18.e4 ♞ac8 19.e5 ♗e8 20.f4 g6 21.♞e3 f5 22.exf6 ♗xf6 23.f5 ♗e4
 24.♙xe4 dxe4 25.fxg6 ♜c2 26.gxh7+ ♗h8 27.d5+ e5



28.♚b4! ♞8c5 29.♞f8+ ♗xh7 30.♚xe4+ ♗g7 31.♙xe5+ ♗xf8
 32.♙g7+ ♗g8 33.♚xe7 1-0

□ Savon Vladimir
■ Dvoretsky Mark
Odessa 1974

1.c4 g6 2.g3 ♖g7 3.♗g2 d6 4.♘c3 e5 5.d3 ♘c6 6.e3 ♜f6 7.♞ge2 0-0
8.0-0 ♗e6 9.♞d5 ♚d7



10.♞ec3

10.♞b1 was played in Ubilava, E-Dvoretsky, M Batumi 1969:
10...♗h3 11.♞ec3 ♗xg2 12.♜xg2 ♞h5! 13.b4 f5 14.b5 ♞d8 15.♞e2 c6
16.bxc6 bxc6 17.♚a4 ♜h8 18.f3 ♞e6 19.♞dc3 ♝f7∞.

10...♗h3

Although M.Dvoretsky recommends here 10...♞e8! to avoid the exchange of the superfluous c3-knight, in this later game he continued with the text. A possible continuation is 11.f4 f5 (11...♗h3 12.♗xh3 ♚xh3 13.f5+= Van Wely, L-L'Ami, E Eindhoven 2010) 12.♚a4 ♞d8 13.♚a3 ♞f7 14.♗d2 ♜h8 15.♝ae1 ♚d8 16.e4 c6 17.♞e3+= Grachev, B-Arutinian, D Pardubice 2005. Black's problem in this variation is that he loses some precious tempos to complete his plan.

11.♞xf6+!

Exchanging the superfluous c3-knight!

11...♗xf6 12.♞d5 ♗d8 13.♗d2 ♗xg2 14.♜xg2 f5 15.♚b3

White stands slightly better. Draw in 58.

1/2-1/2

□ Dolmatov Sergey

■ Romanishin Oleg

Minsk 1979 ○



White has a spatial advantage, but Black has at his disposal the strong point e5, for which both his knights and the dark-squared bishop are contending. White cannot and should not fight for the e5-square — one of the opponent's pieces will occupy it, but the other two will prove 'superfluous' — M.Dvoretsky.

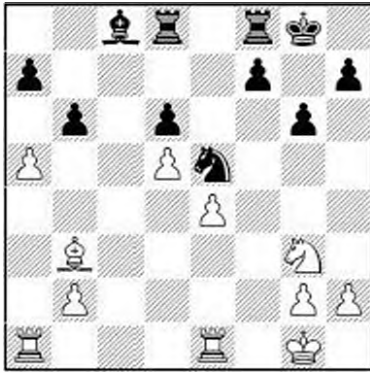
27.♖c3

A much better idea is 27.♖a5! ♜de8! (27...b6 28.♖c3+= x c6)
28.♖a4 ♖d8! 29.♖c3 ♖b6+ 30.♗d4 ♜e7 31.h3 ♗4e5 32.♕h2∞.

27...♗4e5 28.♖d4 b6 29.a4?

Better was 29.♖c3 and if 29...♖f6, then 30.♗d4.

29...♖f6 30.♗xe5 ♖xe5 31.♖xe5 ♗xe5 32.a5 g6



Look at what has happened: Black still controls e5, but his two ‘superfluous’, unnecessary pieces have now left the board: the dark-squared bishop and the knight from g6. Meanwhile, White is left with two ‘slackers’ — both the knight at g3 and the bishop stand poorly. Black’s chances are now indisputably better and, exploiting his opponent’s later inaccuracies, he went on to win — M. Dvoretsky. Black won in 56 moves.

0-1

□ Karpov Anatoly

■ Dolmatov Sergey

Amsterdam 1980 ●



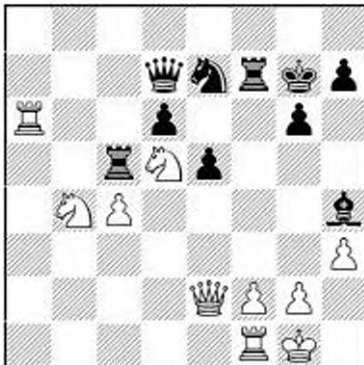
34...♘e7?!

A dubious decision — Black is actually trading off the ‘superfluous’ knight on b4. How could the defence be improved? Instead of the illogical exchange of knights, I suggested 34...e4,

putting at least one pawn on a light square — the opposite colour to his own bishop — and allowing Black to activate his pieces, if only a little, by ...♖e5-d4, if White allows it — M.Dvoretsky.

35. ♖a6 ♔d7

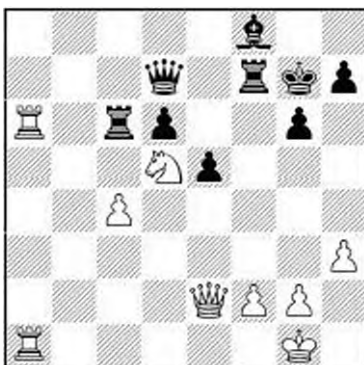
If the knight returns with 35...♘c8, then 36.♘c3! followed by a regrouping with ♘bd5 and ♘e4.



36. ♖e4 ♘xd5 37. ♘xd5 ♙e7 38. ♖fa1 ♙f8

White's advantage has increased. All his pieces are much more active, with the knight's superiority over the poor bishop at f8 being particularly acute.

39. ♖e2 ♖c6



40. ♖6a3! ♖c5 41. ♖f3!

An excellent manoeuvre. A.Karpov trades off the rook which

defends the king, and then puts together a killing attack.

41...♖xf3 42.♚xf3 ♜f7

42...♖xc4 43.♚f6+ ♔g8 44.♜b6+-

43.♚g4 h5 44.♚e4 ♖c8

44...♜h7 45.♖a3 ♜g7 46.♖f3 ♚e6 47.g4!+-

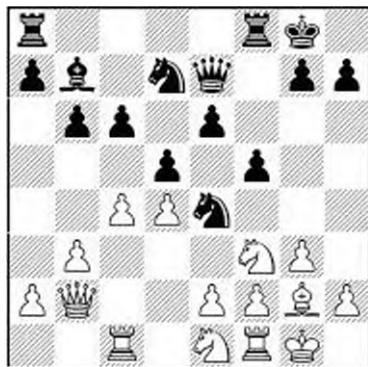
45.♖a3 ♚f5 46.♖a7+ ♜h6 47.♚e3+ g5 48.♚e2 ♖b8 49.g4! hxg4
50.hxg4 ♚b1+ 51.♜g2 ♖b7 52.♖xb7 ♚xb7 53.♚f3 ♚c8 54.♚f6+
♜h7 55.♚f7+ 1-0

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Halldorsson Gudmundur

Reykjavik 1994

1.d4 f5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.g3 e6 4.♙g2 d5 5.b3 c6 6.0-0 ♙e7 7.♙a3 0-0
8.c4 ♘bd7 9.♚c2 ♙xa3 10.♘xa3 ♚e7 11.♚b2 h6 12.♖ac1 ♙b7
13.♘c2 ♘e4 14.♘ce1

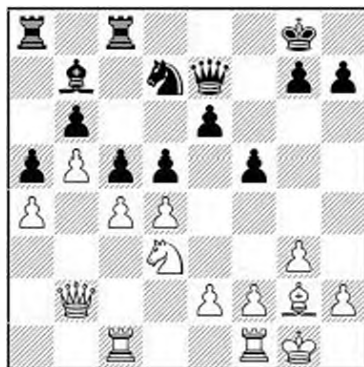


14...♘g5?!

Exchanges do not help Black's cause, (especially when it concerns your best-placed piece!), as his central pawns becomes weaker (not enough good pieces to protect them). 14...g5!? is preferable, seeking complications. Here both pairs of knights are superfluous! White's are dealing with the e5-square and Black's

with the e4-square. But Black, by exchanging a pair, weakens his position as his e5-square is not controlled by pawn or bishop, in contrast with White who can control it with both.

15. ♖xg5 ♜xg5 16. ♘d3 ♞e7 17. b4! ♝fc8 18. a4 a5 19. b5! c5



20. ♝fd1!

White's superiority is obvious. He commands more space, his minor pieces are better-placed and the outpost on e5 is at his mercy. The eventual opening of the position favours White who, by having occupied more space, is better prepared to undertake action and proceed to favourable exchanges.

20... ♝c7

Black loses at least one pawn after 20...cxd4 21. cxd5 ♘xd5 (21...e5? 22. d6) 22. ♘xd5 exd5 23. ♜xd4 ♞d6 24. ♘f4.

21. dxc5 ♘xc5

21...bxc5? 22. cxd5 exd5 23. ♘f4! and Black's position collapses: 23...d4 24. ♘d5!

22. ♘xc5 ♝xc5 23. cxd5 ♘xd5 24. ♝xc5 ♘xg2?

Black cannot avoid loss of material after 24...♞xc5 25. ♞e5! (outpost!), but this was surely better than the text move.

25. ♝cc1

And White wins.

25...♔d5 26.♚e5! ♖d8 27.♗c7 ♚g5 28.e4!

Another piece falls!

28...♚g4 29.f3 ♚g5 30.exd5

and Black finally called it a day..

1-0

□ Lautier Joel

■ Ivanchuk Vassily

Monte Carlo 1996

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♔g7 4.e4 d6 5.f3 0-0 6.♔g5 ♗c6 7.♗ge2 a6
8.♚d2 ♔d7 9.h4 h5 10.0-0-0 b5 11.♗d5 bxc4 12.♗ec3



12...♗h7!?

Black deals with the superfluous knight on c3 and he is ready to kick the d5-knight away.

13.♔e3 e6 14.♗f4 e5! 15.dxe5 ♗xe5 16.♗fd5

White has made no improvement during the last few moves, while Black should be happy; he has opened the long diagonal for his g7-bishop and improved his c6-knight. The white knights

are still not doing much...

16...♖b8 17.♙h6? ♗xh6! 18.♜xh6 c6!

Again the d5-knight is kicked away, while the black queen will join the attack.

19.♘e3 ♗e6 20.♙e2 ♜a5

Black stands better, but the game ended in a draw in 63 moves.

1/2-1/2

□ Kurajica Bojan

■ Trkulja Goran

Sarajevo 1998 ○



Black has two knights but only one perfect square: e6. The c7-knight is placed very badly; it does not have any future and it is also far from the queenside where White plans to start an attack.

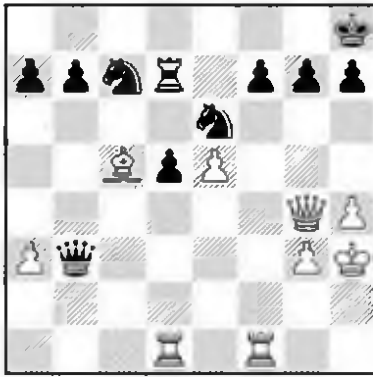
25.♘h5!

Threatening ♘f6+, winning an exchange.

25...♖e7 26.♙d4! ♜xb3?!

Of course not 26...♘xd4? 27.♜xg7# but Black should defend with 26...♜h6 27.♙xa7 ♜g6.

27.♙c5! ♖ed7 28.♘f6+ ♔h8 29.♘xd7 ♖xd7



So, White has the exchange for two pawns. This would be a good material balance for Black if his pieces were well-placed — but the c7-knight is still out of play and his rook cannot get to the open c-file because the superfluous knight is in its way. Finally, the c5-bishop controls all the dark squares and Black has to deal with the weakness on f7. White is clearly better.

30.♙d6 ♖c4 31.♗f5

31.♗xc4?! dxc4 32.♖b1 ♘d5 and the superfluous knight comes alive!

31...♗e4 32.♗xe4 dxe4 33.♙fe1

Now White can win the e4-pawn.

33...♘b5 34.♙b4

Since there are open files in the position, White wants to exchange one pair of rooks, so the other rook can totally dominate Black's position.

34...♙d3 35.♙xd3 exd3 36.♙d1 b6 37.♙xd3 h6 38.♙d7 ♔g8 39.a4 ♘bd4 40.♙xa7 ♘c6 41.♙a8+ ♔h7 42.♙d6 1-0

□ Schandorff Lars

■ Nielsen Peter Heine

Aalborg 2006

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 ♙b4 4.e3 0-0 5.♘ge2 ♜e8 6.a3 ♙f8 7.♘f4 d6
 8.♙e2 e5 9.dxe5 dxe5 10.♚xd8 ♜xd8 11.♘fd5



11...♘e8!

After the coming ...c6, the d5-knight will not have any good squares to retreat to.

12.0-0 ♘a6

12...c6 was an alternative: 13.♘b4 ♙e6.

13.♜d1 ♙e6

Now 13...c6? would be a blunder due to 14.♘f6+.

14.♘e4 c6 15.♘dc3



Now we have the same situation but with a different square: e4.

15...♙e7 16.♖xd8 ♖xd8 17.g4

Preventing ...f5, thus White secures the e4-square for this knight. On the other hand, he weakens the light squares around his king.

17...♘f6



An interesting moment. Eventually, Black decided to trade one of White's knights. This is so because Black did not see what to do with the knight on e8 — he evaluated the c3-knight as being better than his e8-knight. 17...g6 preparing ...f5 was an alternative: 18.b4 (18.g5!?) 18...f5 19.gxf5 gxf5 20.♘g3 ♘f6∞.

18.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 19.♘e4 ♙e7 20.b4 f6 21.♔f1 h5 22.gxh5 f5

Finally, Black finds a way to undermine the strong e4-knight.

23.b5 cxb5 24.cxb5 ♘c7 25.♘c3 e4 26.♔e1 ♙f6 27.♙d2 ♘a8
28.♖c1 ♘b6 29.♘d1 ♗d7 30.♙c3 ♙e7 31.♙b4 ♗xb4+ 32.axb4 ♔f7
33.♗a1 ♘d5 34.♖xa7 ♘xb4 35.f3 exf3 36.♙xf3 ♘d3+ 37.♔f1 ♘e5
38.♙e2 ♘c4 39.♔f2 ♘d6

The position is approximately equal but no moves were recorded from now on — this was a blindfold rapid game!

0-1

The following example shows how Black traded one knight from

the ♖d5-♗c3 couple when he was fully prepared.

At first he avoided the trade, since the other knight would end up landing on d5, but later he traded when the d5-knight would no longer be favourable for White.

The position is from 'Sicilian Defence — Sveshnikov Variation' structures: White owns the d5-square, and as long as a piece can remain there, he should stand well. Ideally, White would want to leave a d5-knight vs an f8-bishop and trade all the other minor pieces, but this is still a wish...

□ Swiercz Dariusz

■ Damljanovic Branko

Plovdiv 2008

**1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♗c6 5.♗b5 d6 6.♙f4 e5 7.♙e3
♙e6 8.♗1c3 a6 9.♗a3 ♗f6 10.♗c4 b5 11.♗b6 ♖b8 12.♗bd5**



12...♗g4!

Black decides to lead a dark-squared strategy: he gives up light squares but will attack on the dark squares. He trades the e3-bishop; the defender of the dark squares.

13.♙e2 ♗xe3 14.♗xe3 g6 15.a4

White must attack on the light squares, since he is stronger there, having his e2-bishop.

15...♗d4 16.axb5 axb5 17.♗cd5 ♙h6 18.c3 ♙xe3!

At last, trading the 'extra' white piece. Doing so, Black regains control of the light squares and gets a good position. And this is a good example to understand that in chess nothing is absolute! Note that after 18...♘c6? 19.♙a6! White is much better; his pieces are more active.

19.♘xe3 ♘xe2 20.♙xe2 0-0 21.0-0 f5 22.exf5 gxf5 23.f4

Since White has a knight versus Black's bishop, he wants to fix the pawn structure. On the other hand, Black must keep it as flexible as possible.

23...♙b6

23...e4?! would make the e3-knight an excellent piece.

24.♖h1 ♜be8 25.♙d2 ♖h8 26.♟f3



26...♞c8!

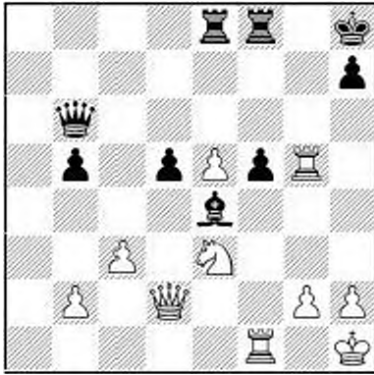
A good regrouping, transferring the bishop to the long diagonal.

27.♟af1 ♞h7 28.♟g3?!

28.♟f2!∞.

28...♞e4 29.♟g5 d5 30.fxe5?

30.♙f2 d4 31.cxd4 ♙xd4=+ was obligatory.



30...f4! 31.♗g4

31.♗xd5 f3!-+

31...f3! 32.♖f2 fxg2+ 33.♔g1 ♖xf2

33...♖a8!-+

34.♖xf2?!

34.♗xf2 ♖a8 35.♖c1 ♖a7!-+

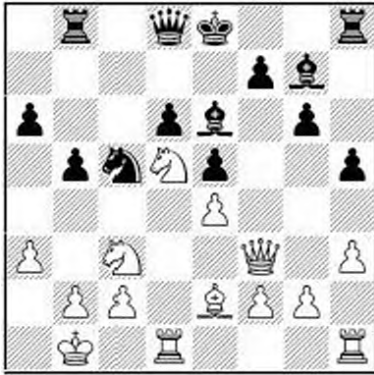
34...♖a8! 35.♖g8+ ♔xg8 36.♗f6+ ♖xf6 37.♖xf6 ♖a1+ 0-1

□ Ganguly Surya Shekhar

■ Giri Anish

Doha 2015

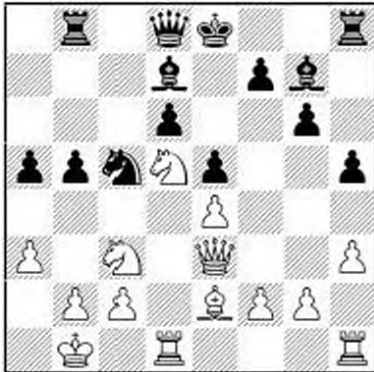
1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♗f6 5.♗c3 a6 6.h3 e5 7.♗de2
 h5 8.♙g5 ♙e6 9.♙xf6 ♖xf6 10.♗d5 ♖d8 11.♖d3 ♗d7 12.0-0-0 g6
 13.♔b1 ♗c5 14.♖f3 ♙g7 15.♗ec3 b5 16.♙e2 ♖b8 17.a3



17...♗d7!

Defending the b5-pawn and preparing ...a5-b4. Note that Black is almost never intending to play something like ...♗xd5, as this would help the superfluous c3-knight!

18.♕e3 a5



19.b4

While this stops b4, one thing which is certain is that White's king is quite exposed now.

19...♘e6 20.g3 ♘d4 21.♗d3 ♗e6 22.f4 axb4 23.axb4 ♖a8!



24.f5!?

White sacrifices a pawn, trying to get play on the light squares.

**24...gxf5 25.exf5 ♖xf5 26.♗xf5 ♗xf5 27.g4 hxg4 28.hxg4 ♝xh1
29.♝xh1 ♗e6**

Black has won a pawn and looks pretty solid, although White with his excellent knights does have some compensation.

30.g5?!

30.♗e4 with the idea of ♖c7+ was interesting.

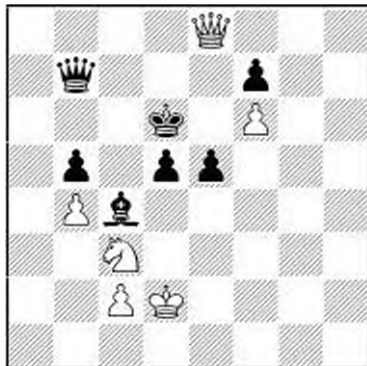
**30...♔f8 31.♖f6 ♜a6 32.♗f3 ♗c7 33.♖h7+ ♔e8 34.♖f6+ ♗xf6
35.gxf6 ♔d7**

Black has got rid of his bad bishop and his king is also safe. Add to it the fact that he is a pawn up and you will realise that the rest is just a matter of technique for a player of A.Giri's calibre.

**36.♖d1 ♗a7 37.♔b2 ♗c4 38.♗e4 ♔c7 39.♖d5+ ♔b8 40.♖c3 ♔c7
41.♗f3 ♗a8 42.♗e3 ♗c6 43.♗g3 ♜a8 44.♜a1 ♝xa1 45.♔xa1 ♗b6
46.♗h4 d5 47.♔b2 ♗d6**

47...e4! 48.♗g5 (48.♗f4+ ♗d6+) 48...♗d4 49.♗g7 ♔d6 50.♗f8+ ♔e5
51.♗e7+ ♔f5 would have been quite an easy win for Black. His king escapes the perpetual and the e-pawn marches towards the last rank.

48.♔c1 ♚a6 49.♗g5 ♘d6 50.♗g8 ♚a3+ 51.♔d2 ♚a7 52.♗e8 ♗d7
53.♗g8 ♗b7 54.♗e8



54...♗d7?

Again 54...e4! was good: 55.♗g8 ♚a7 56.♗e8 ♗d7 57.♗g8 ♔e5-+ It is important to activate the king in order to win. The f6-pawn will fall now.

55.♗g8 e4 56.♗g3+ ♔c6 57.♗e5 ♗c7 58.♗e8+ ♔b6 59.♗e7

White has just too much activity now.

59...♗f4+ 60.♔d1 ♗f1+ 61.♔d2 ♗f4+ 62.♔d1 e3 63.♗d8+ ♔a6
64.♗a8+ ♔b6 65.♗d8+ ♔a6

Quite a depressing draw for A.Giri, who was better for almost the entire game.

1/2-1/2

CONCLUSION

Overall, when the opponent has an ‘extra’ piece, one should always consider taking it — as well as leaving it there and playing around it.

As in the above examples, the opponent’s one knight might be very active in the centre, while the other knight is completely out of play.

It is ideal for the opponent to trade that bad knight. That is why one should avoid trading the active knight: so the passive knight has nowhere to go.

All the examples above demonstrated this technique. At the end, one of the opponent's knights got traded but only when it was favourable for him.

WEAK SQUARE

The element of the strong/weak square (outpost) is one of the most-often met in practice. The creation and occupation of an outpost plays a significant role in the course of many chess games.

An outpost is a square where we can place one of our pieces without it being attacked by an enemy pawn. Naturally, an outpost gains in value if it is central, and even more so if it is situated inside the enemy camp.

The importance of the outpost increases further if the opponent has no bishop moving on squares of the corresponding colour. In most cases it is beneficial to be able to control the outpost with one of our pawns.

Another factor adding value to the outpost is its location on an open file. In that case we are able to double our rooks behind our piece occupying the outpost, and then open the file at the right moment.

The piece we usually aim to place on an outpost is the knight, followed by the bishop, the rook and — in rare cases — the queen.

It follows from the above that a square representing an outpost for us is also a weakness for the opponent and may have seriously negative consequences for him.

In practice we encounter two different cases revolving around the outpost:

1. The outpost has already been created. In this case our task is simple: control it and exploit it.

2. The outpost has not yet been created. This case is clearly more demanding, as we first have to identify which square can serve as an outpost and then try to wrest its control from the opponent. Methods often used in this case are the strengthening of our control of the outpost by pawns and the exchange of those pieces of the opponent that can control it.

Naturally, the possession of one or more outposts does not

guarantee victory. The piece that will occupy the outpost will have to co-operate harmoniously with the rest of our army from its powerful position in order to further our aims.

As a conclusion we can state that knights love outposts — they just sit there and don't bother moving at all, as they are able to control a fair amount of squares from behind and from a distance!

The first two games that follow are clear examples of a good knight vs bad bishop theme, using the concept of the outpost.

□ **Bras Emanouel**

■ **Grivas Efstratios**

Khania 2000

1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 g6 3.c4 ♙g7 4.♘c3 0-0 5.e4 d6 6.♙e2 ♘bd7 7.0-0 e5



8.dxe5

This exchange offers more-or-less nothing to White. Actually White exchanges his d4-pawn for Black's d6 and that cannot be to his benefit. There are some lines in the 'KID' where White successfully proceeds with such an exchange, but there must always be a good reason for it.

8...dxe5 9.♙c2 c6 10.♙d1 ♙c7!

White has voluntarily accepted a weak square in his camp (d4) which, consequently, represents a potential outpost for the black pieces. Black now plans to transfer a knight to d4 via e6.

Naturally, things are not that simple yet — but at least Black has a clear plan and White does not.

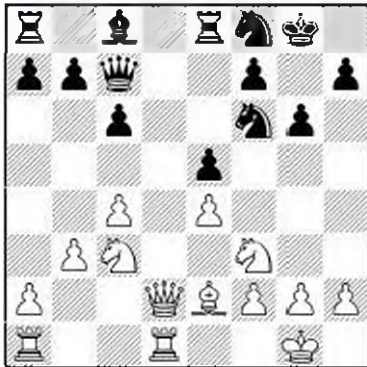
11.b3?!

Too passive. White should continue with 11.♖b1 intending b4 and c5 to gain space.

11...♜e8 12.♙a3?! ♚f8! 13.♙xf8 ♞xf8

The exchange of the dark-squared bishops is in Black's favour as now the d4-square is even weaker.

14.♚d2?!



It becomes clear that White is playing without a plan. His only aim is to exchange as many pieces as possible, something he believes will bring the game to a drawish conclusion. In what follows, Black makes full use of this mistaken strategy. White should in any case have played 14.h3! to prevent Black's next move, which is an essential link in his plan.

14...♙g4!

The f3-knight controls d4, so it must be exchanged.

15.♚d6 ♚xd6 16.♜xd6 ♜g7!

The careless exchange 16...♙xf3? 17.♜xf6! would ruin all of Black's efforts.

17. ♖f1

White cannot play 17. ♘d2? ♜ad8! 18. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 19. ♙xg4 ♜xd2! as then Black retains all his former advantages, having also obtained possession of the d-file and the 7th rank.

17... ♙xf3! 18. ♙xf3 ♘e6 19. ♝dd1 ♘d4



Black has completed his plan and occupied the outpost on d4. Moreover, he preserves the better minor pieces: White's bishop is bad. However, in order to improve his position further, Black has to initiate play on at least one of the flanks, aiming eventually to invade the white ranks there.

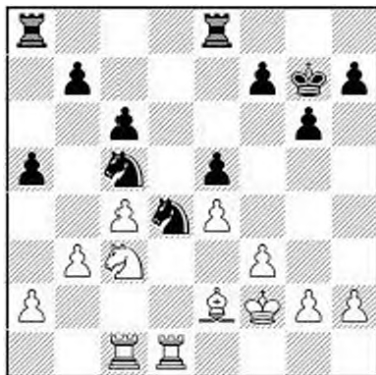
20. ♙e2 ♘d7 21. ♝ac1 ♘c5

21...a5?! would be pointless due to 22. ♘a4! allowing White decent counterplay for no reason whatsoever.

22. f3

After 22. b4 ♘ce6 Black will continue with 23...a5! This will either open the a-file for the black rooks or force the surrender of the c5-square to the mercy of the black knights (after 24. b5).

22...a5! 23. ♖f2



23...f5!

Since for the moment it proves impossible to open a file on the queenside, Black changes tack and switches his attention to the other flank. The plan is to gain space with ...f4 and then advance the remaining kingside pawns. The end result of this operation will be to open one or other of the g- and h-files.

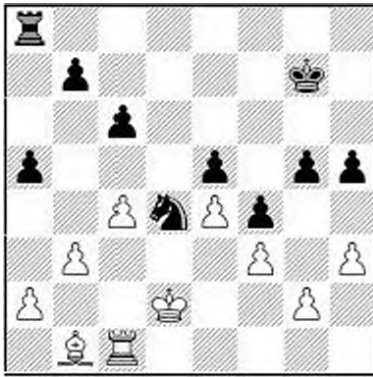
24.♗d3?!

White's final mistake. Instead, he had to counter Black's above-mentioned plan and seek counterplay in an unbalanced pawn-structure. Thus, the indicated choice was 24.exf5! gxf5 25.f4!? ♖xe2 (transforming one strategic element, the outpost, into another — a passed pawn) 26.♗xe2 e4. Black's advantage remains but White retains much better saving chances, especially if he can engineer the g4 advance under favourable circumstances.

24...f4! 25.♗e2 ♜ed8 26.♗xd4 ♜xd4 27.♕e2 g5 28.♖b1 ♗e6!

The exchange of one pair of rooks (but not two!) is favourable for Black. When a wing file is finally opened and the black rook invades, White will be unable to protect all his weaknesses due to the reduced material.

29.♜xd4 ♗xd4+ 30.♕d2 h5! 31.h3



31...g4!

Black is ready to open a file at the appropriate moment. Then he will invade White's camp and exercise unbearable pressure. The position is lost for White, who behaved very unambitiously: always and only seeking exchanges, of which Black accepted only the ones in his favour. Actually Black won because he knew what, where and if to exchange.

32.fxg4 hxg4 33.hxg4 ♖h8 34.♖g1 ♜h4 35.g5?!

White had to defend with 35.♔e1, although 35...♝xg4 36.♔f2 ♜g3 37.♞d1 ♞e3 is a slow and sure death.

35...♖g4 36.♙d3?! ♜f3+ 37.gxf3 ♝xg1 38.a4 ♔g6 39.♙e2 ♔xg5 40.♔c3 c5 0-1

□ Trifunovic Petar

■ Teschner Rudolf

Dortmund 1961

1.d4 ♜f6 2.♜f3 b6 3.♙g5 ♙b7 4.♜bd2 g6 5.e3 ♙g7 6.♙d3 c5 7.c3 0-0 8.0-0 d6 9.♞e2 ♜bd7 10.♞fd1 ♝c8 11.a4 ♞c7 12.a5 e5



Both sides have completed their development harmoniously. With his last move Black tried to anticipate White's activity on the queenside with counterplay in the centre. White understood that Black's d5-square might become weak, as it is no longer controlled by a pawn. So, this causes a natural reaction to Black's recent central activity. White must focus his future plans on this factor, as potential success will be the turning point for the correct evaluation of the current position.

13.dxe5! ♖xe5?!

In many openings there are potential weak squares around, but this fact does not affect the near future so much, as long as a good number of pieces remain on the board. And of course, the explanation is simple: the weak squares are controlled by pieces. 13...dxe5 14.e4 would be the natural follow-up, when White could preserve a slight opening advantage but nothing more.

14.♖xe5 dxe5



15. ♖xf6!

White is following his excellent plan with accuracy. Pieces that might control the d5-square should be eliminated!

15... ♗xf6 16. ♗e4!

Here goes the last one!

16... ♗xe4

Black's problems are huge: 16... ♗g7 17. axb6 axb6 18. ♖a7 ♖b8 19. ♗c4 f5 20. ♗d5+ ♖h8 21. e4±

17. ♗xe4 ♗e7?!

Too passive. For better or worse, Black should have tried to liberate his bishop with 17... ♗g7, although White retains a large advantage: 18. c4 (18. ♗d6 ♖cd8 19. axb6 axb6 20. ♗b5 ♖c6 21. e4 c4 22. ♗a3 b5 23. ♗c2+=) 18... f5 19. ♗d6 (19. ♗c3 e4 20. ♗d5 ♖b7 21. h4+=) 19... ♖cd8 20. ♗b5 ♖f7 21. e4! fxe4 22. ♗d6 ♖e6 23. ♗xe4 ♖d4 24. axb6 axb6 25. b3±

18. axb6 axb6 19. c4

Not only opening the knight's route to d5 (♗c3-d5) but also strengthening it.

19... ♖a8

Black's chances would also be slim after 19... f5 20. ♗c3 e4 21. ♗d5 ♖b7 22. ♖c2! ♗f6 23. ♖b3.

20. ♗c3 f5 21. e4!

21. ♗d5 would also be fine, but why not fix another pawn on the same colour as the bishop?

21... ♖xa1 22. ♖xa1 f4



White's advantage is obvious and consists of;

1. Good knight vs bad bishop;
2. Control of the weak central d5-square;
3. Control of the open a-file;
4. Control of the light squares.

Now we are entering the technical phase of the game, where White should transform his positional advantage into a material one.

23. ♖g4 ♗d8

23... ♖c8 24. ♖xc8 ♗xc8 25. ♘d5 ♗d8 26. ♖a7 leaves Black with no survival chances, as White's king will deliver the final blow with his advance, either to the kingside or to the queenside.

24. ♘d5 ♖f7 25. ♖a8 h5 26. ♖d1 ♖e6 27. f3!

Avoiding any unnecessary counterplay with ...f3.

27... g5 28. h3

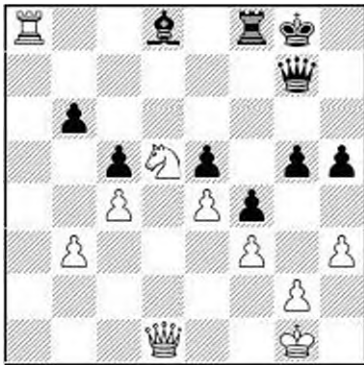
28. ♘xf4? gxf4 29. ♖xd8 ♖xc4 would give Black hope.

28... ♖f7 29. h3

After 29. ♘xf4? ♖xf4 30. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 31. ♖xd8+ ♔f7 Black would have some drawing chances due to perpetual check possibilities. White does not need such pawns. After all, what are Black's

intentions to improve his position?

29...♔g7



30.♘c3

Opening the door to the white queen!

30...♙f6 31.♚d5+ ♜h8 32.♝xf8+ ♜xf8 33.♚e6 ♙g7 34.♘d5 ♜h7
35.♜h2

Complete domination. White is not in a hurry to pick up any pawns yet (35.♚xb6), as he is getting ready for the 'really' tasty one!

35...♚d8



36.♚f7! ♜h4 37.♘e7

and the king will fall!

37...♙f8 38.♙g6+ ♔h8 39.♙h5+ 1-0

Ex-World Champion V.Anand is a great player and obviously he knows everything about our royal game, but still his performance in the next two games wasn't the desired one.

Against G.Kamsky he failed to capitalise and against J.Polgar he was smashed!

Note that the following three games were first published in my book 'Chess Analytics' (Russell Enterprises, 2012) and in many other sources and books of course.

□ Anand Viswanathan

■ Kamsky Gata

Sanghi Nagar 1994



White enjoys the advantage of the better minor piece (knight vs bishop) and the better pawn-structure, as Black's d6-pawn cannot be considered ideally placed. As a plan, White can consider combining his excellently-placed knight with the creation of a passed pawn on the queenside, and generally play on both sides of the board. Black has no active counterplay and he is doomed to passivity.

36.♞c3 ♞b8 37.♙d3 ♔g7

White also stands better after 37...♔d8 38.♞c4 ♞c8 (38...♔g7 39.b4 axb4 40.♞xb4 ♙a7 41.♞xb8 ♙xb8±) 39.b4.

38.g3?!

Following the principle of 'not hurrying', White gradually 'improves' his position. But 38.b4! axb4 39.♖c7 ♗a8 was critical, as now White has the pleasant choice between two good moves:

a) 40.♗b3 (40.♗f3 ♜f8) 40...♗a5! 41.g3! (41.♗b6 ♜f8 42.♖c6 h5∞ 43.♗c4? ♗a8 44.♖xd6 ♗xe4 45.♖d1 ♖d8±) 41...♜f8 (41...♗d2? 42.♗f3 ♜f8 43.♗f6+ ♗h6 44.♗e7! or 41...♗d8 42.♖d7 are excellent for White, but maybe Black's best practical chance lay in 41...♗a8!? 42.h4 ♗d8 43.♖d7 ♗xa4 44.♗xa4 ♖xa4 45.♖xd8 b3 46.♖b8 ♖xe4 47.♖xb3±) 42.♖b7 ♗d2 43.♗f3 ♗g5 (43...♗d8 44.a5!) 44.h4 ♗d8 45.♗b3±, but still this position looks quite unpleasant for him.

b) 40.♗c4!/? and now another split:

b1) 40...♗xa4? 41.♖xf7+! ♗h6 (41...♗xf7 42.♗b6+) 42.♖xh7+! ♗xh7 43.♗c7+ ♗h6 44.♗xb8±

b2) 40...♗d8 41.♖d7 b3 (41...♗xa4 42.♖xf7+! ♗h8 43.♖f8+ ♗g7 44.♖g8+ ♗h6 45.♗e3!+-) 42.♗b4 ♗h6 43.♗xf7 ♗xe4 44.♗xh7+ ♗g5 45.♖xd6+-

b3) 40...♗a5 41.♗f4 d5 42.♗xd5 b3 43.♗c3 ♜f8 44.♖b7±

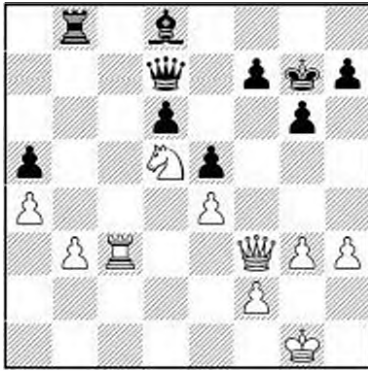
b4) 40...b3 41.♗b6 d5! 42.♖xf7+! ♗xf7 43.♗c7+ ♗e7 44.♗xa8 ♖b4! 45.♗b6! b2 46.♗c8 b1♗+ 47.♗h2 ♖b7! 48.♗d6+ ♗f6 49.♗xb7 ♗c1 50.♗c7!! ♗xc7 51.♗e8+ ♗f7 52.♗xc7 dxe4 53.a5 ♗c5 54.♗b5 ♗xf2 55.g3!+-

38...♗d8!

Of course Black covers the c7-square!

39.♗f3 ♗d7

Also possible is 39...♖c8 40.♗g2 ♖xc3 41.♗xc3 f5 42.f3.



40. ♖g2

40. ♛g4? is out of the question: 40... ♜xg4 (40... ♛e6!?) 41. hxg4 ♙b6! 42. ♞d3 ♙c5= White has not only lost the 'Capablanca Theorem' option (♛+♞ vs ♛+♙) but also the chance for a passed queenside pawn.

40... h5

Taking away the g4-square is useful and also, under some circumstances, the pawn might advance to h4.

41. ♞c4 ♛b7 42. ♞c3

It is too early for 42. b4 axb4 43. ♞xb4 as Black can sacrifice his queen with 43... ♛xb4! (43... ♛a8 44. ♞b5!±) 44. ♞xb4 ♞xb4, retaining decent chances to survive: 45. ♛d1 ♞d4 46. ♛c2 h4. But good enough is the other option with 42. h4! ♞c8 (42... ♛xb3 43. ♛xb3 ♞xb3 44. ♞c8 ♙f6 45. ♞a8 g5 46. hxg5 ♙xg5 47. ♞xa5 ♞a3 48. ♞a6 ♙d2 49. ♞xd6 ♞xa4 50. ♞f6±) 43. ♛c3 ♞xc4 44. ♛xc4 ♛a7 45. b4+ =

42... ♛d7 43. ♛e2 ♙b6 44. ♛d2!

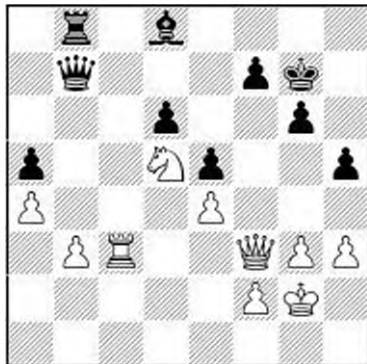
Of course not 44. ♞xb6? ♞xb6=

44... ♙d8!

44... ♙c5? looks attractive, but fails tactically to 45. ♞f3 (45. ♛g5

♖d8 46.♗e7!±) 45...♗d8 46.♗f6 ♜b7 47.♗g5 as the c5-bishop is far away from the defence. Black's fate is also similar after 44...f5? 45.exf5 ♗xf5 46.♗xb6 ♜xb6 47.♞c7+ ♔f6 48.♗d5 ♗e6 49.♗f3+ ♗f5 50.♗a8+-

45.♗c2 ♗b7 46.♗d3 ♗b6 47.♗f3 ♗d8



48.g4?!

I do not like the text, as it weakens the dark squares on the kingside without offering anything positive. 48.h4 is natural, preserving White's advantage: 48...♞c8 (48...f5 49.exf5 gxf5 50.♞c4! ♗xb3 51.♗e3±) 49.♞xc8 (49.♗d3 ♜xc3 50.♗xc3 f5 51.f3 [51.♔f3 ♗b6!]) 51...fxe4 52.fxe4 ♗a6 53.♗c2 ♗b6∞) 49...♗xc8 50.♗d3.

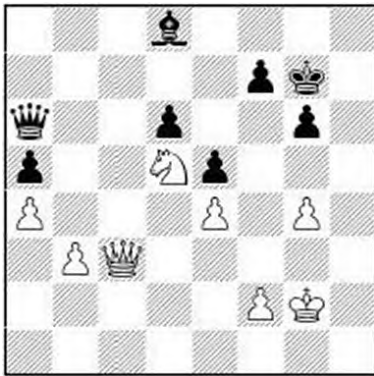
48...hxg4 49.hxg4

It would be preferable to recapture with the queen (intending h4-h5) but here 49.♗xg4 fails to 49...f5! with an unclear game.

49...♞c8!

Now that White has weakened his kingside, Black willingly trades off the rooks, in order to invade and harass the white monarch. Also possible was 49...♗d7 50.♗g3 (50.♞c1 ♗b7 51.b4 axb4 52.♗h3 ♗g5!) 50...♗g5 51.♞c7 ♗e6∞.

50.♗e3 ♜xc3 51.♗xc3 ♗a6



52. ♖c2

After 52. b4 axb4 53. ♖xb4 ♕e2 54. ♔g3 ♚h4+! 55. ♔xh4 ♖xf2+ 56. ♔h3 ♗f3+ Black gets a draw (remember 48.g4?!).

52... ♕a7

And now Black's queen threatens to infiltrate via d4.

53. ♖d2 ♖b7 54. ♖d3

White still stands slightly better and he should have continued the fight with 54. b4 axb4 55. ♖xb4+=

1/2-1/2

□ Polgar Judit

■ Anand Viswanathan

Wijk aan Zee 1998

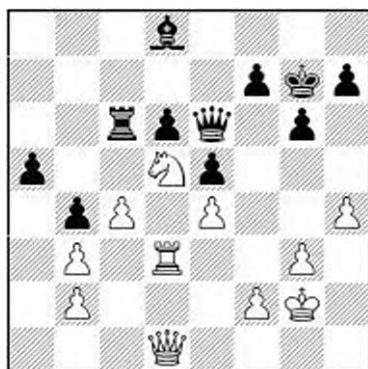


With precise play, White has achieved her strategic goal — the ‘eternal’ knight on d5 vs Black’s rather poor bishop. As the knight should not just sit on d5 and watch, White needs to organize an attack in which it can take part.

30...♖c5 31.♚e3 ♜e7 32.♞d3 ♠d8 33.♚d2 ♖c6 34.♚d1 ♔g8 35.h4!

White understands that she will not win by working only on the central file. So, she opens a ‘second front’ on the kingside — in complete accordance with the well-known method of realising one’s advantage, the ‘two weaknesses principle’.

35...♔g7?!



This ‘sit & wait’ policy is faulty, as White will always find ways to get through. Black should have stopped the further advance of White’s h-pawn by playing 35...h5. Then White can try to penetrate through the queenside: 36.♚a1 ♚g4 37.f3 ♚c8 38.♚a4 ♚b7 39.♞e3±

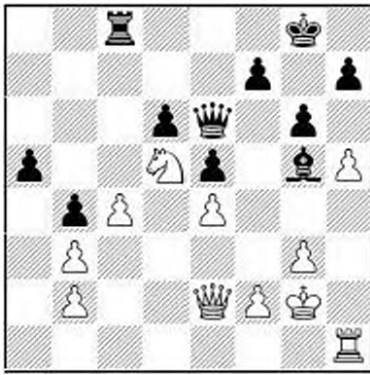
36.h5

Now there is tension on the kingside.

36...♠g5 37.♚f3 ♖c8 38.♞d1

White prepares to transfer her major pieces to the h-file, creating threats against the king.

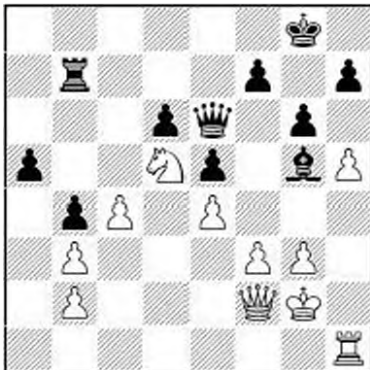
38...♖c6 39.♚e2 ♖c8 40.♞h1 ♔g8



41.f3!

White vacates the f2-square, from where her queen will threaten both flanks (♕f2-a7 and ♕f2-g1-h2). Keep in mind that, in order to make the opponent's defence as difficult as possible, it is necessary to create problems for him over the entire board.

41...♖b8 42.♕f2 ♜b7



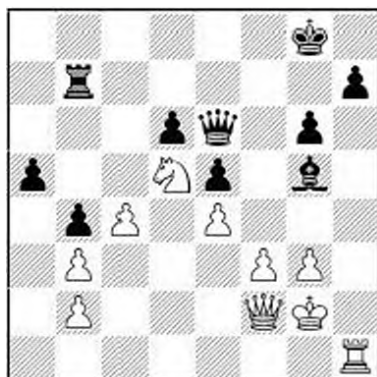
Black has defended against the white queen's invasion on the diagonal, but White now has the additional possibility of c5!

43.hxg6!

A good move, as the alternative $43.c5?! \text{ dxc5 } 44.\text{♕xc5 } \text{♞b8!}$ ($44...\text{♕a6? } 45.\text{♜f6+!! } \text{♔g7 [45...♙xf6 } 46.\text{♕c8+ } \text{♔g7 } 47.\text{h6\# or } 45...\text{♕xf6 } 46.\text{♕c8+ } \text{♕d8 } 47.\text{♕xb7 } \text{♕d2+ } 48.\text{♔h3+-}]$ $46.\text{♜e8+ } \text{♔g8 } 47.\text{♕xe5±}$) $45.\text{♕xa5 } \text{♞c8}$ would give Black too much counterplay.

43...fxg6

Alas, recapturing with 43...hxg6 is prohibited, as after 44.♖g1 f5 (or 44...♙f6 45.♗h2 ♔g7 46.♗h4) 45.♗h2 ♔f6 46.♗h3! (46.♗h6 ♔g7 47.♗g5 47.♗h7+ ♔f7 48.♖a1 ♖a7] 47...♗f7! is not so clear: 48.♗d8+ ♔f8 49.♗xa5? fxe4 50.fxe4? ♖g4!-+) 46...♗f7 47.g4 fxe4 48.fxe4 White wins: 48...♗b7 49.♔g3 ♗f7 50.♗h6 ♔g7 51.♗h7+ ♔f8 52.g5! ♖a7 53.♔f6 ♗f7 54.♗f1 ♔xf6 55.♗h6+ ♖g7 56.♗xf6+ ♗f7 57.♗xg6+-



44.c5!

Once the position of the black king has been weakened, White does not mind opening the c-file.

44...dxc5 45.♗xc5 ♔d8 46.♖c1!

The rook no longer has any business on the h-file, so White transfers it to the opened c-file.

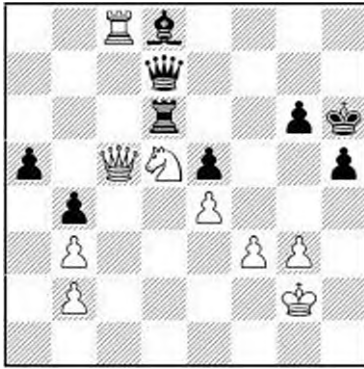
46...♔f7?!

A loss of time. 46...♔g7 was more accurate.

47.♗e3 ♔g7 48.♖c4 ♖d7 49.♗c1

This regrouping (rook in front — queen behind it) is a typical method of open file domination.

49...h5 50.♖c6 ♖d6 51.♖c8 ♗d7 52.♗c5 ♔h6



53. ♖b8

White had no reason to avoid the immediate 53. ♖a8 (threatening ♖a7) 53... ♟b6 54. ♛c1+ ♔g7 55. ♛g5.

53... ♟f6

53...g5 only weakens the f5-square: 54. ♖a8! ♛e6 (54...g4 55.fxg4 hxg4 56. ♛f2! ♔g6 57. ♛f8) 55. ♜e3 ♞d2+ 56. ♔f1+- (56. ♔g1? ♟b6), but Black might had tried 53... ♔g7 54. ♖b7 (54. ♖a8!? ♟b6 55. ♛c1 ♟d8 56. ♛e3 ♟b6 57. ♛g5±) 54... ♛xb7 55. ♛xd6±

54. ♛e3+ ♟g5?!

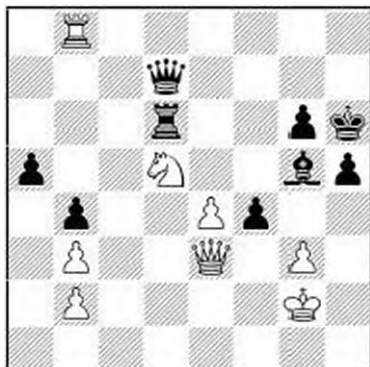
Also bad is 54... ♔h7?! 55. ♖a8+- but Black had to play 54... ♔g7 55. ♖a8 ♛b5 56. ♖a7+! (56. ♜c7 ♞d3 57. ♛e2±) 56... ♞d7 (56... ♔g8 57. ♜xf6+ ♞xf6 58. ♛h6 ♛e2+ 59. ♔h3 ♛f1+ 60. ♔h4+-) 57. ♞xd7+ ♛xd7 58. ♛b6 ♟d8 (58... ♛d8 59. ♛e6) 59. ♛b8±

White's position is obviously much better, thanks to the strong d5-knight and the weak black king, so it's not so strange that a winning combination exists!

55. f4! exf4

Black had to try 55... ♟xf4, although his survival chances after 56. gxf4 ♛g4+ 57. ♛g3 ♛e2+ 58. ♔h3 ♛f1+ 59. ♛g2 ♛xg2+ 60. ♔xg2 exf4 61. ♞h8+ ♔g7 62. ♖a8 would be slim. And now J. Polgar had the chance to add her name to the precious list of players

performing the combination of 'The Driving'!



56. ♖h8+!

And Black resigned, as he 'felt' the coming combination after the forced 56...♔g7 57. ♜d4+ ♙f6 58. ♜xf6+! ♚xf6 59. ♖h7+ ♔xh7 60. ♘xf6+ ♔g7 61. ♘xd7+.

1-0

There are certain mechanisms to create a strong/weak square — an outpost. Strong players do it perfectly!

□ Smyslov Vassily

■ Rudakovsky Iosif

Moscow 1945

1.e4 c5 2. ♘f3 e6 3. d4 cxd4 4. ♘xd4 ♘f6 5. ♘c3 d6 6. ♙e2 ♙e7 7. 0-0 0-0 8. ♙e3 ♘c6 9. f4 ♜c7 10. ♞e1 ♘xd4 11. ♙xd4 e5 12. ♙e3 ♙e6 13. f5 ♙c4 14. ♙xc4 ♜xc4



15. ♖g5!

White prepares an ideal position for his knight. After the exchange on f6, it will be placed on the excellent d5-square, from where it will guide White's forces into action all over-the-board. This is a typical method of creating a good knight vs bad bishop theme.

15... ♜fe8 16. ♖xf6 ♜xf6 17. ♞d5 ♜d8

Black could think of giving up the exchange with 17... ♛xc2 18. ♜f2 ♛c5 (18... ♛c6 19. ♜c1 ♛a4 20. b3±) 19. ♜c1 ♛d4 20. ♞c7±
Although material is lost, I do not see what else he can do...

18. c3



White's knight is ideally placed on the strong d5-outpost and dominates the whole board. If we add to this White's superior pawn-structure (the d6-pawn is backward and weak), we can easily understand that he should be holding a large plus. Strategically Black's position is very difficult and, in general, we should avoid such positions if we cannot compensate for the strategic defects in a specific way.

18... b5 19. b3 ♛c5+ 20. ♔h1 ♜c8 21. ♜f3

Preparing a kingside assault.

21... ♔h8?!

For good or bad, Black had to play 21...f6. After 22.a4 (yes, White can play on both sides!) 22...a6 23.axb5 axb5 24.♖h3 White's position is superior but Black is not losing quite yet.

22.f6!

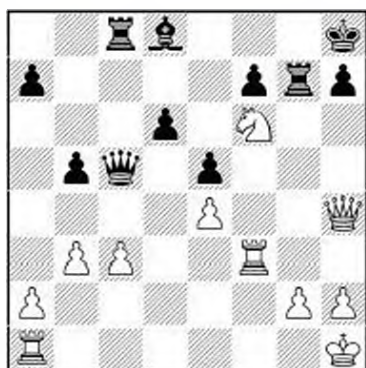
Now White will quickly achieve victory by attacking the black monarch.

22...gxf6

22...g6 23.♖d2 ♖g8 24.♖h6 g5 25.♖h3+- or 22...♖g8 23.♖h4+-

23.♖h4 ♖g8 24.♘xf6 ♖g7

24...♙xf6 25.♖xf6+ ♖g7 26.♖g3 is only a transposition.



25.♖g3! ♙xf6

Or 25...♙e7 26.♖xg7 ♙xg7 27.♖xh7+ ♙xf6 28.♖h6#

26.♖xf6 ♖cg8 27.♖d1!

and Black has no defence to White's idea: ♖xd6, ♖xg7 and ♖d8+.

27...d5 28.♖xg7

1-0

A perfect game and a very well-known example. But the younger generation of players also learn from their predecessors — and

do it even 'better':

□ Fedoseev Vladimir

■ Bocharov Dmitry

Moscow 2016

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♘f6 5.♗c3 a6 6.♕e2 e5 7.♗b3
♕e7 8.0-0 0-0 9.♕e3 ♗bd7 10.a4 b6 11.♕c4 ♕b7 12.♗d2 ♖c7
13.♖e2 ♗c5



14.♖fd1!

White reinforces his control over the d5-square, using small tactics.

14...♗fd8

The e4-pawn cannot really be touched right now: 14...♗cxe4?!
15.♗dxe4 ♗xe4 (15...♕xe4 16.♗xe4 ♗xe4 17.♕d5±) 16.♗d5!±
Another try is 14...♖fc8 15.f3 h6 16.♕f2 ♗e6 17.♕a2 ♗f4 18.♖c4+=
Ponkratov,P-Kiselev,P St Petersburg 2012.

15.♕xc5!

The first unusual move of the game and a novelty. In the 'Sicilian Defence' we are taught that the dark-squared bishop is extremely important and we shouldn't part with it so easily. But here the battle is for the d5-square and the bishop on e3 doesn't really fight for it. Hence, this is a very logical move. The old continuation is 15.♕g5 ♗e6 16.♕xf6 ♕xf6 17.♕d5 ♗d4 18.♖c4 ♖ac8

19.♙xb7 ♖xb7 20.♚d3 b5 21.axb5 axb5 22.♜b3+= Aliavdin,N-
Nowicki,B Lazy 2013.

15...♗xc5



16.♞f1!

The knight gets ready to go to e3 to control the d5-square.

16...b5 17.♙b3 bxa4?!

17...b4 looked more natural, although after 18.♞d5 ♞xd5
19.♙xd5 ♙xd5 20.♞xd5± White is clearly better. Obviously Black
wishes to open files on the queenside, planning to achieve
counterplay.

18.♞xa4 ♙c6

Black should strongly take into consideration the advance
18...d5!? 19.exd5 ♞xd5 20.♞xd5 ♙xd5 21.♙xd5 ♞xd5 22.♞xa6 ♞ad8,
where he is a pawn down, but his activity might compensate.

19.♞c4! ♗b6 20.♞e3 a5



White is better, there is no doubt about that, but how to increase the advantage?

21.g4!

Again an unusual move but once again extremely logical. The knight on f6 will be kicked away and the white knights will enjoy themselves on the d5-square.

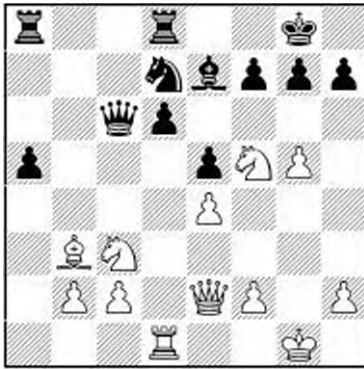
21...♖b7 22.g5 ♘d7



23.♙xc6!

A tactical sequence, but it is not so easy to spot what is going on. The real weakness that White has spotted like an eagle is the f7-square.

23...♖xc6 24.♘f5



White's pieces dominate on the weakened light squares in Black's camp...

24...♙f8

Black is busted: 24...♖e8 25.♚h5 g6 26.♙xf7+ ♔xf7 27.♚xh7+ ♔e6 28.♘g7+ ♔f7 29.♘h5+ ♔e6 30.♚xg6+- or 24...♙xg5 25.♚xd6 ♚b7 26.♚h5 ♙f6 27.♙d5 ♚xb2 28.♚xf6+-

25.♚f3!

Surprisingly it is extremely difficult to meet ♘h6+.

25...♔h8 26.♘h4

Or 26.♙xf7 g6 27.♘h4+-

26...♘c5 27.♙xf7 ♚d7

Tactics conclude domination...



28. ♖g6+!

Not so difficult, but nonetheless very beautiful.

28...hxg6 29. ♕xg6

And Black resigned, as there is just no way to prevent the mate on h5.

1-0

As has been proven by the previous games, a knight on an outpost is a tremendous piece, operating harmoniously with the rest of his army.

But a bishop can do the job as well, even in the presence of opposite-coloured ones. M.Adams seems to be an expert!

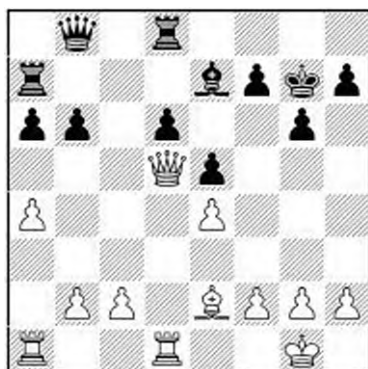
Although I am not 'happy' that the loser B.Esen was my student at that time, he gained a lot from the analysis and understanding of his 'mistaken' road — and improved! Also note that this game was first published in my book 'Chess Analytics' (Russell Enterprises, 2012).

□ Adams Michael

■ Esen Baris

Konya 2010

22... ♔g7



White holds a pleasant and nearly permanent advantage. His

bishop is certainly a much better piece than its counterpart, as there are many more targets at its disposal. Also, the backward black d-pawn is not a great feature for Black either; it will not fall easily but makes his defence harder. So far with the evaluation; what are White's plans? Well, he should combine offensives in various parts of the board (♖a3-f3, g3, ♕g2, h4-h5, etc.) but most important is that he should not swap any of the remaining pieces. With every exchange Black can more easily organise his defence, as at the moment his lack of space is difficult to endure.

23.♗c4

The white bishop takes up its position; the first and permanent target is the f7-square (and not by 'force' the f7-pawn) and generally the a2-g8 diagonal. Black has no counterpart to defend with...

23...♝f8

White must stay passive for the time being.

24.♖a3



24...♝c7?!

Black's policy (a passive one) cannot be recommended. He should try to become active and exchange some pieces; therefore he should attempt 24...f5. After 25.exf5 ♝xf5 (25...gxf5 26.♖g3+ ♕h8 27.♗d2!±) 26.♝f3± White stands clearly better — but far from

winning.

25. ♖f3 ♜e8

Now 25...f5?! fails to 26.exf5 gxf5 (26...♞xf5 27.♞xf5 gxf5 28.♞f7+ ♔h8 29.♙xa6+-; 26...♞a8 27.♞xa8 ♞xa8 28.♙d5 ♞f8 29.c4 gxf5 30.♞b3 ♞b8 31.a5 b5 32.cxb5 axb5 33.a6±) 27.♞e6 ♔h8 28.♙xa6+-

26. ♙b3



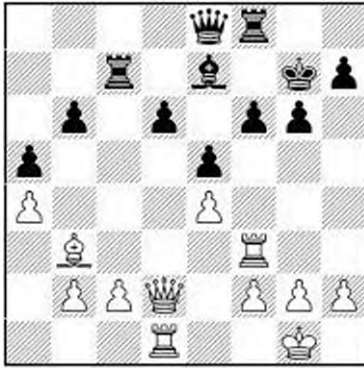
26...f6

Black weakens the a2-g8 diagonal but he had to somehow liberate his queen. Note that 26...f5?! wasn't good here either: 27.exf5 ♞xf5 28.♞xf5 gxf5 29.♞e6+-

27. ♞d2

Now the bishop will be placed on the 'royal' d5-square, while the h6 square might come under a combined attack.

27...a5



28. ♖c3?

A mysterious move. White exchanges an active piece, losing his combined attack on h6. More logical was 28. ♖h3 h5 29. ♗e2±

28... ♗xc3 29. ♗xc3 ♖c8

White advantage has certainly reduced; he is now obliged to keep the queens on board, otherwise he would lose the opportunity to attack various spots in Black's camp.

30. ♗e3 ♖c5 31. ♗e2



31... f5!

Correct — Black has to be active.

32. exf5 ♗xf5

Safe and correct. After 32... gxf5?! 33. ♗d3! White's attack cannot

be underestimated.

33.♖d5 ♕c7 34.g3 ♜f8 35.h4

This is the plan that was discussed above. White tries to weaken Black's kingside defence by organising an attack on the g6-pawn.

35...♕c8 36.♖d3 ♜f5 37.♗d5 ♜d7 38.♜e4 ♝c8 39.♞f3



39...♗f6?!

Exchanges nearly always favours the defender! For this reason Black had to opt for 39...♞f8.

40.♘g2 ♝c5 41.b3 ♝c8 42.h5 ♜e7

Now after 42...♞f8 comes 43.hxg6 hxg6 44.♗c4 ♗e7 45.♞xf8 ♗xf8 46.♗d3 ♜f7 47.c4 and White wins a pawn with the upcoming 48.♜c6.

43.♜g4 ♝c5

43...♞xc2 44.hxg6 hxg6 45.♗e4+-

44.c4

Now it's all over; Black has no real defence against White's kingside threats.

44...♝c7 45.♜h3 ♜d8

Or 45...g5 46.♖xh5 h6 47.♗g4+ ♕g5 48.♜f5+-

46.♗e6

Also good is 46.h6+ ♔h8 47.♗g4 and Black is in zugzwang!

46...♕g5 47.hxg6 hxg6 48.♗e4 ♗f6 49.♞d3!

As was stated before, combined attacks are White's 'secret' weapons!

49...♞d7 50.♗g4 ♗g5

50...g5 51.♗h5 ♜f7 52.♗g6+-

51.f4

White wins as the black king will not find any shelter.

51...exf4 52.gxf4 ♗f6 53.♗xg6+ ♔f8 54.♞g3 d5 55.♗xd5

1-0

Well, as mentioned, M.Adams knows his stuff — and he proved it once again in the next game.

It is true that Black's position was somewhat better than in the previous game, but still passivity was an obstacle.

After Black failed to take his chance, White was merciless, securing the point with ease.

□ Adams Michael

■ Van Wely Loek

Hoogeveen 2013

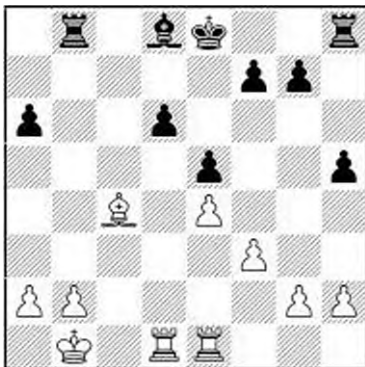
**1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♟xd4 ♟f6 5.♟c3 a6 6.♗e3 e6 7.♗f3
♟bd7 8.0-0-0 ♗c7 9.♗g3 ♟c5 10.f3 ♗d7 11.♟b3 ♟a4 12.♟xa4
♗xa4 13.♟b1 ♞c8 14.♗d3 h5 15.♞he1 e5 16.♗f2 ♗e7 17.♗b6 ♗b8
18.♟a5 ♟d7 19.♟c4**



19...♙xc2+!?

Changing the character of the position, but White is ready for this. 19...0-0 20.b3 ♖c6 21.g4 looks worse than it actually is. Black is a little bit worse probably, but he has chances.

20.♙xc2 ♜xb6 21.♚xb6 ♘d8 22.♚b3 b5 23.♙b1 bxc4 24.♚xb8 ♜xb8 25.♙xc4



A forced sequence has landed us in this endgame. The issue for Black here is that he holds two permanent disadvantages. The first is that his bishop will simply never be as useful as White's, who will dominate the board. The second is that White has a mobile majority on the queenside, letting him create a potential passed pawn. Black will never push d5, so he will have a permanent weakness on this square, along with his other disadvantages.

25...♜b6 26.♜d3 ♜f8 27.♜c1 f5

An attempt at alleviating the blockade. White has to decide whether to let go a bit of his hold on d5 or give Black the f-file.

28. ♖d5 ♜d7



29. exf5!

The correct decision. The rooks and bishop will be enough to consolidate the blockade.

29... ♖xf5 30. ♖e4 ♜f4 31. g3 ♜f6 32. h4 a5 33. ♖c5 ♜f8



34. a3!

As it's suicide for Black's a-pawn to ever advance to a4, White can play this move to prepare a future h4 (passed pawn).

34... ♜e6 35. ♖c8 ♖e7 36. ♖c7 ♜b5 37. ♖c6?!

37. a4! ♖c5 38. ♖xc5 dxc5 39. ♖b3! was perhaps better, as Black has

difficulty holding on to all his pawns.



37...♖b6?

A bad mistake. 37...♖c5! was the only way to play for Black: 38.♔a2 ♖b8! (halting b4), and White still has to prove his advantage.

38.♙d5+ ♔f6 39.g4!

Now it's winning. Black's rook on b6 is nowhere near as important as White's on c7, which is fueling a strong attack against the opponent king.

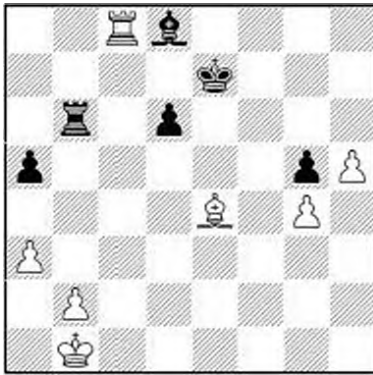
39...hxg4 40.fxg4 e4

Otherwise Black will lose his bishop after 41.g5+.

41.♙xe4

41.g5+! was stronger: 41...♔f5 42.♖e3 and White wins a pawn while Black's king is still not feeling comfortable.

41...♙d8 42.♖c2 g5 43.♖f3+ ♔g7 44.♖xf8 ♔xf8 45.♖c8 ♔e7 46.h5



White's passed pawn on the h-file is too strong. Black can't afford to lose any more material, but it is not easy to put a stop to the h-pawn.

46...d5 47.♙xd5 ♔d7 48.♖a8 ♜f6 49.♙e4 ♜f1+ 50.♔a2 ♜f2 51.♙f5+ ♔e7 52.h6 ♙b6 53.h7 ♙d4 54.h8=♚

and Black resigned as there is nothing left to play for after 54...♜xb2+ 55.♔a1+-

1-0

A very interesting concept is the creation of a strong outpost by means of a pawn sacrifice.

The Soviet School studied this concept in depth and came to the conclusion that it is a worthy one:

□ Botvinnik Mikhail
 ■ Pomar Salamanca Arturo
 Varna 1962

1.g3 d5 2.♘f3 c5 3.♙g2 ♘c6 4.d3 e5 5.0-0 ♙d6 6.e4 d4 7.♘bd2 ♘ge7 8.c4 f6 9.♘h4 ♙e6 10.f4 exf4 11.gxf4 ♚c7



12.e5!

The introduction to a well-known concept: the creation of an outpost.

12...fxe5 13.f5 ♖f7 14.♘e4

White used the mechanism of a typical pawn sacrifice to secure:

1. Superior piece play;
2. Strong e4-outpost;
3. Strong g2-bishop;
4. Badly placed d6-bishop.

And all these for a mere pawn!

14...0-0-0

Although the text move is not satisfactory, Black can barely play something better. An example is 14...♘g8 15.♙g4 ♕f8 16.♘g6! hxg6 17.fxg6 ♘f6 18.♖xf6! gxf6 19.♘xf6+ ♔d8 20.g7 ♕xg7 21.♙xg7 ♖e8 22.♕g5+-

15.♙g4 ♔b8 16.♙xg7

White is allowed to win his sacrificed pawn back too early — and almost without a fight. That's why Black had to prefer something other than 14...0-0-0.

16...♕h5

Maybe Black has to try 16...♖df8, when White can continue 17.f6!? ♜hg8 18.♝xh7 ♜h8 19.♞g7 ♜hg8 20.♙h6±

17.♞f2

I wouldn't called this a dubious move, but still, quite good is 17.♘xd6 ♝xd6 18.f6 ♘g6 19.♘f5 ♝c7 20.♞xc7+ ♔xc7 21.♙e4± It seems that White's position is so good that he is 'permitted' to play something like second-best moves and still be better!

17...h6 18.♙d2 ♞dg8 19.♞f6 ♘c8



20.♘g6! ♙xg6

20...♜h7 21.♞e6 ♜f7 22.♞af1±

21.fxg6 ♙e7 22.♞f7?

White blunders his valuable g6-pawn. He should opt for 22.♞e6 ♜g7 23.♙h3 ♜hg8 24.♞g2±

22...♘d8! 23.♞f5 ♙h4! 24.♞f3 ♘e7 25.♞h3 ♘xg6 26.♘f6 ♙xf6 27.♞xf6

Though again a pawn down, White's position is still nice (strong bishop-pair, open f-file).

27...♞e7 28.♞af1



28...♖f4?

And Black, in turn, blunders badly. Instead he had to play 28...♖h7 29.♔h1=

29.♖6xf4! exf4 30.♙xf4+

And the queen is lost or mate follows on c8.

1-0

□ Pilnik Herman

■ Geller Efim

Gothenburg 1955

1.e4 c5 2.♖f3 ♘c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♖xd4 ♗f6 5.♖c3 d6 6.♙e2 e5
 7.♖b3 ♙e7 8.0-0 0-0 9.♙e3 ♙e6 10.♙f3 a5 11.♖d5 ♙xd5 12.exd5
 ♖b8 13.c4 ♖a6 14.♙d2 b6 15.♙c3 ♖c5 16.♖xc5 bxc5 17.♚e1 ♖d7
 18.♙d1 a4 19.♙c2 f5 20.♙d1 g6 21.♚e2 ♙f6 22.f3



Both sides seem to be happy with their positions and their middlegame expectations. White's last move was played with the intention of preventing ...e4 and the exchange of dark-squared bishops, which would favour Black in terms of both 'static' advantages and the initiative.

22...e4!

Anyway! The bishops' exchange, plus the outpost which will be created for Black's knight by the change in the pawn-structure, constitutes great value for a pawn. This is a typical positional sacrifice that should be remembered.

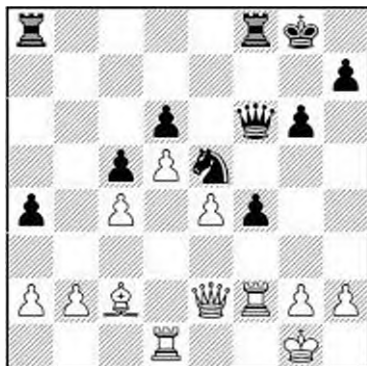
23. ♖xf6 ♗xf6 24. fxe4

Forced: 24.f4? ♗xb2-+

24...f4! 25. ♖f2 ♘e5

Black was not intending the naive 25...♗xb2? 26. ♗g4 ♘e5 27. ♗e6+ ♘f7 28. ♖xa4±

Now it's time to take stock of Black's idea. Actually what he did was to 'exchange' a pawn for a strong outpost, and the question is: was it worth it? In my opinion the answer is yes, and it is based on the following compensating factors:



1. Good knight vs bad bishop;
2. Strong e5-outpost;
3. Pawn majority on the kingside.

Black holds the advantage and has a clear plan in mind: activity on the kingside. And in the meantime, what can White really do?

26.♖df1 ♔h4 27.♙d1 ♗f7 28.♚c2 g5 29.♚c3 ♗af8

Black is coming!

30.h3

Or 30.♙a4 f3 (30...♘g4 31.h3 ♘xf2 32.♖xf2 f3+) 31.♙d1 fxg2
32.♗xf7 gxh1♚+ 33.♖xf1 ♗xf1+ 34.♔xf1 ♚xe4+

30...h5 31.♙e2



31...g4! 32.♗xf4

Desperation, but the waiting policy was hardly helpful: 32.♙d1 ♔h7 33.♙e2 f3-+

32...♗xf4 33.♗xf4 ♗xf4 34.g3 ♘f3+

A nice tactical shot to finish the game. Having stressed that the strength of the outpost lay partly in the role it plays in supporting operations against the f3 square, it comes at an appropriate moment. But 34...♚xh3 was also winning: 35.gxf4 g3 36.♚e3 ♚h2+ 37.♔f1 g2+

35.♔f2 ♚xh3 36.gxf4 g3+! 37.♔xf3 g2+ 38.♔f2 ♚h2 0-1

□ Gheorghiu Florin
 ■ Kasparov Garry
 Thessaloniki 1988

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♞c3 ♜g7 4.e4 d6 5.f3 0-0 6.♙e3 e5 7.d5 c6
 8.♚d2 cxd5 9.cxd5 ♞bd7 10.♞ge2 a6 11.♞c1 ♞h5 12.♙d3 f5
 13.♞1e2 ♞df6 14.exf5 gxf5 15.♞g3



15...e4!?

Same stuff.

16.♞xh5 ♞xh5 17.fxe4 f4 18.♙f2 ♜g4!

Wrong would be 18...f3? 19.♞g1! fxg2 20.♞xg2 ♚f6 21.0-0-0 ♙h3
 22.♞xg7+ ♞xg7 23.♙e3±

19.h3

Possible is 19.♙e2, where after 19...♙xe2! 20.♚xe2 (20.♞xe2 ♚e7) 20...♚g5 21.♚f3 ♜ae8 (21...♞f6 22.h4 ♚h6 23.0-0-0 ♞d7) 22.0-0 ♞f6 23.♙d4 ♞g4 24.♙xg7 ♚xg7, Black has good compensation, based on the e5-outpost.

19...♙d7 20.0-0-0 ♙e5 21.♞b1 ♚f6 22.♙e2 ♞g3



23. ♖xg3?!

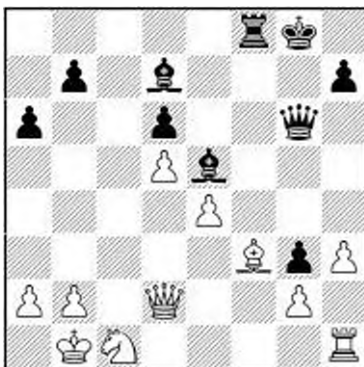
Handing over the bishop pair is not a good sign. White should consider 23. ♖he1 ♗xc3 (23... ♗e2 24. ♗xe2 f3 [24... ♖g6 25. ♖d3+=] 25. gxf3 ♖xf3 26. ♗d4 ♖xe4+ 27. ♗a1 ♖ae8∞) 24. ♖xc3 ♖xc3 25. bxc3 ♗xe4 26. ♗d4 ♗f5 27. ♗b2 ♖ac8=

23... fxg3 24. ♗f3 ♖ac8 25. ♗e2 ♖g6?!

Pointless. Black would do well after the logical 25... ♖c5 26. ♖c1 b6.

26. ♖c1! ♖xc1+ 27. ♖xc1

White was rightly afraid of 27. ♗xc1



27... ♖xf3! 28. gxf3 g2 29. ♖g1 ♗xh3 30. ♗e2 ♗h2 31. ♖c1 g1♖ 32. ♗xg1 ♗xg1 33. ♖b4 ♗e3=+

27... ♖c8 28. ♖e3 ♖f6 29. ♖d2 ♖c5



30. ♖c1?

A passive move. White had to go for 30. ♖c1 ♗xh3 (30... ♗xc1+ 31. ♖xc1 ♗xh3 32. ♖d3 ♞) 31. ♗xc5 dxc5 32. ♖a5 (32. gxf3? ♗xf3 33. ♖g5+ ♗g7 34. ♖d8+ ♗f8 35. ♖g5+ ♗f7-+) 32... ♗xb2 (32... h5!? 33. ♖xc5 h4 ♞) 33. gxf3 ♗xf3 34. ♖d8+ ♗g7 35. ♖xg3=

30... ♗f4! 31. ♖b4

31. ♖d3 ♗b5 32. ♖b3 ♖d4 33. ♖d1 ♗xc1+ 34. ♗xc1 ♗d3+-+

31... ♗b5

The black bishop pair dominates!

32. ♖b3 ♗d3+ 33. ♗a1 ♖c2 34. ♖b1

34. ♖d4 ♗e5! 35. ♖xd3 ♖xb2!-+

34... ♗e5 35. ♖c1

35. ♖d2 a5-+

35... ♗xb2+ 36. ♖xb2 ♖xb2+! 0-1

□ Kotov Alexander

■ Gligoric Svetozar

Zurich 1953

1. d4 ♗f6 2. c4 g6 3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. f3 0-0 6. ♗e3 e5 7. d5 c5

8.♔d3 ♖h5 9.♗ge2 f5 10.exf5 gxf5 11.♚c2



This is a nearly identical position to the game Botvinnik-Pomar, but with colours reversed.

11...e4! 12.fxe4 f4 13.♔f2 ♖d7 14.♗g1!

White correctly prepares to challenge the upcoming black knight on e5.

14...♚g5 15.♔f1 ♗e5 16.♗f3 ♚e7 17.♗xe5 ♚xe5



Black has full compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

18.0-0-0 ♗f6 19.h3 ♔d7 20.♔d3 a6 21.♗b1!?

An interesting idea, planning ♗d2-f3, kicking away the black queen. White might later return the pawn with e5, gaining the initiative.

21...f3!

A second pawn sacrifice, as it is very important for Black to preserve the 'dark-square complex' control.

22.gxf3 ♖h5 23.♗d2 ♖f4 24.♙f1 b5

Another interesting idea was 24...♙a4 25.♗b3 b5=

25.h4 ♖h8 26.♖g1 ♙f6 27.♗b3 ♖ab8 28.♙e1 b4 29.♖b1 ♖a8 30.♙g3 ♖g8 31.♚h2



31...♖xg3! 32.♖xg3 ♗e2 33.♚xe2 ♚xg3 34.♗c1 a5 35.♗d3 ♙d4 36.h5 ♚h4 37.♙g2 ♖g8 38.♖h1 ♚g3 39.♙f1 a4 40.♖c2 a3 41.b3

Both sides were 'happy' with the draw (Black is two pawns down), but I think that Black could continue: 41...♖f8 42.♗e1 (42.♙g2 ♙g4! 43.♗e1 ♙c3 44.h6 ♙xe1 45.♖xe1 ♙xf3 46.♖f1 ♚e5!-+) 42...♙c3 43.♗d3 ♚xf3 44.♚xf3 ♖xf3 45.h6 ♙e8 46.♙e2 ♖e3 47.♖h2 ♖xe4 48.♖f2 ♖g8 49.♗f4 ♙d4 50.♖g2+ ♖h8 51.♗e6 ♙e3=+

1/2-1/2

□ Boleslavsky Isaak

■ Lisitsin Georgy

Leningrad 1956

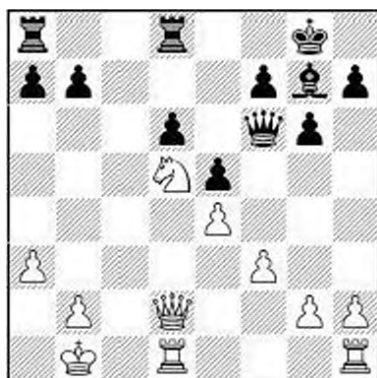
1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♘f6 5.♗c3 g6 6.♞e3 ♞g7 7.f3
0-0 8.♚d2 ♗c6 9.0-0-0 ♗xd4 10.♞xd4 ♚a5 11.♜b1 e5 12.♞e3 ♞e6
13.a3 ♜fd8 14.♗b5 ♚a4



15.c4!?

This would be an excellent example of the creation of a weak square via a pawn sacrifice, if not for the direct 15.♗c7! and ♞b5, winning.

15...♞xc4 16.♗c3 ♚b3 17.♞xc4 ♚xc4 18.♞g5! ♚e6 19.♞xf6 ♚xf6
20.♗d5



At the cost of a mere pawn, White has achieved an excellent outpost on d5 and he can now concentrate on the attack against the black king, as Black seems to have no counterplay...

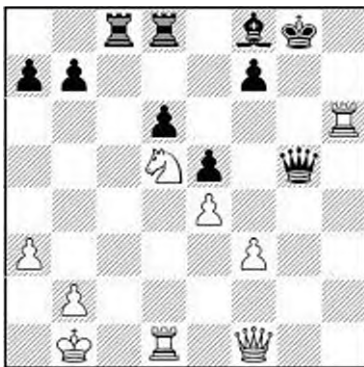
20...♖h4 21.♗e2 ♔f8 22.♗f1!

Planning g3 and h4, avoiding the blockade with ...♗h3.

22...♞ac8 23.g3 ♗g5 24.h4 ♖h6 25.g4 g5?!

This loses quickly, but Black's position was in any event hopeless.

26.hxg5 ♗xg5 27.♞h5 ♗g6 28.g5! h6 29.♞xh6! ♗xg5



30.♞h5!

and Black resigned, due to the upcoming ♗h1 and ♞g1.

1-0

CONCLUSION

The theory and the mechanisms that rule strong/weak squares (outposts) is relatively easy to learn, but maybe a bit more difficult to put into practice!

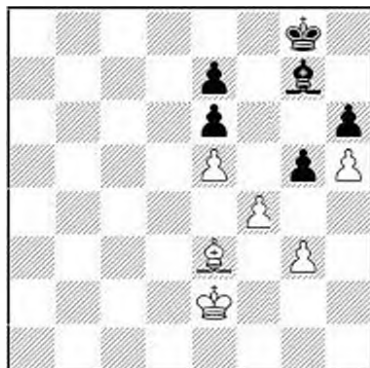
Well, as this concept is an often-met one, the trainee is obliged to study and understand it, through the various materials available.

THE BURIED BISHOP

A not-often-met strategic theme is the one of the 'buried bishop'. A theme that we can see perfectly in the next example:

Example 1

Athens 2006



1-0

The meaning is quite simple: a bishop is unable to participate in the battle, due to difficulties created mostly by its own pawns, which restrain it from even the slightest mobility.

Of course, some 'help' is also necessary from the opponent's pawns, which will harmoniously cooperate to bury the bishop for ever!

There are certain mechanisms that can help create this kind of advantage and can be studied in the games that follow.

But before we go on with the examples we should ask ourselves what the purpose of burying a bishop is? Or to put it straighter, how can we benefit from that? Well, usually we can convert our advantage in the endgame.

Exchanging most of the rest of our pieces (all, if we can penetrate the opponent's camp, but no pawns!) we will simply play the game a piece up.

There is no point in counting the quantity; as always, quality is more important. We are going to have a minor piece that works

and produces threats against an immobilised one that can only sit back and watch.

We will start with examples proving the incapability of the completely buried bishop:

□ W. Winter

■ J.R. Capablanca

Hastings 1919

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗c3 ♗f6 4.♙b5 ♙h4 5.0-0 0-0 6.♙xc6 dxc6
7.d3 ♙d6 8.♙g5 h6 9.♙h4 c5 10.♗d5 g5 11.♗xf6+ ♚xf6 12.♙g3



This is a classical and very well-known example.

12...♙g4! 13.h3 ♙xf3 14.♚xf3 ♚xf3 15.gxf3

Now Black is practically playing a piece up. The g3-bishop is shut in and can only be freed by a pawn sacrifice (e.g. ♙g2, ♙h2, f4 and after ...exf4 White can play f3 and ♙g1), but that costs both time and material. Black's correct plan to realise his positional advantage is simple: take over the initiative on the queenside and create a breakthrough to open up the position, as in practice he has 'won' a piece (the d6-bishop).

15...f6 16.♙g2 a5 17.a4

It is interesting to note that Black has a 'bad bishop' (seven black pawns are on dark squares and he has a dark-squared bishop!) but despite that, the only possible way for White to save

the game would be the absence of the f2-pawn.

17...♙f7 18.♖h1 ♔e6 19.h4 ♜fb8

Black ignores the kingside play, as White can achieve nothing there.

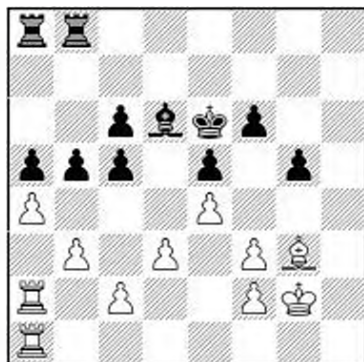
20.hxg5 hxg5

Opening the h-file doesn't help. The main theatre of operations is the queenside.

21.b3 c6!

No unnecessary haste: 21...b5? 22.axb5 ♜xb5 23.♖a4 ♜b4 24.♗ha1∞. Black calmly prepares the b5-thrust.

22.♖a2 b5 23.♗ha1



23...c4!

The decisive thrust after which the d6-bishop can breathe and participate actively in the game.

24.axb5

24.dxc4 bxc4 25.bxc4 ♜b4 followed by ...♗ab8 and ...♝xc4.

24...cxb3 25.cxb3

25.♖xa5?! ♜xa5 26.♖xa5 b2-+ is a typical trick!

25...♖xb5

Now the white king and bishop are mere spectators, who can only watch the black pieces conquering the queenside.

26.♖a4 ♖xb3 27.d4 ♖b5

27...♖b4 28.d5+ cxd5 29.exd5+ ♔xd5 30.♖xa5+ ♖xa5 31.♖xa5+ ♔c5 was another win for Black.

28.♖c4 ♖b4 29.♖xc6 ♖xd4

A wonderful game on the theme of the buried piece (the g3-bishop).

0-1

□ Alexander Kotov

■ Isaac Kashdan

USA 1945



White holds the advantage, as his bishop pair and the possession of the only open file are great pluses. But in general, the main problem for Black is his lack of counterplay, as his pieces and especially his g7-bishop are quite restricted and immobilised.

32.♖c8+ ♔h7 33.♔e2 a4

There was not much to do, as the alternative 33...♔f6 34.h4 ♔g7 35.♖c6 ♖d8 36.♖a6 a4 37.♔d5+ seemed equally unsatisfactory.

34. ♖xe6!

A nice transformation of the advantage; from bishop pair to the buried bishop — an even better one.

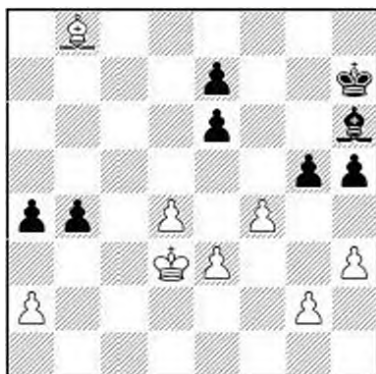
34... fxe6 35. ♖b8!

Wrong would be 35. ♖c6? as after 35... b4! Black's counterplay would be great.

35... ♗xb8 36. ♖xb8 b4

There was not much difference on 36... ♔g8 37. ♔d3 ♕h6 38. f4+-

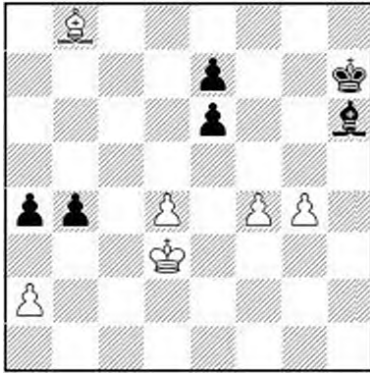
37. ♔d3 ♕h6 38. f4! g5



39. g4!

Game over! The miserable black bishop will never make it back to the game, allowing its counterpart to operate without opponent.

39... hxg4 40. hxg4 gxf4 41. exf4



Black resigned, as after 41...♔g6 42.♕c4 b3 43.axb3 axb3 44.♕xb3, there is no chance left for him.

1-0

□ Anatoly Karpov

■ Lubomir Kavalek

Nice 1974



Black seems to hold a respectable position, as White's light-squared bishop does not look like a good piece. But the truth is quite different!

29.♕xc5! ♜xc5 30.h6! ♔f8

There was no choice, as 30...♕b2 31.♜b1 or 30...♕h8 31.♜b1 ♜c8 32.g5 with the idea ♕d1-a4-d7-e6, were also hopeless.

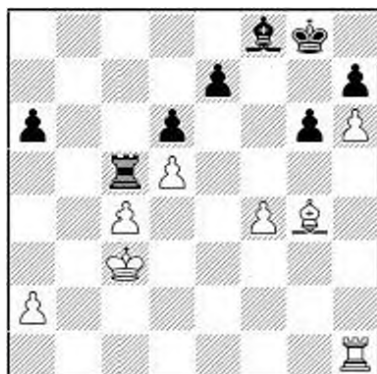
31.♕c3?!

Defending against Black's ...♖a5-a3 threat, but this allows Black to reduce the pressure. Correct was 31.g5! ♖a5 32.♞b1! ♖a3+ 33.♞b3 ♖xa2 34.♔d1 (planning ♞b8, ♔b3 and c5 or ♞b8 and ♔a4-d7-e6) 34...♖a1 35.♔d2 a5 36.♞b8 a4 37.♖a8 with an easy win.

31...fxg4!

Black cannot really allow 31...♖a5 32.♔b3 ♖c5? 33.g5, when a typical variation could run 33...♔f7 34.♞e1 ♖c7 35.a3 ♖c5 36.♞e6 ♔e8 37.♔c3 ♔d7 38.♔b4 ♔c7 39.♔d1 ♔d8 40.♔a4 ♖c7 41.♔c6 ♖c8 42.a4 ♖b8+ 43.♔a5 and White's a-pawn will promote.

32.♔xg4



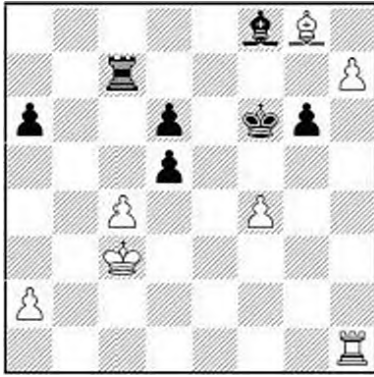
32...♔f7!

The most active try. A passive defence like 32...♖a5? 33.♔e6+ ♔h8 34.♔b3 ♖c5 35.f5 ♖c7 (35...g5 36.♞h5+-) 36.♞h2 g5 37.♞h5 ♖b7+ 38.♔a4 ♖b8 39.♔a5 ♖a8 40.♔b6 a5 41.a4 would only play into White's hands.

33.♔e6+ ♔f6 34.♔g8 ♖c7 35.♔xh7

White must be on the alert, as 35.♔d3?! ♔xh6 36.♞xh6 ♔g7 37.♞xh7+ ♔xg8 would offer just the better side of a draw.

35...e6 36.♔g8 exd5 37.h7



37. ♖xd5? ♜h7! would be quite easy.

37... ♖g7?

Black blunders terribly! With 37... ♜xc4+ 38. ♖d3 ♖g7 39. ♖xd5 (39. h8=♚?! ♖xh8 40. ♜xh8 ♜c8=) 39... ♜c5 40. ♖e4 (40. ♖e4?! ♖h8 41. ♜b1 ♜b5=) 40... d5 41. ♖d4! ♜a5 42. ♖d3 ♖f7+! 43. ♖e3 ♖h8 44. ♜g1 ♜xa2 45. ♖xg6+ ♖f6 he could keep White's advantage to the minimum.

38. ♖xd5

Now it's all over.

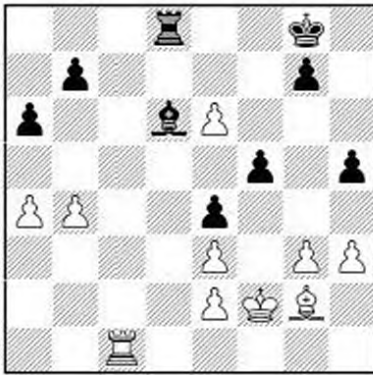
38... ♖h8 39. ♖d3 ♖f5 40. ♖e3 ♜e7+ 41. ♖f3 a5 42. a4 ♜c7 43. ♖e4+ ♖f6 44. ♜h6 ♜g7 45. ♖g4 1-0

□ Gennadi Sosonko

■ Bosko Abramovic

New York 1986

30. h3



Opposite-coloured bishops are on the board, but the difference in their activity is obvious.

30...g6!

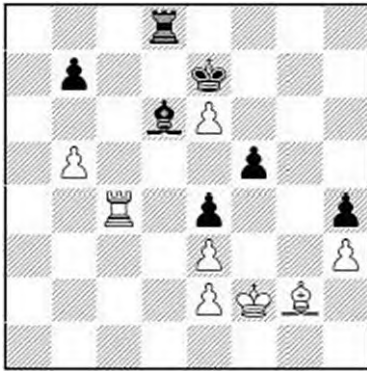
Now White's g2-bishop is completely buried by its own pawns and cannot be counted as a 'real' piece. White would be happy after 30...♙xb4? 31.g4 g6 32.♖c7 b5 33.axb5 axb5 34.gxf5 gxf5 35.♗b7 ♜d5 36.♚g3=;

Even after 30...♜f8? Black can get an advantage: 31.g4 g6 (31...hxg4? 32.hxg4 g6 33.gxf5 gxf5 34.♗h1=) 32.gxf5 gxf5 33.h4 ♜e7 34.♙h3 ♜xe6 35.♗g1 ♙e7 36.♗g6+ ♜e5 37.♗h6 ♙xh4+ 38.♜f1 ♜d1+ 39.♜g2 ♜e1 40.♗xh5 ♜xe2+ 41.♜f1 ♜f2+ 42.♜g1 ♙g3= But White could put up resistance and have some practical chances.

31.g4 h4!

The miserable g2-bishop will never again participate in the game. Black has in fact won a piece, and with a piece up the win cannot be far away.

32.b5 axb5 33.axb5 ♜f8 34.♖c4 ♜e7 35.gxf5 gxf5



Now Black can calmly win back his pawn and then even exchange rooks, or in general win as he pleases. White decided to commit suicide!

36. ♖xe4?! fxe4 37. ♜xe4 0-1

□ **Anthony Miles**

■ **Vassily Smyslov**

Dortmund 1986

26...g5



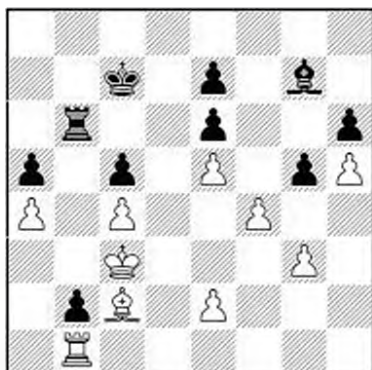
Black's unfortunate bishop is struggling to survive, but without success. White, by using the usual method, 'wins a piece'.

27. h5! b2 28. ♔d2 ♝b3 29. ♙c2 ♞b6 30. ♙d3 ♞b3 31. ♙c2

31. ♔c2 ♞a3 32. ♔xb2 ♞xa4 33. e3 would also have sufficed, but Black could try to sacrifice his useless bishop with ...♞a5 and

...♙xc5. There is no need to allow that!

31...♖b6 32.c4 c5 33.♙c3 a5



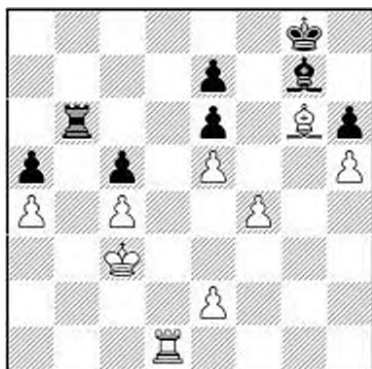
34.♙b3!

After the naive 34.♖xb2? ♖xb2 35.♙xb2 it is not clear how White would penetrate. White needs to preserve the rooks on board.

34...gxf4 35.gxf4 ♔d7 36.♖xb2 ♙e8 37.♖b1 ♙f7 38.♖g1 ♙h8 39.♙c2!

Back-rank mate schemes would allow the white rook to penetrate into Black's camp.

39...♙g7 40.♙g6+ ♙g8 41.♖d1



Black resigned. After 41...♖b8 42.♖d7 ♖f8 43.e3 the dual threats of ♖a7 or ♖c7 win.

1-0

□ Gabriel Sargissian
■ Alexander Areshchenko
Bundesliga 2005



15.♙d3 ♜xh4

Or 15...♜xf3 16.gxf3 ♙xb3 17.axb3±

16.♜xe6!

A good point; Black's g7-bishop will have to suffer...

16...fxe6 17.♘xh4 ♘b4 18.♙c4 ♜f7 19.♘f3 h6 20.a3 ♘d5 21.♙c2
♜ab8 22.e4 ♘f4 23.g3 ♘h3+ 24.♜g2 ♘g5



25.e5!

Burying the bishop...

25...♖xf3 26.♔xf3 ♜b5 27.♘b3 ♝b6 28.♕e4 a5



White's advantage is indisputable. Of course, he controls the only open file on the board and the doubled black e-pawns are real weaknesses, but most important is the fact that his bishop is alive and kicking. The opponent's g7-bishop is buried alive in his 'fortress', unable to lend a precious hand to the rest of the black pieces.

29.♝fc1 a4

29...b4 30.a4 would have hardly changed the result.

30.♘a2 b4



31.♝c6?!

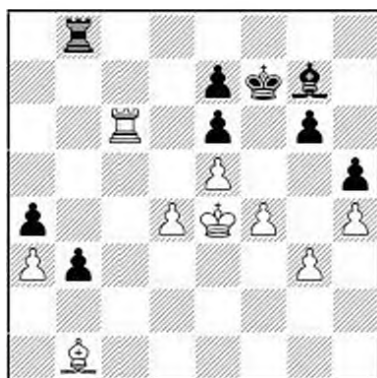
31.axb4 ♜xb4 32.♝c6 ♜d8 33.♔xe6+ ♔e8 34.♝1c4 ♝xc4 35.♝xc4 a3 (35...♝a8 36.♔d5) 36.♝a4 was more precise.

31...♖xc6 32.♖xc6 b3 33.♗b1 h5?!

33...g5 34.♖c4 ♖a8 35.♔d3 g4 36.♔c3 h5 37.♕e4 ♖a6 38.♕c6 ♖b6 39.♗b2 would also win, but Black was 'obliged' to liberate his bishop and try to find salvation in an opposite-coloured bishops endgame.

34.h4! ♖b8 35.f4

Buried alive forever! Now White just needs to collect the black queenside pawns.



35...b2 36.♔d3 ♖b3+ 37.♖c3

An opposite-coloured bishops endgame is quite often drawish, but in this case we have an endgame a bishop up!

37...♖b5 38.♔c2 ♖b6 39.♖c4 ♖b3 40.♖c3 ♖b6 41.♗a2! ♗f8 42.♖c4 g5 43.fxg5 ♔g6 44.♖b4

Black resigned as 44...♖a6 45.♔xb2 ♔f5 46.♖b8 ♗g7 47.♖g8 would show the loneliness of the poor black bishop.

1-0

□ **Piet Van der Weide**

■ **Rene Olthof**

Den Bosch 2009



White stands better due to his bishop pair and his spatial advantage.

22. ♖xe6!

But, as is quite often the case, White transforms his advantage from the bishop pair to the more active piece!

22... ♜xd2 23. ♖xd2 fxe6 24. ♔f2

Not good was the 'typical theme' with 24.h4? h5! (24...g5? 25.h5!) 25.♔f2, as we will see later in the game. In such positions, this early 'lockout' of the bishop is usually good only when there is an extra piece for both sides on the board. We shall see why in the proceeding play.

24...h5?!

Losing or not, Black had to go for 24...g5 25.fxg5 hxg5 26.♖xg5 ♖xe5 27.b3±, where at least his bishop would be active.

25. ♔e3 ♔e8

25...g5 26.fxg5 ♖xe5 27.♖c3 ♖d6 28.g6 ♔g8 29.♔f3 ♔f8 30.h4 ♔g8 31.g4+-

26. ♔f3 ♔f7 27.h3 ♖h6



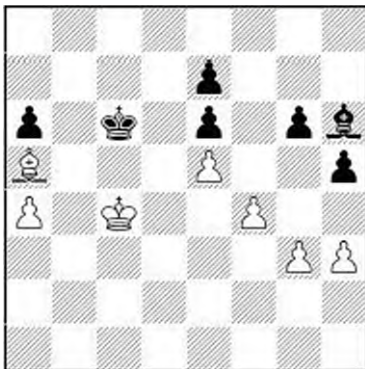
28.b4!

White must open files on the queenside in order to allow his king to penetrate.

28...cxb4 29.♗xb4 ♖g7

White would still be in the driver's seat even after the relatively 'active' 29...g5 30.♗d2! gxf4 31.♗xf4 ♖g7 32.c4

30.c4 ♔e8 31.c5 bxc5 32.♗xc5 a6 33.♔e4 ♗f8 34.♕d4 ♕d7 35.♕c4 ♕c6 36.♗b4 ♕b6 37.a4 ♕c6 38.♗a5 ♗h6



39.h4?

It looks like the end, as the bishop will be locked in forever. But White had to go for 39.♗d2 ♖g7 40.g4! hxg4 41.hxg4 ♗h6 (41...g5 42.fxg5 ♗xe5 43.♗c3+-) 42.g5! (now the bishop is also locked in!) 42...♗g7 43.♗b4 ♗f8 44.♗c5 ♕b7 45.♕b4 ♕c6 46.♗e3 ♗g7 47.♕a5

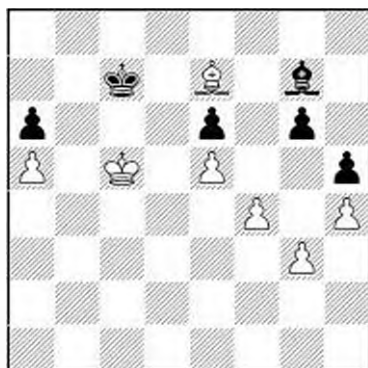
♔b7 48.♙f2 ♘f8 49.♙c5 and Black is in zugzwang: 49...♔c6
 (49...♙g7 50.♙xe7 ♔a7 51.♙f6 ♘f8 52.f5!+-) 50.♔xa6! ♔xc5 51.♔b7+-

39...♙g7 40.♙d8 ♘f8 41.♔b4

Now, by using the zugzwang method, White will win material — but this will not be enough for a win.

41...♔d7 42.♙b6 ♔c6 43.♔a5 ♔b7 44.♙d8 ♔a7 45.♙b6+

There was also nothing to be gained by 45.♔b4 ♔b7 46.♔c5 ♔c8 47.♙a5 ♔b7 48.♙b6 ♙g7 49.♙d8 ♘f8 50.a5 ♙g7! (Black has to give up the pawn, as 50...♔c8? runs into 51.♔b6! ♔xd8 52.♔xa6 ♔c7 53.♔b5 ♔b7 (53...♙g7 54.a6 ♙h6 55.a7 ♔b7 56.a8=♚+! ♔xa8 57.♔c6+-) 54.a6+ ♔a7 55.♔c6 ♔xa6 56.♔d7 ♔b6 57.♔xe6+-) 51.♙xe7 ♔c7



And White cannot improve his position, as the sacrifice 52.♙d8+ ♔xd8 53.♔b6 (53.♔d6? ♙f8+ 54.♔xe6 ♙b4+-) 53...♔d7 54.♔xa6 ♔c6 55.♔a7 ♔c7 56.♔a6 ♘f8 (56...♔c6=) 57.♔b5 ♙a3 58.a6 ♙c1 59.a7 ♔b7 60.a8=♚+ ♔xa8 61.♔c6 ♙e3 62.♔d6 ♙f2 63.♔xe6 ♙xg3 64.♔f7 ♙xf4 65.e6 ♙d6 66.♔xg6 ♙e7 67.♔xh5 ♔b8 68.♙g4 ♔c7 69.h5 ♙f8 leads to a draw.

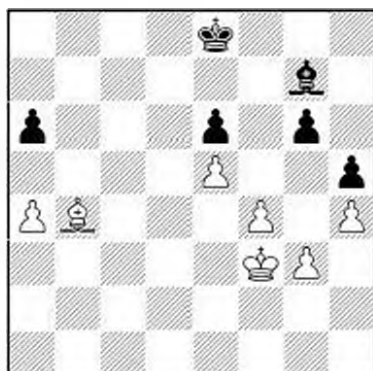
45...♔b7 46.♙c5 ♙g7

Forced, as after 46...♔c6? 47.♔xa6! (again!) 47...♔xc5 48.♔b7 ♔b4 49.♔c6 White wins easily.

47. ♖xe7

It seems that it should be easy from now on, but the placement of the white pawns on the 'wrong' colour does not help.

47... ♗h6 48. ♖b4 ♖c6 49. ♖c4 ♗g7 50. ♖d4 ♖d7 51. ♗b4 ♖c6 52. ♖e4 ♖d7 53. ♖f3 ♖e8



54. g4

This plan leads to a draw, but the truth is that there is no other satisfactory plan.

54... ♖f7?

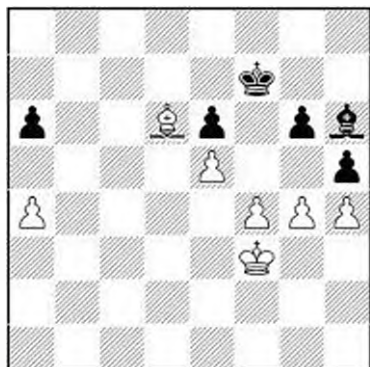
There was no win after the simple 54... hxg4+ 55. ♖xg4 ♗h6! (55... ♖f7? 56. ♖g5 ♗h8 57. ♖h6+-) 56. ♗c5 ♖f7, as White cannot make progress and his a-pawn is also on the wrong file in relation to his bishop.

55. ♗d6?

Returning the favour. White could win with 55.g5! (remember the note to White's 39th move) 55... ♖e8 56. ♖e4 ♖d7 57. ♖d4 ♖c6 58. ♖c4 ♖b7 59. ♗e7 ♖c6 60. ♗d6 ♖b6 61. ♖b4 ♖c6 62. ♗c5 ♖d7 63. ♖a5+-

55... ♗h6?

A ping-pong game of mistakes!



56.g5!

Finally! White wins!

56...♗g7 57.♔e4 ♕e8 58.♔d4 ♕d7 59.♔c5 1-0

Well, the fully-buried bishop case is a rare one and well-examined already but there are other cases, such as the half-buried bishop (which can come to life at a certain point) and the bishop that returns from the dead (buried!)

Let's start with the first case; the half-buried bishop.

□ Garry Kasparov

■ David Navara

Saint Louis 2017

1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 ♗f5 4.♘c3 e6 5.g4 ♗g6 6.♘ge2 c5 7.♗e3 ♘e7
8.f4 h5



9.f5!

This is a typical mechanism. With the help of a pawn sacrifice, White half-buries Black's g6-bishop, while obtaining for his knight the excellent 'outpost' on f4. Actually the text is forced, as 9.g5? ♟f5 10.♙f2 ♟c6 would already be much better for Black.

9...exf5 10.g5! ♟bc6 11.♟f4

Mechanism completed; White has full compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

11...a6

11...cxd4 12.♙xd4 ♚a5 13.a3 ♟xd4 14.b4 ♚c7 15.♚xd4 0-0-0 16.♟b5 ♟c6 17.♟xc7 ♟xd4 18.0-0-0 ♟f3 19.♟ce6 ♚e8 20.♟xf8 ♚hxf8 21.e6 ♟xg5 22.♙b5± was Pasqua,G-Markus,R LSS email 2012.

12.♙g2 cxd4 13.♙xd4



13...♟xd4?!

13...♚a5 14.a3 ♟xd4 15.♚xd4 0-0-0± was a much better try.

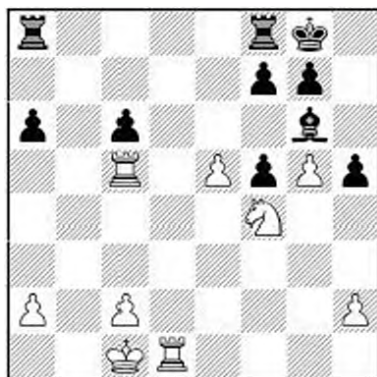
14.♚xd4 ♟c6 15.♚f2 ♙b4?

15...♚a5! 16.♙xd5 ♙c5 17.♚g2, was again a must for Black.

16.0-0-0! ♙xc3 17.bxc3 ♚a5 18.♚xd5?!

18. ♖xd5!+-

18... ♗xc3 19. ♗c5! ♗xc5 20. ♝xc5 0-0 21. ♕xc6 bxc6 22. ♞d1



After a lot of exchanges, White will win back his invested material, but Black still has the buried bishop on g6. So White improved, while Black remained put, so it is not luck that the position offers a clear advantage...

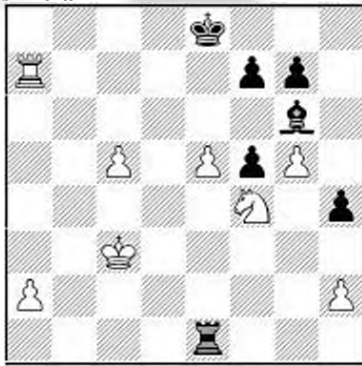
22... ♞ab8 23. c4

23. e6! ♔h7 24. e7 ♞fe8 25. ♞d7+- was another, faster way...

23... ♞fd8 24. ♞d6 ♔f8 25. ♝cxc6 ♞dc8

Losing easier, but 25... ♞bc8 26. ♔b2 (26. c5 ♝xc6 27. ♞xd8+ ♔e7 28. ♞d5+-) 26... ♝xc6 27. ♞xd8+ ♔e7 28. ♞d4 ♝c5 29. ♞d3 ♝c8 30. ♔c3+- couldn't offer any hope either.

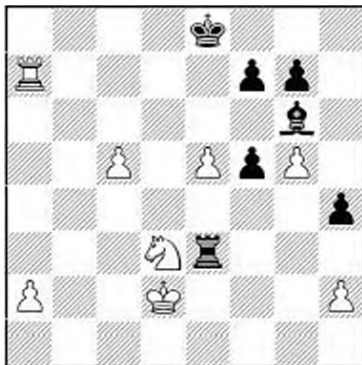
26. ♔c2 h4 27. ♝xc8+ ♝xc8 28. ♔c3 a5 29. ♞a6 ♞b8 30. ♝xa5 ♞b1
31. c5 ♞e1 32. ♞a8+ ♔e7 33. ♞a7+ ♔e8



34.♔d3?!

As Kasparov noted later, it would be even better to pass a move than to remove the knight from its excellent position on f4: 34.e6 ♖e5 35.c6 ♜c5+ 36.♔d4 ♝xc6 37.♔e5+-

34...♝e3 35.♔d2?



But that's bad! White could again be in the driver's seat after 35.c6! f4 36.♞a8+ ♔e7 37.c7 ♕xd3 38.♞e8+! (38.c8=♞? ♕f5+♣) 38...♔xe8 39.c8♞+ ♔e7 40.♔d2+-

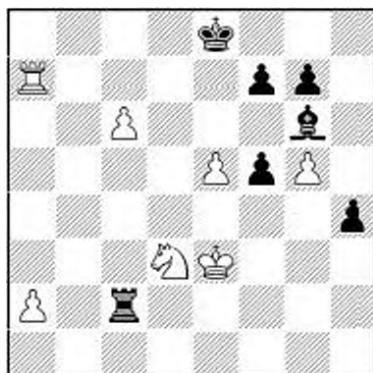
35...♝h3?

35...f4! 36.♖xf4 ♝xe5 37.c6 ♜c5 38.♖xg6 fxg6 should hold for Black.

36.c6 ♝xh2+ 37.♔e3?

Obvious was 37.♔c3!+-

37...♖c2!



38.e6?

It seems that time-trouble doesn't help legends either! Both players are playing quite badly in this stage, and White again missed 38.♗b4! ♖c4 39.♖a8+ ♔e7 40.c7 f4+ 41.♕f2 ♕f5 42.♗d5+ winning.

38...h3 39.♗b4 f4+

39...h2 40.♖a8+ ♔e7 41.♖h8 ♖c4 42.♗d5+ ♔xe6 43.♗f4+ ♔e5 44.♗d3+ ♔d6 would be drawish, but Black's need to free his bishop is understandable...

40.♕d4 h2 41.♖a8+ ♔e7 42.♖h8



42...♖d2+?

Black could preserve equality with 42...♖c1! 43.♗d5+ ♔xe6
 44.♗xf4+ ♔f5 45.♗xg6 ♔xg6 46.♙xh2 ♖xc6 47.♖g2 ♗a6.

43.♔c5 ♗e4?

Now Black is easily lost, so he should have tried 43...fxe6! 44.c7
 h1=♚ 45.c8=♗+! (45.♖xh1? ♔d7) 45...♔d7 46.♗b6+ ♔c7 47.♖xh1
 ♖g2 48.♗c4±

44.c7 ♗b7



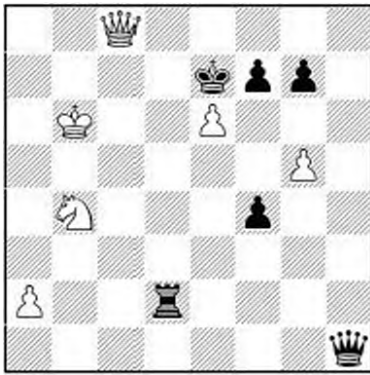
45.♔b6?

Chess engines claim that White would still be winning after
 45.a3!! — how many people would be able to make this move,
 even with time on the clock?!

45...♗c8! 46.♖xc8 h1=♚ 47.♖e8+

Or 47.♗c6+ ♚xc6+ 48.♔xc6 ♖c2+=.

47...♔xe8 48.c8=♚+ ♔e7



49. ♖c6+?

And finally a losing move... Good enough for the draw was
 49. ♖c7+ ♔xe6 50. ♖c8+ ♖d7 51. ♖e8+ ♖e7 52. ♖c8+ ♔e5 53. ♖c5+ ♔e6
 54. ♖c8+=

49... ♖xc6+! 50. ♖xc6

50. ♔xc6 ♖c2+ 51. ♔b7 ♖xc8 52. ♔xc8 f3-+

50... ♖d6 0-1

□ David Bronstein

■ Alexander Beliavsky

Yerevan 1975

1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♖c3 dxe4 4.♖xe4 ♖f5 5.♖c5 ♖b6 6.g4 ♖g6 7.f4
 e6 8.♖e2 ♖e7 9.h4 h5



Black seems to be doing well...

10.f5! exf5 11.g5

The same motif as in the previous game. Yes, every World Champion has been 'educated' by his predecessors!

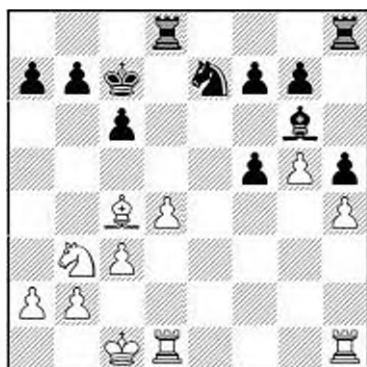
11...♠d7 12.♠b3 ♖c7 13.♠h3!

The knight is on the road towards the f4 outpost.

**13...0-0-0 14.♙f4 ♘d6 15.♚h2! ♜f8 16.0-0-0 ♞e6 17.♙xd6 ♞xd6
18.♙c4! ♞e7 19.♞f4?!**

19.♙xe6+! ♞xe6 20.♚xc7+ ♜xc7 21.♞c5 ♞d6 22.♞f4 was good and in the spirit of the position.

19...♞xf4 20.♚xf4 ♞dd8 21.♚xc7+ ♜xc7 22.c3



22...♞he8?

It was high time to liberate the bishop with 22...f4! 23.♞df1 (23.♞hf1? ♞f5! (23...♞d5? 24.♙xd5 ♞xd5 25.♞xf4 ♞e8=) 24.♞xf4 ♞e3 25.♙xf7 ♞hf8+) 23...b5 24.♙e2 ♞d5 25.♙f3 ♞e3 26.♞f2 ♞he8=

23.♞c5!

Heading for f4!

23...♞c8 24.♞d3 ♞d6 25.♙b3 ♞e3 26.♞f4



Exchanges have taken place, but White still has good compensation — the g6-bishop is out of play...

26...♖de8 27.♗hg1 ♜8e7 28.♗df1 ♘e4 29.♙d1 ♚d6 30.♙f3 c5
31.dxc5+ ♚xc5 32.♘g2 ♞d3 33.♘f4 ♞d8?!

I feel that Black should accept the draw with 33...♞e3.

34.♞d1! ♞ed7 35.♞xd7 ♞xd7 36.♞d1! ♞xd1+ 37.♚xd1



37...♘d6?!

Black is playing carelessly. He should opt for 37...b6 38.♚e2 ♚d6
39.♚e3 ♚e5 40.a3 ♘d6= Of course White is not interested in
taking on h5, as this enables Black to get rid of his bad bishop.

38.♚c2 a5 39.a4 ♚b6 40.♚d3 ♚c7?

A bad move. Natural was 40...♚c5!

41.♔d4! ♖c8 42.b4! axb4 43.cxb4 ♗e7 44.a5



44...f6?!

The final mistake, but Black's position was already critical.

45.gxf6 gxf6 46.♔c5 ♕f7 47.b5 ♔c8 48.b6

48.b6 Black resigned: 48...♗g6 49.♗xg6 ♖xg6 50.♔d6 f4 51.♔e6+-

1-0

Well, temporarily burying a bishop is usually a bad idea, but there are certain cases where it seems obligatory.

This is not so bad, as long as the bishop is able to come back to life at some point.

□ Giorgio Porreca

■ David Bronstein

Belgrade 1954

1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♖c3 dxe4 4.♗xe4 ♕f5 5.♗g3 ♖g6 6.h4 h6 7.♗h3
 ♕h7 8.♔c4 ♗f6 9.♗f4 ♗bd7 10.0-0 ♖c7 11.♙e1



Black has probably mishandled the opening and now he faces grave problems. He is looking for a way to complete his development but this does not seem to be an easy story.

11...♗g8!

Temporarily retreating and strengthening the valuable e6-square, as the immediate 11...e6? fails to 12.♗xe6 fxe6 13.♘xe6+- Well, the g8-bishop doesn't look like a great piece, but this fact is a short-term one.

12.♘d3

A double-edged position would arise after the natural 12.a4 0-0-0 13.c3 e6, so White tries to regroup his pieces.

12...e6 13.♗f4 ♗d6 14.♗xd6 ♖xd6 15.♘f5 ♗f8

Black's position with all these sidelined pieces does not look rosy, but as there is nothing concrete for White it can only be improved!



16. ♖f3?!

White loses his way. He should have tried 16. ♘f4!? ♔d8! (16...0-0-0? 17. ♗xe6 fxe6 18. ♘g6 ♖b4 19. c3+-) 17. ♘e3 ♗h7 18. a4 ♔c7±

16...0-0-0 17. ♘g3 ♗h7

Back to life!

18. a4

18. c3 g5∞ was the natural continuation.

18...♗xd3?

Both players missed that 18...♘b6 wins a pawn!

19. ♗xd3 ♖d6 20. a5 a6 21. ♖a3 g5



Black has succeeded in completing his development, regrouped his passively placed pieces, exchanged his half-buried bishop and has now entered a double-edged middlegame.

22. h5 ♖f4

22...♖xd4 23. ♗xa6 ♔c7 24. ♗f1∞

23. ♖e2 ♔c7

Black avoids giving White attacking chances with 23...♖xd4

24. ♖xa6 bxa6 25. ♗xa6+ ♔c7 26. ♖c3

24.c3 ♖he8 25. ♗e4 ♗xe4 26. ♗xe4?

As the ending is favourable for Black (weak pawns on a5 and h5) White should have preserved the queens: 26. ♖xe4 ♗f6 27. g3 ♗d6 (27... ♗xe4 28. ♗xe4 ♗xe4 29. ♖xe4=) 28. ♖f3=

26... ♗xe4 27. ♖xe4 ♗f6 28. ♖f3 g4! 29. ♖d1



29... ♖g8

29... ♖d5!+ was even stronger.

30. ♖e5 ♖d5! 31. ♖a4 ♖g5

Black wins material and the game.

32. ♖b3 ♖dx5 33. dxe5 ♗d7! 34. ♖d1 ♗xe5 35. ♖e4 ♖xh5 36. ♖xg4 ♗xg4 37. ♖xg4 ♖xa5 38. ♖g7 ♖f5 39. g4 ♖f6 40. ♗g2 ♗d6 41. ♗g3 e5 42. ♖g8 ♗d5 0-1

□ Veselin Topalov

■ Viswanathan Anand

Sofia 2010

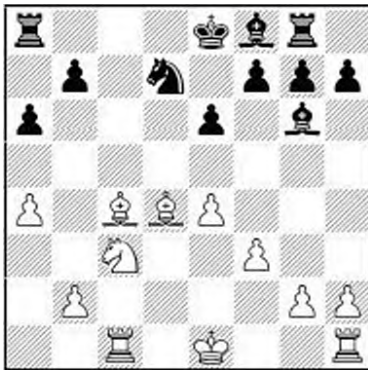
1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3. ♗f3 ♗f6 4. ♗c3 dxc4 5.a4 ♖f5 6. ♗e5 e6 7.f3 c5 8.e4 ♖g6 9. ♖e3 cxd4 10. ♗xd4 ♗xd4 11. ♖xd4 ♗fd7



12. ♖xd7!

12. ♖xg6?! hxg6 13. ♗xc4 at first sight looks like it gives the bishop pair to White, but it really offers him nothing, as after 13... ♖c6 14. ♗f2 ♗c5, Black has just solved his main problem in this position — his inactive lightsquared bishop.

12... ♖xd7 13. ♗xc4 a6 14. ♖c1 ♖g8



15. h4

Gaining space on any side cannot harm White's position.

15... h6 16. ♖e2

All these ideas (... ♖g8, h4, ♖e2) are quite common for this variation and not hard to see played or to be met! The pre-game training motifs that both opponents are 'taught' are helping them to choose probably the most accurate move-order.

16...♖d6

Anand is aiming to activate his g8-rook by first playing ...♗e7 and then exchanging his opponent's d4-bishop by ...♘c5. Another option is 16...♘c5 17.♘xc5 ♖xc5 18.h5 ♘h7 19.♗hd1 ♜c8 20.a5 ♗e7 21.b4 ♖d7 22.♖a4±

17.h5 ♘h7



18.a5!

The 'gaining space' policy continues, as White now plans to use the a4-square for his knight. Black still has to solve his light-squared bishop problem and complete his development. In the meantime White will have at his disposal a tempo or two to prove an advantage.

18...♗e7!

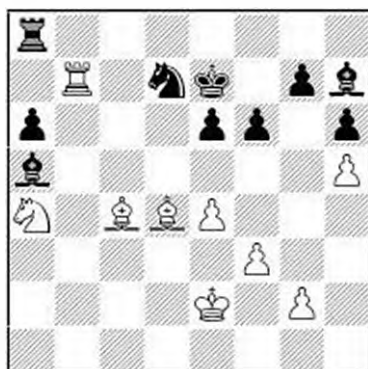
And what about the 'obvious' 18...♘b4? I think that Topalov was planning to sacrifice his a-pawn with 19.♖a4!? (19.♜a1 ♜c8 20.♘b3 ♖c5 21.♘c2 ♗e7=; 19.♖b5!? axb5 20.♘xb5 ♘xa5 21.♗hd1) 19...♘a5 20.♖c5 (20.b4!? ♘d8 (20...♘xb4 21.♜b1±) 21.♘b3) 20...♖xc5 21.♘xc5 as it will be hard for Black to complete his development. Obviously Anand doesn't feel it should be right to go in for complications before he is done with his development and piece coordination — this is a common attitude in the great players' thinking process.

19. ♖a4 f6 20. b4!?

20. g4 ♖gc8 21. ♖hd1 ♕g8 doesn't look very impressive here, so White tries to be creative. His main problem is that he needs a concrete plan to exert pressure, as his space advantage alone isn't enough.

20... ♖gc8

Accepting the pawn sacrifice with 20... ♕xb4 could be proven dangerous after 21. ♖b1 ♕xa5 22. ♖xb7 (or 22. ♖c5 b5 23. ♕xe6 ♖xc5 24. ♕xg8 ♕xg8 25. ♕xc5+ and maybe this is what Anand was mostly afraid of.) 22... ♖gb8 23. ♖hb1 ♖xb7 24. ♖xb7 with strong pressure along the 7th rank and immediate threats like ♖c5. But it seems that Black can hold with



24... ♖d6! 25. ♕a7 ♖c6 26. ♕xa6 ♕c7 27. ♖b2 ♖d6! (27... ♖xa7 28. ♕b5+ ♖d6 29. ♖d2+ ♗) 28. ♖d2+ ♕e7 29. ♕b5 ♕d6=

21. ♕c5

Not much is offered by 21. ♖c5 ♕xc5 22. bxc5 ♖c7=

21... ♕xc5

The safest, but Black could also go for 21... ♖xc5 22. bxc5 ♕c7 (22... ♕xc5? 23. ♕xe6!+) 23. ♖b6 ♕xb6 24. cxb6 ♖c5 25. ♕xa6! ♖xc1 26. ♖xc1 ♖xa6 (26... bxa6? 27. ♖c7+-) 27. ♖c7+ ♖d6 28. ♖xg7 ♕xe4 29. fxe4 ♖xa5 30. g4! (30. ♖xb7 ♖xh5=) 30... ♖g5! and he will be able

to draw: 31.♖g6!? ♜xg6 32.hxg6 ♔e7 33.♔d3 ♕f8 34.♔d4 ♖g7
 35.♕c5 ♕xg6 36.♔d6 ♕f7 37.♕c7 f5 38.gxf5 exf5 39.e5 f4 40.♔d7 f3
 41.e6+ ♕g7 42.e7 f2 43.e8=♚ f1=♚=

22.hxc5 ♜c7

Simple and nice, preparing ...♜ac8. Black should avoid either
 22...♗xc5? 23.♗b6+- or 22...♞c6 23.♞hd1 ♜ac8 24.♞xd7+ ♔xd7
 25.♗b6+ ♞xb6 26.cxb6 ♔g8 27.e5±

23.♗b6

The alternative 23.♞hd1 ♗xc5 24.♔d3 ♜ac8 25.♗b6 ♞d8 26.♗a4
 would end the game in a draw by threefold repetition. Although
 the text is not bad either, it is White that should be careful from
 now on. Anand passed the opening exam with flying colours!

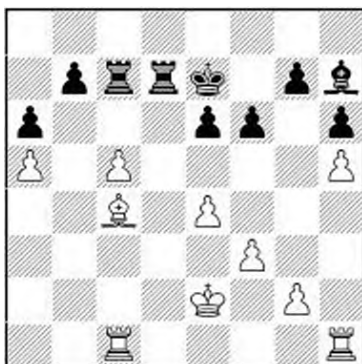
23...♞d8

23...♗xb6 24.cxb6 ♞c5 25.♔xa6! transposes to the note after
 Black's 21st move.

24.♗xd7

24.♔d5!? is interesting. Black shouldn't take anything now, not
 d5, not c5 and not b6, but play instead 24...♗e5 (24...♗xc5
 25.♔xb7!; 24...♗xb6 25.axb6 ♞cd7 26.♔c4!; 24...exd5? 25.♗xd5+)
 25.f4 ♗d3! 26.♕xd3 exd5 27.f5! dxe4+ 28.♕xe4 ♔e8!=

24...♞dxd7!



It seems that 24...♖xcd7 would give White some chances after 25.c6! bxc6 26.♙xa6 ♖a7 27.♞xc6 ♗d6 28.♞xd6 ♕xd6 29.♞d1+ ♕e7 30.♙c4 (30.♙c8 ♞c7!) 30...♞xa5 31.♞b1 as Black's h7-bishop still remains a bad piece, but the liberating 31...f5! would do the job: 32.♞b7+ ♕f6 33.exf5 ♙xf5= With the text move Black is perfectly safe and might even try for something more if White overdoes things.

25.♙d3 ♙g8

Black thought about being immediately active with 25...f5 but after 26.c6!?

a) 26.♞c4 fxe4 27.fxe4 (27.♙xe4?! ♙xe4 28.fxe4 ♕f6=) 27...e5=;

b) 26.e5!? ♞d5 27.f4 ♞dxc5 28.♞xc5 ♞xc5 29.♞b1 ♞c7 30.g4!?= (30.♕d2 ♙g8 31.♙e2 ♙f7 32.♙f3 ♞c5!);

26...bxc6 27.♙xa6 fxe4 28.♙c4 exf3+ 29.gxf3= White's compensation (in view of the passed a-pawn) is not bad but probably not more than enough to keep the balance;

25...♞d4 seems to force a draw, but White has a resource: 26.c6! ♞a4 27.♞b1! ♞a2+ 28.♕e3 bxc6 29.♞a1! ♞xg2 (29...♞xa1 30.♞xa1 ♞a7 31.♞b1±) 30.♙xa6=

26.c6

Sooner or later White has to get rid of his weak c-pawn.

26...♞d6

Black could also go for 26...bxc6 27.♞c2 ♞d4! (27...e5 28.♞hc1±) 28.♞a1 e5 29.♙xa6 c5 30.♙b5 ♞b4 31.a6 ♞a7 32.♞a5 ♕d6=;

26...♞xc6 27.♞xc6 bxc6 28.♞b1 looks a bit more pleasant for White due to his active pieces — take a look at the g8-bishop.

27.cxb7 ♞xb7 28.♞c3 ♙f7!

Anand doesn't care to check Topalov's ideas — and rightly so! After the 'active' 28...♞b2+?! 29.♕e3 ♞xg2 30.♞c7+ ♞d7 (30...♕f8?

31. ♖c8+ ♜f7 32. ♞b1+) 31. ♞xd7+ ♜xd7 32. ♞d1! (32. ♞a1 e5 33. ♙xa6 ♞a2=; 32. ♙xa6 ♞a2 33. ♙b5+ ♜d6 34. a6 ♙f7=) 32... ♜c6 33. ♞c1+ ♜d6 34. e5+! ♜xe5 35. ♙g6 Black will end up losing his unfortunate g8-bishop, but still might have some survival chances due to his pawns. After all, he doesn't have to go for it.

29. ♜e3

The immediate 29. ♞hc1 makes sense and was probably a better try, since it is risky to take the pawn: 29... ♙xh5 (29... ♙e8! 30. ♞c7+ ♞d7 31. ♞7c5 ♞d6 32. g4 ♙d7 33. ♜e3=) 30. ♞c7+ ♞xc7 31. ♞xc7+ ♞d7 32. ♞c8±

29... ♙e8 30. g4 e5 31. ♞hc1 ♙d7



It is true that it took Black a lot of time to fully activate his bishop (... ♙f5-g6-h7-g8-f7-e8-d7) but in the meantime White couldn't do much. Full equality and the opponents could easily shake hands but not in this match... Playing till the very end is a 'must' for both players — Topalov made it completely clear before the match and Anand would love to follow!

32. ♞c5 ♙b5

What an excellent post for the previously 'bad' bishop! Now Black will not have to worry about his a-pawn, as with bishops off the board, the balance can no longer be ruined. It is funny that Anand equalized without any of his pieces being in the opponent's half of the board.

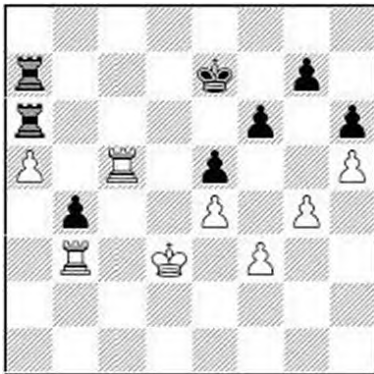
33. ♖xb5 axb5 35. ♖b1

33... ♖xb5? 34. ♖xb5 axb5 35. ♖b1 would just lose a pawn for nothing!

34. ♖b1

After 34. ♖c7+ ♖d7! Black would be OK. (34... ♖xc7? 35. ♖xc7+ ♖d7 36. ♖c5! (36. ♖xd7+? ♔xd7 37. ♔d3 ♔c6 38. ♔c3 ♔b7! =) 36... ♖b7 37. ♔d3 ♔d6 38. ♖d5+ ♔c6 39. ♔c3±).

34... b4 35. ♖b3 ♖a6 36. ♔d3 ♖ba7



Now, after some further forced exchanges, the game will end in a draw.

37. ♖xb4 ♖xa5 38. ♖xa5 ♖xa5 39. ♖b7+ ♔f8 40. ♔e2 ♖a2+

As no-one really wishes to offer a draw, the coming threefold repetition will 'solve' the problem.

41. ♔e3 ♖a3+ 42. ♔f2 ♖a2+ 43. ♔e3 ♖a3+ 44. ♔f2 ♖a2+ 45. ♔e3 ♖a3+ 46. ♔f2

A draw offer through the arbiter could not be rejected by Anand!

CONCLUSION

In general, burying a bishop is certainly a bad idea and should be avoided at almost all costs. There are certain mechanisms and ideas which were examined in this survey, which would allow us to dominate and cash in the point.

Exceptions do exist however, as long as the bishop can return from the dead successfully...

UNDER-DEVELOPMENT

From our early chess years we learn that development and piece coordination are key values in the playing of a game.

Well, we are not always in a position to execute our 'knowledge' perfectly, but in most cases we do remember and try to apply them.

The simple thing that we have to keep in mind is that in nearly every case we must oppose the strategical or tactical plans of our opponent utilising the same number of pieces he/she is using.

And also the simplified idea of development and piece coordination; all units must participate when and where they are needed.

But somehow there are still games played in which this valuable axiom has to be 'omitted' for various reasons; mainly because there is 'no time' to develop, or our opponent simply keeps us 'behind'.

The following game yet more proof of the lethal consequences of poor development and piece coordination. White launched a direct attack on the opposing king, and the poor development of the black queenside pieces proved fatal. Black played the entire game without three of his pieces...

□ Efstratios Grivas

■ Emanouel Pandavos

Chania 1987

1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 e6 3.♗g5



The 'Torre Attack' is an interesting opening choice, which often transposes into other openings. But by this move order White can avoid some openings such as the 'Bogo-Indian Defence' or some 'Queen's Indian Defence' variations. But of course every opening and every move order has its own pluses and minuses...

3...h6

A 'principled' line for Black, who gets the bishop pair while White gets the centre and easier development. It's a matter of taste by the way... 3...d5 or 3...c5 are other popular choices.

4.♗xf6

Of course 4.♗h4 is quite playable, but White is happy to go for the centre.

4...♕xf6 5.e4



5...b6

The most common reply here is 5...d6, and by way of example here are some of my games: 6.♘c3 (6.e5 ♕e7 7.♘bd2 g6 8.♗d3 ♗g7 9.0-0 dxe5 10.dxe5 ♘c6 11.♕e2 ♗d7 12.a3 g5 13.♗e4∞ Grivas,E-Luther,T Leningrad 1989) 6...a6

a) 6...♘d7 7.♕d2 a6 (7...e5? 8.♘b5 ♕d8 9.♕a5± Grivas,E-Mastrokoukos,G Athens 2004; 7...g6 8.0-0-0 a6 9.e5∞ Grivas,E-Pandavos,E Komotini 1992) 8.0-0-0 ♕d8 9.h4 ♗e7 (9...b5 10.d5 e5 11.♘b1 ♗e7 12.♕e3∞ Grivas,E-Mastrovasilis,A Iraklion 2004) 10.g4

b5∞ Grivas,E-Gelashvili,T Bursa 2009;

b) 6...g5 7.e5 dxe5 8.♘e4 ♚e7 9.♘xe5∞ Grivas,E-Logothetis,S Kallithea 2002;

7.♙d3 ♘c6 8.0-0 ♙d7∞ Grivas,E-Sturua,Z Katerini 1992. In general I feel that Black is doing OK with the 5...d6 and further ...a6 set-up.

6.♙d3 ♙b7 7.♘bd2



7...d5?!

Obviously not the best, as this 'French Defence' set-up seems to favour White. Another important game went as follows 7...d6 8.♚e2 a6 9.0-0-0 ♘d7 10.♙b1 e5 11.c3 ♙e7 12.♘c4± Korchnoi,V-Karpov,A Hastings 1972.

8.♚e2!

There is no need to 'block' the centre with 8.e5. White is better developed and should keep his choices open.

8...dxe4

The alternative was 8...♘d7 9.0-0 g5 10.exd5 ♙xd5 11.♙e4, when White holds the advantage — better pieces and weaknesses on both flanks for Black... but maybe this was the lesser evil, as Black would be able to develop all his pieces, something that he surely regretted during the game. Well, it is not so simple to fully understand the negative consequences of our moves, until it is

rather too late. But at the end of the day this is what separates the really good players from the rest of the pack! The ability to feel the position and its needs, based on primitive values such as development and piece coordination! Everything looks new when it is well-forgotten and there is really not much to say as an excuse!

9.♙xe4



9...c6

Trying to ‘protect’ the light squares on the queenside by preserving the bishops, as 9...♙xe4 10.♘xe4 ♚d8 11.0-0-0± wasn’t exactly what Black had wished for. But as said, everything has pluses and minuses and the evaluation between them makes the difference.

10.♘e5

Aggressive and natural, but also 10.a4 ♚d8 11.a5, looks great for White — Black’s queenside is a mess...

10...♙d6



11.f4!

11.♘dc4 ♙c7 12.a4, looks excellent for White as well, but the text is also good, and it is supported by small tactics.

11...0-0

After 11...♙xf4? 12.♖f1 ♗xh2 (12...♙xe5 13.♗xf4 ♙xf4 14.♗f3+-) 13.♘xf7 0-0



White can continue in style with 14.0-0-0! ♗xf7 (14...♙a6 15.c4 ♗xf7 16.♙h7+ ♘xh7 17.♗xf7 ♗g3 18.♘e4+-) 15.♙h7+! ♘xh7 (15...♙f8 16.♗xe6+-) 16.♗xf7, with a won position, as the double threat of ♗xb7 and ♗g4 decides. Black's undeveloped queenside causes all the damage...

12.0-0

Of course, it was also possible to castle queenside with 12.g3 ♗e7 13.0-0-0, but there wasn't really much need. Kingside

castling is also fine, but maybe less dangerous for Black!

12...♖e7 13.♘dc4



13...♖e8?

A blunder in a bad position, Black should carefully think of his undeveloped status and try to reduce the damage with something like 13...♙a6 14.♘d3 ♖c7 15.♗e4 f5 16.♗e3 ♘d7 17.♘xd7 ♗xd7, where of course White keeps a nice strategical advantage due to Black's backward and weak e-pawn: 18.♞fe1 ♞f6 (18...♞ae8? 19.♘xd6 ♙xd3 20.♘xe8+-) 19.♘e5 ♗b7 20.♙xa6 ♗xa6 21.♗f3 (21.♘xc6? ♞c8 22.♘e5 ♞xc2±) 21...♞c8 22.c3± but Black would be OK with his development and could fight.

14.♗h5?

Missing a killing tactic: 14.♘xf7! ♙xf7 15.♗h5+ ♙f8 (15...♙g8 16.♘d6+-) 16.♘e5!+- Well, White felt 'confident' in playing natural and simple attacking moves, forgetting this simple tactic.

14...♞f8



Passive, but Black's position is beyond repair... The main alternative was 14...♙xe5 15.fxe5 ♖a6 16.♘d6 ♙xf1 17.♞xf1! (17.♘xe8 ♞xe8 18.♞xf1 ♘a6 19.♞f3 ♞c8 20.♞a3±) 17...♞f8 18.♞xf7! ♞xf7 19.♞g6 ♔f8 20.♞h7 ♞d8 21.c3!, winning in all variations. But probably White would have gone for the 17.♘xe8 variation, as all these tactics were difficult to assess in an actual game, especially 21.c3! — in analysis everything is easier and clearer!

15.♞f3

Another 'natural' attacking move, bringing more forces to join the attack. But probably more direct was 15.♘g4! f5 (15...♘d7 16.♘xh6+ gxh6 17.♞xh6 f5 18.♞f3 ♞f7 19.♞g3+ ♞g7 20.♞xg7+ ♞xg7 21.♞xe6+ ♔h8 22.♘xd6 fxe4 23.♘f7+ ♔h7 24.♞xd7+-) 16.♘xd6 fxe4 (16...♞xd6 17.♘xh6+ gxh6 18.♞g6+ ♔h8 19.♞xh6+ ♔g8 20.♞g6+ ♔h8 21.♞f3 ♞xd4+ 22.♔h1 ♞g7 23.♞h3+ ♔g8 24.♞xe6+-) 17.♘xb7 ♞xb7 18.♞g6 ♔h8 19.♘e5 ♞f6 20.♞xe4+-). Well, 14.♞h5 and 15.♞f3 can be called 'human' moves, but of course computer engines will always be stronger than humans in tactical battles.

15...f5



15...♙xe5 16.fxe5 ♖g5, could be tried, but White holds a decisive advantage here as well: 17.♗xg5 (17.♗h3+-) 17...hxg5 18.♘d6 ♙a6 19.c4+-, as Black is not in a position to complete his development satisfactorily and without losing material.

16.♘g6!

White happily enters the tactics. In any event he can be confident that he is fighting with some extra pieces, as Black's queenside pieces (rook, bishop and knight) are not really included. And here is exactly the point why Black seems to be helpless and without a satisfactory defence — he hasn't enough pieces at his disposal to perform his defensive duties!

16...♗f6 17.♘xd6 fxe4

17...♗xd4+ 18.♗f2 ♗xd6 is losing to 19.♖d1 ♗c5 20.♘xf8 ♗xf8 21.♙f3.

18.♘xe4

18.♗f2 e3 19.♖e2 ♖d8 20.♘xb7 ♖d7 21.♘e5 ♖xb7 22.♗e8+ ♙h7 23.♗f1 was also good, when the game is decided by the helplessly undeveloped black queenside. White is simply threatening here g4-g5, ending the game by a direct attack.

18...♗xd4+ 19.♘f2



19...♚xb2

Black could go for developing the unfortunate b8-knight — finally — but this wouldn't save him anyway: 19...♘a6 20.♞d1 (20.♞g3+-) 20...♚c5 21.♚h4 ♜f6 22.♞g3+-;

19...♘d7 20.♘xf8 ♜xf8 21.♞d1 ♘f6 22.♚g6 ♚c5 23.♞g3 ♚e7 24.♚xh6+-

20.♞d1!

Rooks belong on open files!

20...♚b5



20...♚xc2 21.♘xf8 ♜xf8 22.♞d8+ leads to mate.

21.♚h4

21.♚g4 ♜e8 22.♘e5 was another way to win. Here Black is even

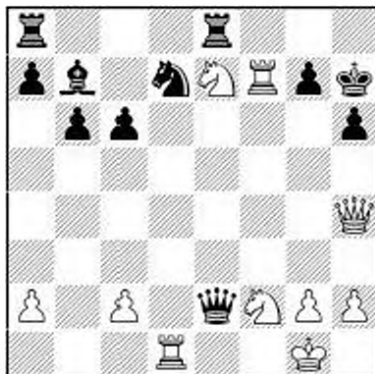
a pawn up, but a king down... White will win with a direct attack:
 22...♔e2 (22...♘a6 23.♙d7+-) 23.♚g6 ♘a6 24.♚f7+ ♔h8 25.♗h3 ♙g8
 26.♘g6+ (26.♚xb7+-) 26...♔h7 27.g4! ♚xc2 28.♗xh6+! ♔xh6 29.♘f8!

21...♙e8 22.f5

Opening lines against the black king. Well, here White has more than one way to win, such as 22.♘e5 ♚e2 23.♚h5.

22...c5

22...exf5 loses to 23.♘e7+ ♔h7 24.♗xf5 (five white attacking pieces versus two black defending pieces is too much of a deficit to make a successful resistance...) 24...♚e2 25.♗f7 ♘d7



Tactics will always crown an overwhelming position: 26.♗xg7+!
 ♔xg7 27.♘f5+ ♔g6 28.♚xh6+ ♔xf5 29.g4+ ♔e5 30.♚d6#

23.♙g3 exf5

A nice picture arises after 23...♚b2 24.♘g4, when the white knights are ready to kill the black king...

24.♘e7+ ♔h8



25. ♖h5

More direct was 25. ♜xg7! ♔xg7 26. ♘xf5+ ♔g6 27. ♚xh6+, when mate follows.

25... ♞c6



Finally the black knight is developed but it is already too late...

26. ♜xg7!

The final and 'usual' blow. Here Black decided to give-up, as mate is near: 26... ♔xg7 27. ♚g6+ ♔f8 (27... ♔h8 28. ♚xh6#) 28. ♚f6#

1-0

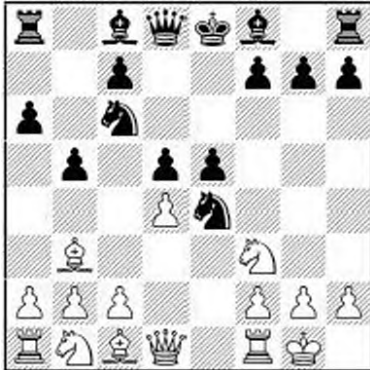
Of course the trainee should be schooled by examining more than one game:

□ Haas

■ Heinrich Wolf

Vienna 1910

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 a6 4.♙a4 ♘f6 5.0-0 ♘xe4 6.d4 b5 7.♙b3 d5



8.♘xe5

This is not considered to be a dangerous continuation for Black. Most players go for the natural 8.dxe5 ♙e6 and decide which line to play from here.

8...♘xe5 9.dxe5



9...♙b7

Here we meet a crossroads for Black. Instead of the text move, he has some other options at his disposal:

9...c6 and now 10.c3

a) 10.♘d2 ♘xd2 11.♙xd2 ♙e7 (11...♙c5 12.♚h5 0-0 13.♞ae1 ♞d7 14.♞f3 a5 15.c3 ♞f5 16.♞d1 ♞g6 17.♙c2 ♙f5 18.♙xf5 ♞xf5= Wagner,A-Lang,Z Bayern 2003) 12.♚h5 ♙e6 13.c3 ♞d7 14.♙g5 ♙f5 15.♞fe1 (15.♙xe7 ♙g6) 15...♙g6 16.♚h4 ♙xg5 17.♞xg5 0-0= Short,N-Timman,J El Escorial 1993;

b) 10.♙e3 ♙e7 11.♘d2 (11.c3 0-0 12.f3 ♘c5 13.♙c2 f5= Barle,J-Tukmakov,V Krk 1976) and now:



11...♘xd2!

b1) 11...♙f5 12.♘f3! ♙g4 13.h3 ♙h5 (13...♙xf3 14.♞xf3 0-0 15.c3± Ciocaltea,V-Kristinsson,J Vrnjacka Banja 1972) 14.g4 (14.c3 ♙c5 15.♙xc5 ♘xc5 16.♙c2 0-0= Yudasin,A-Chekhov,V Soviet Union 1981) 14...♙g6 15.♘d4± ♞c8? 16.♘xc6 ♞xc6 17.♙xd5 ♞c8 18.♞f3±;

b2) 11...♘c5 12.f4 (12.c3? ♘d3! 13.f4 ♘xb2 14.♞f3 ♙f5+ Boey,J-Mikhalevski,V Antwerp 1998) 12...0-0 13.c3 f6 14.♙c2!± Sautto,D-Lacrosse,M Cutro 2005;

12.♞xd2 0-0 (12...♙f5 13.c3 0-0 14.♙c2 ♙xc2 15.♞xc2 ♞d7 Martidis,A-Grivas,E Chania 1982) 13.♞c3!? ♙b7 (13...♙d7 14.♙c5 ♞e8 15.f4 ♙xc5+ 16.♞xc5 ♞e7= Ciocaltea,V-Shvidler,E Netanya 1983) 14.f4 (14.♙c5 ♞e8 15.f4 ♙xc5+ 16.♞xc5 ♞e7 17.♞xe7 ♞xe7 18.♞ae1 ♞ae8 Gligoric,S-Matanovic,A Monte Carlo 1967) 14...a5= Fischer,R-Addison,W New York 1966;

10...♙c5 11.♘d2 (11.♞e2 0-0 12.♙e3 ♙f5 13.♘d2 ♞b6 14.♘xe4 ♙xe4 15.♞fe1 ♞ad8 16.f3 ♙f5 17.♞ad1 ♙xe3+ 18.♞xe3 ♞xe3+ 19.♞xe3 ♞d7 20.♙f2 ♞fd8 21.♞e2 c5 Keres,P-Korchnoi,V Moscow 1973)

11...♞xd2 12.♙xd2 ♕f5 13.♞e1 0-0 14.♙e3 ♕e7 15.a4 ♖d7 16.♗d2
 Hort,V-Karpov,A Bugojno 1980;

9...♙e6 10.c3 (10.♙e3 ♕c5 11.♙xc5 ♞xc5 12.f4 ♞xb3! (12...g6 13.♞d2
 0-0 14.♞f3 ♞xb3 15.axb3 c5 16.b4!± (16.♗d2= Kieninger,G-
 Bogoljubow,E Schwelm 1950)) 13.axb3 ♕f5=) 10...♙c5 11.♞d2
 ♞xd2!

a) 11...♙f5?! 12.♞f3 c6 13.♞d4 ♙xd4 14.cxd4 0-0 15.♙e3 f6 16.f3
 ♞g5 17.♙xg5 fxg5 18.♞c1 ♞c8 19.♗d2± Smejkal,J-Kchouk,B Lugano
 1968;

b) 11...0-0 12.♞f3 f5 13.♞d4 ♙xd4 14.cxd4± (14.♗xd4 c5 15.♗d1 f4
 16.f3 ♞g5 17.a4 c4 18.♙c2 ♙f5= Ehlvest,J-Mamedyarov,S Kocaeli
 2002);

12.♙xd2 ♗h4 13.♗f3 0-0 14.♙e3 ♙xe3 15.♗xe3 c6= Caro,H-
 Cohn,W Barmen 1905. So Black seems to be fine without much
 effort in all lines, proving that 8.♞xe5 is not dangerous. Maybe
 the above opening analysis looks irrelevant to the examined
 theme, but it is always useful to get to know some theoretical
 lines, especially if you are an 'Open Ruy Lopez' enthusiast!

10.♙e3

Not dangerous for Black is 10.c3 ♙c5 11.♞d2 ♞xd2 12.♙xd2 0-0
 13.♗g4 ♗e7 14.♗g3 f6 15.e6 ♙d6 16.♙f4 ♞ad8 17.♞fe1 ♞fe8∞
 Vasiukov,E-Grivas,E Athens 1987.

10...♙c5



Aggressive and good, although not bad either is 10...♙e7 11.♗d2 ♗xd2! 12.♙xd2 (12.♖xd2?! d4 13.♖xd4? ♖xd4 14.♙xd4 c5 15.♙e3 c4+) 12...c5 13.c3 0-0=. As we can note, Black already has two good continuations at his disposal.

11.♖g4?

This is a bad mistake, which falls into what we should consider to be also an opening trap. White should choose between the following alternatives:

a) 11.♙xc5 ♗xc5 12.♗d2 (12.♖g4 0-0 13.c3 ♖d7 14.♖xd7 ♗xd7= Hartston,W-Mestel,A Hastings 1972) 12...0-0 13.♖h5 (13.f4 ♖h4 14.c3 ♗ad8 15.♖e2 f5 16.♖e3 ♖e7= Klein,M-Bartel,M Nordwalde 1988) 13...d4 14.f4 (14.♗ad1 ♗xb3 15.axb3 ♖e7 16.♗fe1 ♖c5= Lanc,A-Stoica,V Bucharest 1979) 14...♗xb3 15.axb3 ♖d5 16.♗f2 c5 17.♗e1 ♗ae8= Savon,V-Shianovsky,V Yerevan 1962;

b) 11.♗d2 ♙xe3 (11...♗xd2 12.♖xd2 ♙xe3 13.♖xe3 ♖e7 14.♗ad1±) 12.♗xe4 ♙b6 13.♖h5 ♖e7 14.♗g5 (14.♗g3 g6 15.♖h6 0-0-0∞) 14...g6∞ Weinzettl,E-Foessmeier,U Austria 1989;

c) 11.♖e2 0-0 (11...♖h4! 12.♗d2 ♙xe3 13.♖xe3 ♗xd2 14.♖xd2 c5=) 12.♗d1 ♙xe3 13.♖xe3 ♗e8 (13...♖g5? 14.♖xg5 ♗xg5 15.♙xd5± Jovanovic,P-Yu,M Adelaide 2003) 14.♗d2 c6 15.f4 (15.♗xe4 ♗xe5 16.f3 ♖e7) 15...♗xd2 16.♗xd2 ♙c8=

11...♙xe3!

As planned beforehand! Black's main idea is based on his future strong attack, which is helped by White's under-development. Of course 11...0-0? 12.♙h6 is out of the question.

12.♖xg7?

The natural follow-up, but certainly the lesser evil here is 12.fxe3 0-0 13.e6 fxe6 14.♖xe6+ ♗h8 15.♗c3 ♖g5±. But who would like to play with such a shattered pawn structure so early on and without compensation?



12...♔g5!!

A splendid exchange sacrifice. All Black's pieces will enter into a vicious attack against the white king. From now on there is no escape.

13.♖xh8+ ♕e7 14.♖xh7



14...♙xf2+!

One of the main points of Black's tactical play.

15.♔h1

Unfortunately for White he can't continue with 15.♙xf2 due to 15...♖c1+ 16.♙f1 ♖e3+ 17.♔h1 ♗f2+ 18.♔g1 ♗h3+ 19.♔h1 ♖g1+ 20.♙xg1 ♗f2#. A nice smothered mate!

15...♙g8!

The remaining black rook joins the attack. Meanwhile, the white queenside pieces (a1-rook and b1-knight) are out of play and still not developed...

16. ♖h3



Forced: 16.g3 ♘xg3+ 17.hxg3 (17.♔g2 ♘e4+ 18.♔h3 ♚g4#) 17...d4+

16... ♘g3+?

An incredible blunder that turns the tables! It was time for the last black piece, the b7-bishop, to join the attack and this could be done with the simple 16...d4!. White is helpless: 17.♘a3



What else other than finally develop the poor b1-knight? But now Black can end the game in style: 17... ♚xg2+! 18. ♚xg2 ♘g3+ 19.hxg3 ♚h8#. I knew about this opening trap already 35 years ago, but unfortunately I was never able to benefit from it, as no-one proved that helpful!

17. ♖xg3?

After the correct 17. hxg3! Black would be in trouble: 17... ♗g6 (17... ♖xe5? 18. ♖h4+ ♕d6 19. ♖c3 ♗h8 20. ♗xf2 ♗xh4+ 21. gxh4+-) 18. ♗xd5! (18. ♗xf2? ♗h6 19. ♖c3 ♗xh3+ 20. gxh3 ♖xg3 21. ♗xd5 ♖xf2 22. ♗xb7 ♖xc2∞) 18... ♗xd5 19. ♖c3 ♗b7 20. ♗xf2 ♗h6 21. ♕h2±

17... ♖xg3

And White resigned: 18. hxg3 ♗h8#

0-1

Understanding the terms of development is already a good step!

Basically, a development advantage is what's called a 'dynamic' advantage, as opposed to a 'static' one like space, weak pawns, etc.

The key thing to understand about dynamic advantages is that if you dawdle around and allow your opponent too much of a free hand, they disappear.

So, the case of a development advantage is a short-term one — if you don't exploit it, your opponent will develop his pieces and the 'disadvantage' will disappear.

So the key with dynamic advantages is you have to use them right away, in order to gain something from them. Attacking the opponent's king is in general a good idea.

But the advantage can also be used in other ways, for example:

1. Use the development advantage to force static weaknesses in the opponent's position, things such as isolated pawns, backward pawns, less space, doubled pawns, etc.

2. Use the development advantage to gain another kind of dynamic advantage — better placed pieces for example. This is often the precursor to an attack, or again the dynamic advantage could be converted into a static one.

3. Look to open up the centre (especially if your opponent hasn't castled) and attack the king. Think on a pawn break, not

necessarily to get a forced mate but to make room for your developed pieces to have more options to attack, especially your rooks. If you can get your rooks working before your opponent, you're probably doing well!

4. If you can't really do anything with your pieces once they are all developed, spend a little bit more time thinking about their development. Just because a piece is off of the back rank doesn't mean it's a well-placed piece.

The next game was a casual one and the great Aron Nimzowitsch analysed it for the magazine *Rigasche Rundschau* (4th April 1914). Some notes from this analysis are inserted:

□ Aron Nimzowitsch

■ Simon Alapin

Petersburg 1914

1.e4 e6

1...c5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘c3 d5 4.exd5 ♘xd5 5.d4 e6

2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.exd5 ♘xd5

'Surrender of the centre'.

5.♘f3 c5



A 'tricky' move order. The position could also arise from the 'Sicilian Defence': Nimzowitsch proposes here 5...♗e7, with the idea ...0-0, ...b6 and ...♗b7, effecting restraint on the centre;

Another game between the two opponents went as follows
 5...♗xc3 6.bxc3 ♖e7 7.♗d3 ♜d7 8.0-0 0-0 9.♖e2 ♞e8 10.a4 a5 11.♞e1
 c6 12.♗f4 ♜f8 13.c4 ♗d6 14.♗xd6 ♖xd6 15.c5 ♖d8 16.♖e4 ♗d7
 17.♞ab1 f5 18.♖e3 b5 19.cxb6 ♞b8 20.b7 ♖c7 21.♗a6 c5 22.♖e5 ♖c6
 23.♗b5 ♖xb7 24.dxc5 ♞bc8 25.♜d4 ♗xb5 26.axb5 ♜g6 27.c6 ♖b6
 28.♖e3 f4 29.♖e4 ♞cd8 30.♜f3 ♞d6 31.h4 ♖c5 32.♜e5 ♞d4 33.♖e2
 ♜xh4 34.b6 ♞b4 35.♞xb4 axb4 36.b7 ♖c3 37.♖e4 ♜f5 38.♜d7 ♜d4
 39.b8=♖ 1-0 Nimzowitsch,A-Alapin,S St Petersburg 1914.

6.♜xd5 ♖xd5

The alternative 6...exd5 7.♗b5+ ♗d7 8.♗xd7+ ♜xd7 9.0-0 ♗e7
 10.dxc5 ♜xc5 11.♞e1±, would lead to a risk-free position for
 White, who could easily play for two results, Black only for one...

7.♗e3

With the threat of 8.dxc5, winning a pawn.

7...cxd4



8.♜xd4

Nimzowitsch had already played this position with the black
 pieces: 8.♖xd4 ♖xd4 9.♜xd4 a6 10.0-0-0 ♗d7 11.♗e2 ♜c6 12.♗f3±
 Perlis,J-Nimzowitsch,A Karlsbad 1911. But the text move is good
 as well.

8...a6

Preventing ♞db5 , but given a ? by Nimzowitsch, who recommends $8...♞c6$.

9.♙e2!?



Threatening $♙f3$. An interesting pawn sacrifice, which Black should think twice before accepting!

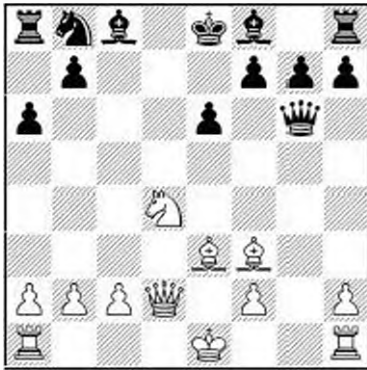
9...♚xg2

Nimzowitsch: 'Stealing a pawn. The consequences are grievous'. Indeed, White gets a lot of time for his development. Black could have opted for the 'safer' $9...e5$ $10.♙f3 ♚a5+$ $11.♙d2 ♙b4$ ($11...♚c7!?$) $12.0-0 ♙xd2$ $13.♞b3 ♚c7$ $14.♚xd2±$ Tiviakov,S-Afek,Y Vlissingen 2003.

10.♙f3 ♚g6?

The real mistake of the game! Black had to go for $10...♚h3$ $11.♚d3 ♙e7$ $12.0-0-0$. In general White's position seems to be preferable, but as long there is nothing concrete, the battle would have just started!

11.♚d2



11...e5

‘The crisis. Black means to be rid of the unpleasant knight, so that he may in some measure catch up in development’. But what else to do? 11...♙e7 12.0-0-0 ♚f6 13.♞hg1 h6 14.♙h1! already looks too strong for White.

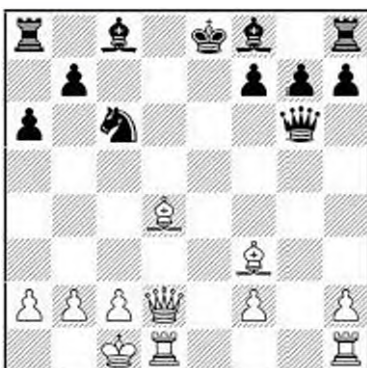
12.0-0-0!

White sacrifices a piece to open-up the position.

12...exd4 13.♙xd4

‘White’s advantage in development is now too great’. Indeed, White has completed his development, while Black has not! So, the sacrificed piece is not so important for the time being. What counts is what remains on the board — not what has left the board!

13...♞c6

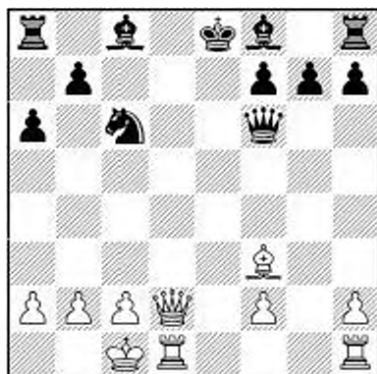


So, another one of those ‘usual’ cases, where the ‘centralised’ king comes under heavy fire. Of course some simple tactics must be performed... 13...♙e7 14.♞hg1 ♚f5 15.♞e3! is winning as well.

14.♙f6!

Nimzowitsch: ‘A problem move’. Note that 14.♙xg7+- wins as well.

14...♞xf6



If 14...♙e7, then 15.♙xc6+ ♙d7 (15...bxc6 16.♞d8+! ♙xd8 17.♞xd8#) 16.♞xd7+ ♙f8 17.♞xe7+ ♙g8 18.♞d8+ ♞xd8 19.♞xd8#

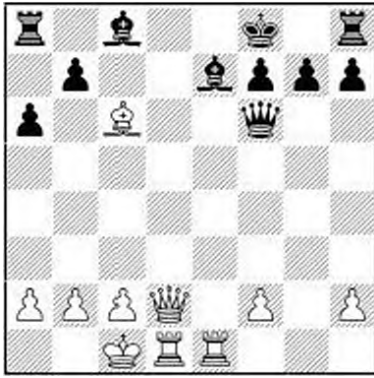
15.♞he1+

‘Play in the ♙- and ♞-files at the same time. The danger of a breakthrough is great’. The alternative was the ‘more’ accurate 15.♙xc6+ bxc6 16.♞he1+ ♙e7 17.♞d8#

15...♙e7

15...♙e6 16.♞d7#

16.♙xc6+ ♙f8



16...bxc6 17.♔d8#. Time for the impressive end...

17.♔d8+! ♙xd8 18.♚e8# 1-0

CONCLUSION

Well, there is nothing new under the sun; we will always meet games where the underdevelopment factor will be present, giving rise to brutal attacks.

Even good players, in the heat of the fight for the initiative, have omitted the importance of development and piece coordination!

But mainly this disaster happens to lower-rated layers, who wrongly think that they can get away with it!

When they do understand — it is already too late...

UNFORTUNATE BISHOP

The annual Isle of Man Masters ended on October 1st. A quite interesting and prestigious tournament, won by the FIDE World Champion Magnus Carlsen followed by Hikaru Nakamura and Vishy Anand.

In the last round my friend Ivan Sokolov wasn't so successful and lost a rather one-sided game, where the theme of a bad piece once more proved its misery.

□ Dennis Wagner

■ Ivan Sokolov

Isle of Man 2017

12...0-0-0



12...♖b6 13.f4 f5 14.♙d3 (14.b3 ♘c8! 15.♙d3 ♘d6∞) 14...♗c4 15.♙xf5 ♙xf5 16.♗xf5 ♗xb2 17.♚e2 ♜g8 18.g3 ♗c4 19.e4 is playable as well, as in Goganov,A-Xu,Y Moscow 2017. A difficult to assess line, as Black gets shattered kingside pawns but the bishop pair as compensation. I think that this position is matter of taste, but personally I have always liked White, as I believe more in healthy pawn structures...

13.f4!?

A new move but with a common idea in such positions; to try to bury the black light-squared bishop in his kingside cage. 13.0-0-0

♞c7 14.♙d3 ♜g8 15.♘xg6 fxg6 16.g4 ♙d6, looks OK for Black, as in Zebre,P-Ottesen,S ICCF email 2009.

13...♞e8?!

Now the bishop gets into trouble. I would prefer to opt for 13...f5!? 14.♙d3 ♜f6 15.♙xf5+ ♙xf5 16.♘xf5 ♙b4, where Black has invested a useless pawn for central control and activity. But of course a pawn is always a pawn — and a healthy one here!

14.f5! ♙h7 15.♞f2 h5 16.♙d3 ♙h6 17.♞ae1 ♜b6 18.♞e2!

White's idea is now simple: he will overprotect his only vulnerable spot — the e3-pawn — and then he will bury Black's light-squared bishop forever, with h3 and g4.

18...♞b8

18...♜c4 19.♙xc4 (19.♞he1 ♜d6 20.e4 ♙g5 21.♜f3 dxe4 22.♜xe4 ♜xf5 23.♜exg5 ♞xe2+ 24.♞xe2 fxg5 25.♜xg5 ♜xd4 26.♙xh7 ♜xe2 27.♞xe2±) 19...dxc4 20.e4, doesn't look healthy either...

19.♜f3 ♜c8 20.h3 ♞eg8



21.g4!

Black's 'parked' pieces on the h-file allow this thematic move. Now the unfortunate light-squared bishop has been buried...

21...♜d6 22.♞ee1 ♙f8 23.♞eg1 ♞g7 24.♜e2 ♙g8 25.♜g3 ♞gh7

Black decided to sac the exchange, as 25...hxg4 26.hxg4 ♖xh1 27.♗xh1, wasn't looking good in the long-run...

26.♗e1

Well, White could take the exchange, as 26.♗xh5 ♖xh5 27.gxh5 ♕h7 28.♗h4 ♕h6 29.♖g4 ♕g5 30.♗f1 ♕xh4+ 31.♖xh4 ♕xf5 32.♔e2 should be winning as well. But he preferred to play it 'safe' — the bad bishop is a great asset for him anyway.

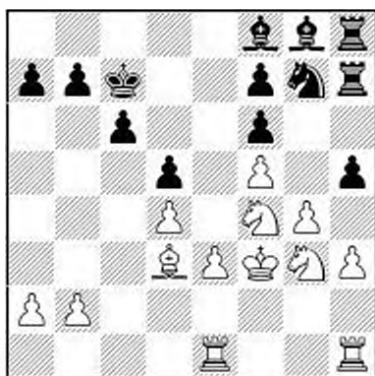
26...♖g7 27.♔f3 ♖gh7 28.♗g2 ♗e8



29.♗f4

White wants to force the exchange of the rooks and Black insists on sacrificing the exchange...

29...♗g7 30.♖e1 ♔c7



Time to open-up the centre, seeking piece exchanges. White dreams of getting a position with two-three pieces for each side, when the unfortunate black bishop will decide the game...

**31.e4! dxe4+ 32.♙xe4 hxg4+ 33.hxg4 ♖xh1 34.♖xh1 ♖xh1
35.♗xh1 ♗e8 36.♗g3 ♗h6 37.♗d3 ♗d6 38.♗e4+ ♗e7 39.♗c4 ♗c7
40.♗d3 a5 41.a3 ♗g5 42.♗ec5 b6 43.♗e4 ♗e8?!**

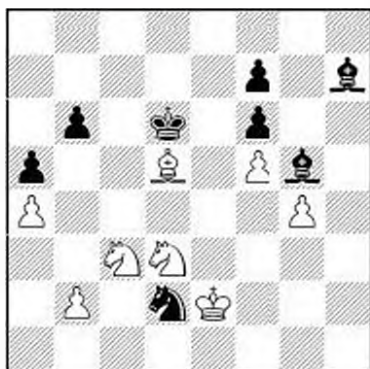


This loses, so 43...♗h6 was a better way to fight.

44.d5

44.♗xg5 fxg5 45.♗e5 looks like it wins a pawn on the spot, as even the try to get rid of the bad piece with 45...f6? loses to 46.♗g6+. White either didn't notice it or simply wanted to continue playing a 'piece-up' instead of a pawn-up.

**44...cxd5 45.♗xd5 ♗h7 46.♗c3 ♗d6 47.♗e4 ♗c4 48.a4 ♗d6 49.♗d5
♗d2+ 50.♗e2**



50...♗g8?!

50...♞b1! was the only way to continue the fight: 51.♙xf7 ♞xc3+ 52.bxc3=

51.♙a2 ♖c6 52.♞f2 ♖c5 53.♗d3 ♗b4



54.♞fe4?!

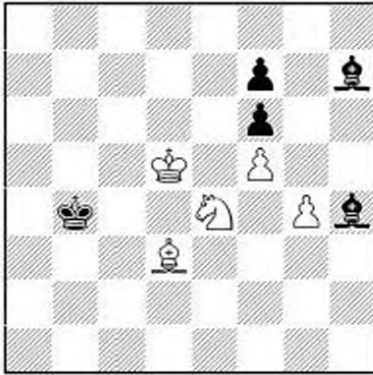
Somewhat simpler was 54.♞h3! ♙h6 (54...♞f3 55.♞xg5 fxg5 56.♞d5+ ♖xa4 57.♞f6+-) 55.♞d5+ ♖xa4 56.♞xf6+-

54...♞xe4 55.♞xe4 b5 56.axb5 ♖xb5 57.♙d5 ♙h4 58.♗d4 ♗b4 59.♙a2 a4

What else? Black is trying to exchange all the queenside pawns, hoping for one of these positions without pawns in which a piece-up wouldn't be enough...

60.♗d5 a3 61.bxa3+ ♖xa3 62.♙c4 ♗b4 63.♙d3 ♙h7

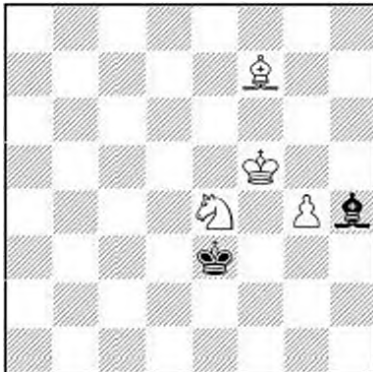
The position has considerably simplified, but this only helps White, who has finally found an entrance to capture the unfortunate g8-bishop...



64.♔d6 ♕a5 65.♕e7 ♖g6 66.♜xf6

66.fxg6 f5+ 67.♔xf7 fxe4 68.♙xe4+- was winning as well, but White seems to be in no hurry — the unfortunate bishop is going nowhere anyway.

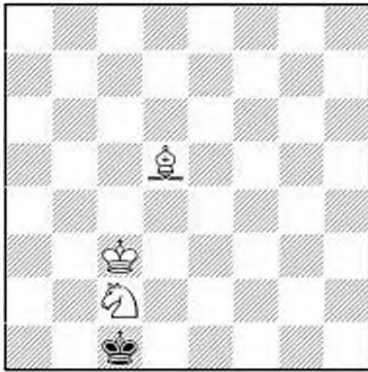
66...♗b4 67.fxg6 fxg6 68.♙xg6 ♔c5 69.♕e6 ♔d4 70.♜e4 ♕e3
71.♔f5 ♔f3 72.♙f7 ♕e3



73.g5

White decided to go for the notorious bishop+knight ending, as there is no other clear way to advance the g-pawn.

73...♙xg5 74.♜xg5 ♔d4 75.♙e6 ♕e3 76.♕e5 ♔d3 77.♙d5 ♔c3
78.♕e4 ♔d2 79.♔d4 ♔c2 80.♜e4 ♔b2 81.♜d2 ♔c2 82.♜f1 ♔b2
83.♜e3 ♔c1 84.♔c3 ♔b1 85.♜c2 ♔c1



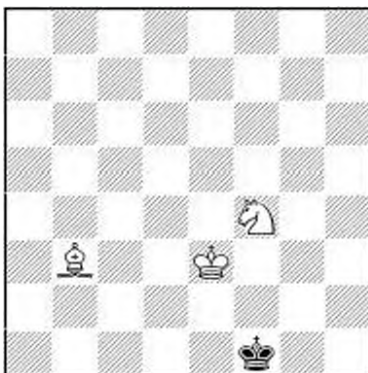
86. ♖a2!

In such endings the mate is performed in the bishop's colour-corner, so White rightly drives the black king to the h1–corner. Note that by now White has played the ending quite accurately and continues to do so!

86... ♗d1 87. ♘d4 ♕c1

87... ♗e1 lasts three moves longer: 88. ♗d3 ♕f2 89. ♘e2 ♕g2 90. ♖e6 ♕f3 91. ♖f5 ♕f2 92. ♖g4 ♕e1 93. ♘c3 ♕f2 94. ♘e4+ (burying the white king in the corner, as White has created a no-pass line on the third rank) 94... ♗e1 95. ♗c2 ♕f1 96. ♗d2 ♕g2 97. ♗e2 ♕g1 98. ♖h3 ♕h2 99. ♖f1 ♕g1 100. ♘d2 ♕h2 101. ♖f2 ♕h1 102. ♖g2+ ♕h2 103. ♘f3#

88. ♘e2+ ♗d1 89. ♗d3 ♕e1 90. ♗e3 ♗d1 91. ♖b3+ ♕e1 92. ♘f4 ♕f1



93. ♖c2

93.♔c2 and Black resigned: 93...♕e1 94.♖d3+ ♕f1 95.♗f3 ♖g1
 96.♗g3 ♗f1 97.♔d1 ♖g1 98.♔e2 ♗h1 99.♖f2+ ♖g1 100.♖h3+ ♗h1
 101.♔f3#

1-0

Well, obviously the unfortunate black light-squared bishop made all the difference in this game. This piece never really made it to the game, allowing White to ‘win’ material early, as he was playing with an extra piece in the middlegame and the endgame.

Of course Black knew the dangers of such pawn structures; he even wrote a good book about them, but somehow he was self-trapped with no way out and although he tried hard, offering material at certain moments, he couldn't do much.

White was in the driver's seat and he could decide on the appropriate moment to increase the advantage and finally cash in the point. Well, that's the fate of unfortunate and badly placed pieces in general...

□ Matthias Bluebaum
 ■ Arkadij Naiditsch
 Minsk 2017

1.d4 ♖f6 2.c4 e6 3.♖c3 d5 4.cxd5 exd5 5.♔g5 c6 6.e3 ♔f5 7.♗f3
 ♔g6 8.♔xf6 ♗xf6 9.♗xf6 gxf6 10.♖f3 ♖d7 11.♖h4 ♖b6



Here Black hasn't inserted the move ...h6, but of course the position is almost similar.

12.f4 h5 13.♔f2 ♖c8



14.f5

A natural novelty. 14.h3 ♖d6 15.g4 ♗e4 16.♖xe4 ♖xe4+ 17.♔f3 ♖d6 18.♗d3± Schramm,A-Sikorsky,H ICCF email 2012, also looks good.

14...♗h7 15.h3!

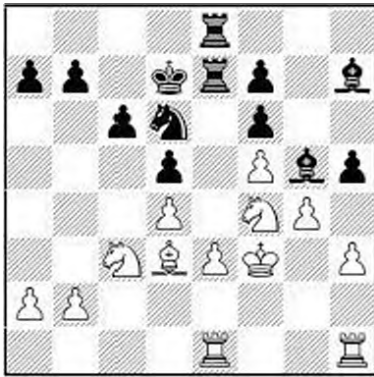
Preparing the burying of the unfortunate bishop...

15...♖d6 16.g4 ♔d7 17.♗d3 ♗h6 18.♖g2



Computers tent to underestimate this position, evaluating it as only slightly better for White. But in reality Black will play a piece-down for the entire game...

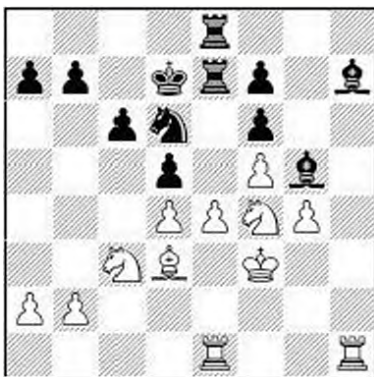
18...♞ae8 19.♔f3 ♞e7 20.♖f4 ♗g5 21.♞ae1 ♞he8



22.e4?

22.♘cxd5! cxd5 23.♘xd5 ♖e4 24.♙xe4 ♘xe4 25.♞e2 looks quite good for White. But of course what he really wants is to have an ending with two-three pieces for each side, where Black will lack counterplay — and certainly a piece; the unfortunate bishop! The problem is that the text allows a tactical strike. Well, when one has buried a bishop for good, he hardly thinks that he can rise from the dead! What I mean is that when we feel perfectly safe, we tend to overlook combinations.

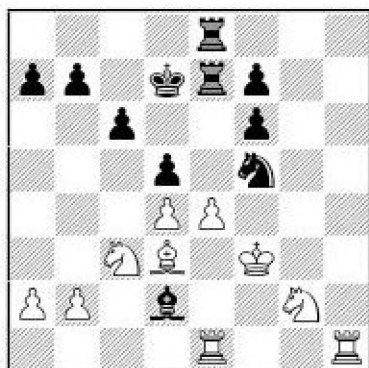
22...hxg4+ 23.hxg4



23...♙xf5!

Black plays his last card to get rid of the bishop. Maybe it is not enough but it was the best practical chance indeed.

24. gxf5 ♖xf5 25. ♗g2! ♙d2?

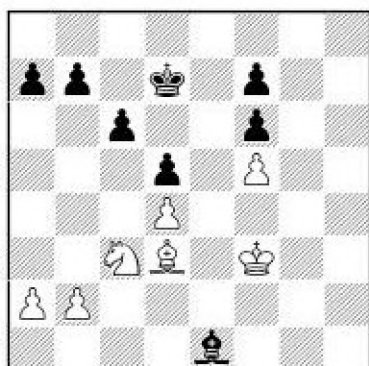


Missing a tactic in turn! Black should have opted for 25...♗xd4+ 26. ♖f2 dxe4 27. ♖xe4 ♗e6 28. ♖e2, where White stands better but nothing is clear anymore.

26. exf5! ♖xe1

What to do? I feel that Black missed that after 26...♙xe1 27. ♗xd5! follows: 27...cxd5 28. ♙b5+ ♔d6 29. ♙xe8+-

27. ♗xe1 ♖xe1 28. ♖xe1 ♙xe1



29. ♖e3

And White's extra piece decided the game.

29...a5 30. ♗a4 ♔d6 31. ♙e2 ♙g3 32. ♗c5 b6 33. ♗a4 b5 34. ♗c5 ♖e7 35. a4 b4 36. ♗b3 ♙c7 37. ♖f3 1-0

SURVEYS ON TACTICS

ATTACK VIA THE EDGE FILES

Opening files and diagonals around one's own king cannot be a healthy attitude. A naked king is the butter on the bread of the opponent and should be avoided at nearly any cost.

The usual file to be opened for a successful attack is the rook-file, at least as practice has proven. And this is natural; open files and diagonals should be difficult to defend, so they must be located far away...

Let's see a primitive example to fully understand the concept:

Example 1 ●



Black has sacrificed his queen for only one minor piece, but his threats down the h-file are tremendous...

1...♖ah8

Doubling on the open file is as natural as a baby's cry, but Black's position is so strong that even 1...♗e2+ is good as well:
2.♙xe2 ♖ah8 3.f4 g3 (3...♙xe3+ 4.♙xe3 ♗xe4! 5.♙xe4 g3! 6.♙e7+ ♗xe7 7.♙e1+ ♗d7 8.♙f1 ♖h1+ 9.♙e2 ♖e8+ 10.♙d2 ♖exe1-) 4.♙xh5 ♙xe3+ 5.♙f2 ♗xh5 6.♙f1 gxf2 7.♙e2 f1=♙+ 8.♙xf1 ♗g3+ 9.♙e1 ♖h1#

2.f4

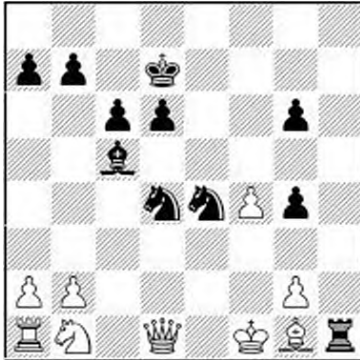
2.g3 ♖h1+ 3.♔g2 ♜8h2#

or 2.f3 g3, lead to mate.

2...♞h1+

2...g3 3.♞xh5 ♜xh5 wins as well for Black.

3.♔f2 ♜xe4+ 4.♔e1 ♞xf1+ 5.♔xf1 ♞h1+ 6.♙g1



And a nice mate follows:

6...♞xg1+! 7.♔xg1 ♜f3+ 8.♔f1 ♜g3# 0-1

As said, the above example is primitive, and more complex ideas must be presented. The following examples are more-or-less quick combinations, taking advantage of the weaknesses around the king:

□ Bok Benjamin

■ Rapport Richard

Riga 2014 ●



White's bishop pair should be decisive in an ending, so Black must act in the middlegame. He is helped somewhat by the weaknesses around the white king, especially on the light squares.

21...♘e5! 22.♙c5 ♘f3+ 23.♚g2 ♜e5!

23...♘g5 24.♚g1 ♞h3 would also be good, but Black 'dreamed' of something extra-ordinary...

24.♙xf8 ♞h3+! 25.♚xh3 ♜h5+ 26.♚g2 ♜xh2# 0-1

□ Suer Nevzat

■ Hort Vlastimil

Athens 1969 ○



27.♙xh6!

A nice combination, which allows White to regain his pawn.

27...g6xh6?

Blindness? Black had to play 27...♚g8 28.♞h3! (planning ♜h4) 28...f4 29.♞e4 ♞f5 30.♞g4∞.

28.♞xh6+

And Black resigned, as he noted the lethal 28...♞h7 29.♞xh7+ ♚xh7 30.♞h4#

1-0

When playing 3-minute blitz games on the Internet, nothing is based on deep calculation, but mainly on intuition.

But what is intuition? Of course it is the sub-conscious knowledge which has been hidden inside our brain, coming out when needed! Nothing more than this; it just requires a lot of work beforehand!

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Strikovic Aleksa

Internet Chess Club 2015 □



White's pieces are better and more 'attackingly' placed, but obviously some tactics are in need.

20.e5! dxe5

20...fxe5 loses to 21.♙xg6 hxg6 22.♚xg6+ ♖g7 23.♜g5.

21.♙xg6!

White's kingside is shattered...

21...hxg6 22.♚xg6+ ♖g7



23. ♖g5! ♜e7

23...fxg5 24. ♜f7.

24. ♜h7+

24...♔f8 25. ♜h8#

1-0

□ Palo Davor

■ Nielsen Peter Heine

Skanderborg 2003 ○



White seems to enjoy an advantage as the back rank threats force his opponent to exchange queens...or maybe not?

33...♜a3+!

This terrific rook thrust concludes the game in style.

34. ♔xa3

Or 34. bxa3 ♖xc3+ winning.

34... ♕a7+

And White resigned in view of inevitable checkmate: 35. ♔b3
♕a4#

0-1

Here we have a very similar finish as in M. Carlsen vs. S. Karjakin, the last (16th) game of their 2016 New York match:

□ Bernstein Ossip

■ Kotov Alexander

Groningen 1946 ○

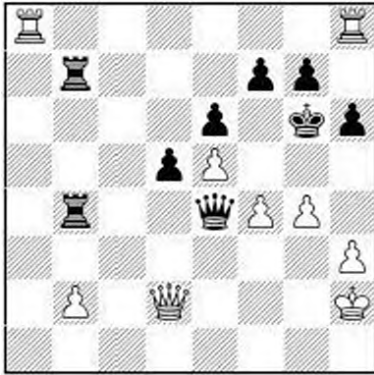


Black feels confident, as his king looks much safer and White's weaknesses are ready to be attacked...

46. ♖c8+ ♔h7 47. ♖a8 ♖exb4?

But that's a blunder! Black had to opt for 47... ♖c4! 48. ♖xc4 dxc4
49. ♖d8 h5 50. ♔g3 ♖b1∞.

48. ♖cc8 ♖e4 49. ♖h8+ ♔g6



50. f5+!

I think that Black missed this combination, which is crowned after 50...exf5 51. ♖xh6+! gxh6 52. ♖ag8#

1-0

□ Lederle Vitus
 ■ Mertens Heiko
 Bonn 2011 ○



A very interesting case, as it looks like both kings will face problems... Note that the assaults are taking place on both the files and the diagonals.

26. ♖xe5!

White can calmly allow the strike on g2.

26...♙xg2+

26...♙xg2 would have required White to choose the right discovered check, viz. 27.♖g4+! (instead, wrong would be 27.♖f7+? ♗g8 28.♖h6+ ♗f8 29.♙f1+ or 29.♙f1+ since now Black can go for the counterstrike: 29...♙f2+! 30.♗g1 ♗xh2+! 31.♗xf2 ♙g3#) which after 27...♗g8 leads to mate by force: 28.♙e6+! ♗f8 (28...♙f7 29.♖h6+ ♗f8 30.♙xf7#) 29.♙f6+ ♙f7 30.♙h8+ ♙g8 31.♗g7+ ♗f7 32.♖h6#

27.♗g1!

The immediate 27.♙xg2 ♙xg2 would give the black king the escape square g8, preventing any lethal discovered check by White.



27...♙g7

27...♗f3+ 28.♖g6# — check and counter mate!

28.♖g4

White should have sealed the g-file: 28.♖g6+! hxg6 29.♙xg2 with a clear advantage.

28...♗xh2+

This desperado move is crowned with unexpected success. 28...♗c6! would have made the situation exciting again.

29. ♖xh2?

White could simply play 29. ♕xg2+-

29... ♗f3+

Now this discovered check yields rich dividends.

30. ♕f1

Possibly White had overlooked that Black can answer 30. ♕xg7+ with 30... ♖xg7+ — always these counterchecks!



30... ♗xe2+ 31. ♖xe2 ♖f4+ 32. ♖f2 ♖c1+ 33. ♕e2 ♗e8+ 34. ♕f3 ♖e3#
0-1

□ Zhao Jun

■ Xiu Deshun

Xinghua Jiangsu 2011 ○



White has already saced a piece and now offers even more!

19. ♖f6!!

Down two pieces, White ensures the kingside remains cut off with this move. After the naive 19.hxg3?! f5, the attack is harder to conduct.

19... ♗g7

19... ♗xc4, trying to take some of the steam out of White's attack by exchanging pieces, doesn't quite do it: 20.hxg3 ♗xd3 21. ♖xd3 The problem is that White still has myriad threats, whether the simplistic ♖d2-xg5, to ♗af1 or even a d5 thrust if called for.

A sample line might go: 21... ♗g7 22. ♖e3 ♗h8 23. ♗af1 ♗ag8 24. ♖xg5+ ♗f8 25. ♗xf7+ ♖xf7 26. ♗xf7+ ♗xf7 27. ♖f6+ ♗e8 28. ♖xe6+ ♗d8 29.d5!+-

20. ♖g4!

Black isn't given a moment's respite.

20... ♗g8 21.hxg3 ♗b7

Desperately trying to bring support for f7.

22. ♗af1 ♗d8 23. ♖e4 ♖b7

Forced. If 23... ♗c8 then 24. ♗g6+!+-

24.d5 ♗h8



And now White is given the chance to perform a 'Windmill'!

25. ♖g6+!!

Just incredible.

25... fxg6

If 25... ♔f8 then 26.dxe6 and there is no defence against ♖xf7+.

26. ♖xg6+ ♔h7

The final windmill is an inescapable mating net.

27. ♖xg5+ ♔h6 28. ♖g6+ ♔h7 29. ♖g4+ ♔h6 30. ♖f6+ ♔h5 31. ♖h4+

31... ♔g5 32. ♖g6#

1-0

□ Guseinov Gadir

■ Sargissian Gabriel

Porto Carras 2011 ○



A clear 'king in the cage' situation.

33. ♖xe6+! ♜xe6 34. ♝c8+ ♔h7 35. ♜ff8

And as White is ready to deliver mate, Black has to devise a way out...

35... ♜d1+ 36. ♔g2!

36. ♔h2? ♜d6+ 37. ♔g2 ♜xf8 38. ♝xf8 ♜c6=

36... ♜d5+ 37. f3 ♜d8

The only way to stop the mate.

38. ♝cxd8 ♜xd8 39. ♝xd8 ♜xe3 40. ♔f2

and White has emerged two pawns up in the endgame.

40... ♜e5 41. h4 ♜a5 42. a3 ♜a4 43. ♔g3 ♜c4 44. ♜a8 ♜c7 45. b4 1-0

□ Wang Yue

■ Grischuk Alexander

Istanbul 2012 ●



White seems to be in the driver's seat, as he is planning b4 with an initiative.

19...g5!

A pawn sacrifice, aiming to open the h-file for Black's heavy pieces.

20.hxg5?

White simple snatches the pawn, but keeping the kingside closed was better, although it was very unclear: 20.h5 ♔d7 21.b4 axb4 22.axb4 f4. That expansion on the kingside looks threatening and after the text move the h-file is just too dangerous, which is something White might have underestimated.

20...hxg5 21.♙xg5 ♔d7! 22.♙e3

22.b4 f4+ is already decisive, with the idea of ...♙h3. White must be careful.

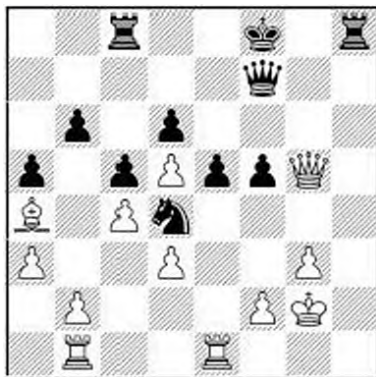
22...♙f7

It's honestly hard to find a move here for White. Maybe f4 is necessary but it looks ugly. The move played in the game is natural, but too slow.

23.♔g2 ♕f6! 24.♖a4?!

The idea is to play ♖h1 and battle for the h-file. However, this is too slow and A.Grischuk exploits this beautifully. 24.♖h6+ ♔e7 leaves the bishop on h6 in a terribly awkward situation. 24.♖xf6 ♗xf6 and White can't stop the multitude of deadly threats.

24...♖xg5 25.♗xg5



25...♖h2+!

The rook is taboo, which lets A.Grischuk infiltrate with decisive effect!

26.♔f1 ♖h1+ 27.♔g2 ♖h2+

Repeating moves like a pro.

28.♔f1 ♗h7!

Nothing close to a perpetual, and the threats are obviously decisive.

0-1

Wang Yue's sense of danger seemed to have disappeared in the previous game. But in the next game he takes his revenge, using the same motif — attack via the h-file!

□ Movsesian Sergei

■ Wang Yue

Istanbul 2012 ●



21...♔c7!

A quiet move before the storm. Black threatens ...♘xe5 and a subsequent discovery. 21...♘xe5? 22.♚f2 spoils the position.

22.♘g6

22.♚f2 ♜af8 and since the knight on d7 is covering f6, Black is winning.

22...♘xe5 23.♘xe4



23...♘d3!

Beautiful! The assault continues! The knight must be taken because of the interposition between the queen and the bishop,

which means e4 is hanging.

24. ♖xd3 ♜xh2+ 25. ♔f2 ♞af8+ 26. ♔e2 ♞xf1 27. ♔xf1 ♜g3!

And yet another quiet move to seal the deal. The threat is obviously ...♞h1, and it cannot be stopped.

28. ♔e2 ♞h1 29. ♙d2 ♞xa1 30. ♙xd5 cxd5 31. ♜h7+ ♔d8 32. ♔d3 ♜g4

The mate threats continue, and since White is down an exchange he can't afford to go around trading queens. This is hopeless.

33. ♜h8+ ♔d7 34. b3 ♜f5+ 0-1

Next comes an example which I consider a great lesson in strategical tactics or tactical strategy!

What do I mean? Well, there are certain times that calculation is useless, simply because moves appear as naturally as a baby's cry!

Of course, at the end of the day — or in the start/end of the combination — concrete calculation is a must but, this comes easily after we have understood what we have to do!

□ Ivanchuk Vassily

■ Wang Hao

Istanbul 2012 ○



Black is too weak on the dark squares and he has no dark-squared bishop with which to defend...

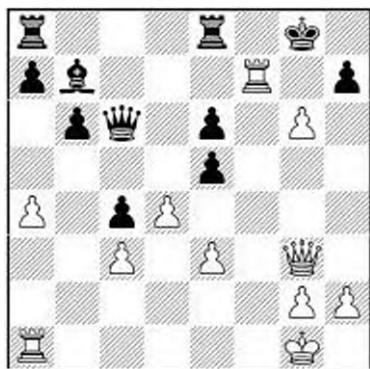
20.♙xc4! dxc4 21.f5! f6

21...exf5 22.♖xf5 ♔d5 23.♗af1 ♜f8 24.♚g5! gives White a winning attack for free. It's possible that Wang Hao simply missed 22.fxg6. We see in this variation why it was so important to keep the queen on e7 and not c7 — the pressure on the f-file is too great.

22.fxg6!

It's all over now.

22...fxe5 23.♖f7 ♚c6



24.gxh7+!

24.♖af1? ♚xg2+ 25.♚xg2 ♙xg2 26.gxh7+ ♔h8 27.♙xg2 exd4 28.exd4 e5+= is a very survivable endgame. Maybe the Chinese player was hoping for this, which is not easy to hold, but possible.

24...♙xf7 25.♖f1+ ♔e7 26.h8=♚!

This quiet move is, in essence, the point of the entire combination. The quiet move distracts the rook to h8, where it is vulnerable and not carrying out its defensive duties.

26...♖xh8 27.♚g7+ ♔d6

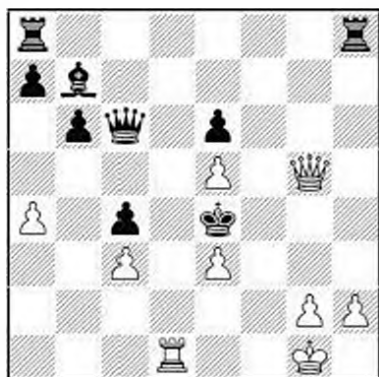
To the mere human, it is still unclear why the sacrifice works. To V.Ivanchuk, this is child's play. If 27...♙d8, then 28.♚xh8+ ♚e8

(28...♔c7 29.♖f7+-) 29.♗f8+-



28.dxe5+!

28.♗xe5+? ♔e7 leads to no more than a draw. After the text Black resigned. If 28...♔d5 (28...♔c5 29.♗e7+ ♔d5 30.♖d1+ ♔e4 31.♗g5 with unstoppable mate) then 29.♖d1+ ♔e4 30.♗g5!



This quiet move is the finishing touch of the combination. White threatens both ♗f4 and ♖d4 mate, and Black cannot stop both of them at the same time. The king covers the a8-g2 diagonal so there is no desperado sacrifice or any check of any kind.

1-0

□ Carlsen Magnus

■ Wang Hao

Wijk aan Zee 2011 ○



24. ♖xf7+!

Computer engines could not come up with the bishop sacrifice quickly, but once it was played they were united in high praise for M. Carlsen's tactical skills.

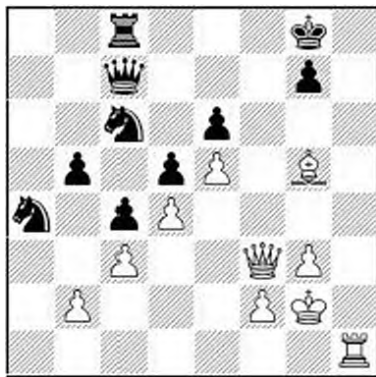
24... ♔xf7

24... ♖xf7 25. ♖xh8+.

25. ♖f3+ ♔g8

After 25... ♔g6 white wins with the spectacular 26. ♖f6!! ♖xh1 (26... ♖cg8 27. ♖xh8 ♖xh8 28. ♖g4+ ♔h7 [28... ♔f7 29. ♖xg7+ wins] 29. ♖h5+ ♔g8 30. ♖e8+ ♔h7 31. ♖h1#; 26... gxf6 27. ♖xf6#) 27. ♖xh1 ♔f7 28. ♖h5+ g6 29. ♖h7+ ♔e8 30. ♖g8+ ♔d7 31. ♖h7+.

26. ♖xh8+ ♔xh8 27. ♖h1+ ♔g8



28. ♖h5

All three white pieces aim at the black king and black has no defence against the beautiful finale.

28... ♜f8

28... ♜xb2 29. ♙f6! ♜e7 (29... ♚a7 30. ♖h8+ ♜f7 31. ♖xg7+ ♜e8 32. ♜h8#) 30. ♖h8+ ♜f7 31. ♖xg7+ ♜e8 32. ♜h7 wins. 28... ♜e7 29. ♙xe7 ♜xe7 30. ♖h8+ ♜f7 31. ♖xc8 wins. 28... ♜d8 29. ♖e8# or 28... ♖f7 29. ♖h8#

29. ♙f6!

Closing the show with a splendid bishop move: 29... gxf6 (after 29... ♚a7 White reshuffles the pieces: 30. ♖g6 ♜b6 31. ♜h7 ♜f7 32. ♖h5 and wins) 30. exf6! ♜xf6 31. ♖h8+ ♜f7 32. ♜h7+ ♜g6 33. ♖g8+ ♜f5 34. ♜h5+ ♜e4 35. ♖g4+ ♜d3 36. ♖d1+ ♜e4 37. ♖b1#

1-0

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Farinata

Internet Chess Club 2017 ○

As said, Internet blitz is interesting for tactical training. The black player hasn't identified himself, so we will use his nickname.



20. ♖xc6! ♜xc4?

The only way for Black to stay in the game was with 20...bxc6
21. ♗e5±

21. ♝xg7!

A nice and effective combination.

21... ♜h4

21... ♖xg7 22. ♝g1+ ♗h7 23. ♜xf6+-

22. ♝g4! ♜h6 23. ♖e4 ♝g8 24. ♜f4! ♖g7 25. ♝xf6!

The 'easy' way! Black resigned due to 25... ♜xf6 26. ♝g1+.

1-0

□ Kamsky Gata

■ Seirawan Yasser

Saint Louis 2012 ○



16. ♖b1

After 16.g4 ♜xg4 17.♞hg1 the novelty 17...♜xf2 was introduced in Hovhannisyan,R-Akopian,V Plovdiv 2012 — see the game.

It has been confirmed in many games that after 16.♜e5?! c5! Black is doing well.

16...c5

The second most-popular and probably safer move is 16...♞d5 as, in particular, in Smeets,J-Kamsky,G Wijk aan Zee 2009.

17.g4 ♜xg4

17...♜h7!? 18.♞hg1 cxd4 19.♜xd4 ♞b6 20.♙c3 ♞fd8 21.f4 ♞d5=+ Zhang,X-Guo,Q Xinghua 2014.

18.♞e2

After 18.♞hg1 (which has occurred more often) it is possibly not bad for Black to go for 18...♜xf2 19.♞e2 ♜xd1 20.♙xh6 ♖h7 21.♙xg7 ♞g8 which has been seen in a number of games.



18...♔h8?!

It is not easy to determine what Black's best is, but the text is obviously not it! Paikidze,N-Giryra,O Chennai 2011 followed 18...♛b6 19.♖hg1 f5 20.♘e5 cxd4 21.♘d7 (less ambitious is 21.♘xg4!? fxg4 22.♙xh6 gxh6 23.♛xg4+ ♙g5 24.f4 d3 25.cxd3 ♜f5 26.♛g3 ♔h7 27.fxg5 ½-½ Sutovsky,E-Solak,D Biel 2015) 21...♛a6, and here important is the complex endgame which arises after 22.♛xa6 bxa6 23.♘xf8. After 18...♛d5?! unpleasant for Black is



19.♖hg1! which is even stronger than the interesting 19.♘e5!? as in Ginsburg,G-Fridman,D Zürich 2003. The stem game for 18.♛e2, Fercec,N-Petrov,J Pula 1999, was nearly the most important so far: 18...cxd4!? 19.♖hg1 d3 (19...f5 20.♛xe6+ ♜f7 21.♘e5 ♘xe5 22.♛xe5 ♛d6 23.♛xd6 ♙xd6 24.♙xh6 Puranik,A-Abelgas,R Olongapo City 2015) 20.cxd3 f5 21.♛xe6+ ♔h8 22.♙c3 (probably preferable is 22.d4!) 22...♙f6 23.♘h4 ♙xh4 24.♖xg4 ♙f6 25.♖xg7 (25.♖g6!? is hardly a radical improvement) 25...♔xg7 26.♖g1+ ♔h8 27.♖g8+ ♔h7! 28.♛xf5+, with a draw.

19. ♖hg1 ♜f6

Certainly insufficient for equality is 19...f5.

20. dxc5! ♚c7



21. ♜e5!

A novelty and a killing one! Black is not afraid of 21. ♖g2 ♚xc5 22. ♜dg1 ♜g8 as in Dziel-Heilmann, ICCF 2003.

21... ♜xc5?

Black misses some nice blows. Clearly favouring White also is 21... ♚xc5?! 22. ♜c3! The critical line is possibly 21... ♜ad8 22. b4 and if 22... a5 23. a3 axb4 24. axb4, assessed by engines as better for White, which is not totally obvious.

22. ♜xh6! gxh6



23. ♖d7!! ♜xd7

The point of White's combination was 23... ♜xd7 24. ♜d2!! ♔h7 25. ♜g4!! and wins.

24. ♜xd7 ♜xd7 25. ♜d2



Now White wins much more prosaically.

25... ♔h7 26. b4!? ♜ad8 27. bxc5 ♜f6 28. ♜f4 ♜e8 29. ♜e4+ ♔h8
30. ♜xb7 ♜g7 31. ♜xa7 ♜c8 32. ♖d1 ♜f5 33. ♖d7 ♔g7 34. a4 ♔f6
35. a5 1-0

□ Hovhannisyan Robert

■ Akopian Vladimir

Plovdiv 2012

1. e4 c6 2. d4 d5 3. ♜c3 dxe4 4. ♜xe4 ♙f5 5. ♜g3 ♙g6 6. h4 h6 7. ♜f3
♜d7 8. h5 ♙h7 9. ♙d3 ♙xd3 10. ♜xd3 e6 11. ♙d2 ♜gf6 12. 0-0-0 ♙e7
13. ♜e4 ♜xe4 14. ♜xe4 ♜f6 15. ♜d3 0-0 16. g4 ♜xg4 17. ♜hg1 ♜xf2
18. ♜e2

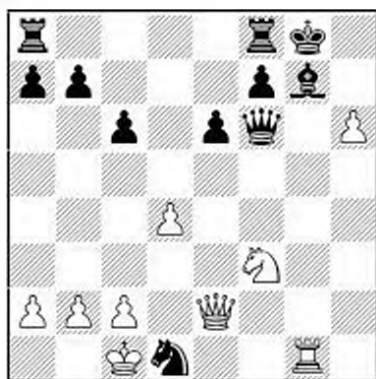
The move 18. ♜e3 leads, as it seems, to a forced draw: 18... ♜xd1
19. ♜xh6 ♙f6 20. ♙f4! ♙xd4! 21. ♙e5 ♙e3+ 22. ♜xe3 ♜xe3 23. ♜xg7+
♔h8 24. ♜xf7+ ♔g8 25. ♜g7+= with a perpetual.

18... ♜xd1 19. ♙xh6 ♙f6

After 19... ♔h7 20. ♙xg7 one possible idea is 20... ♜g8 21. ♜e4+ f5

22. ♖xe6 ♜xg7 23. ♜g6! ♜xg6 (23... ♔h8 24. ♜h6+ ♜h7 25. ♜xh7+ ♔xh7 26. ♖g6+ leads to the same) 24. ♖xg6+ ♔h8 25. ♜e5 ♜g5+ 26. ♔b1 ♖f6 27. ♜f7+ ♖xf7 28. ♖xf7.

20. ♜xg7 ♜xg7 21. h6 ♖f6



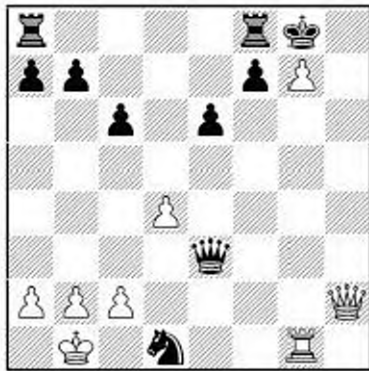
22. ♖h2

Obviously not dangerous for Black is 22. ♜xg7+ ♔h8 23. ♜g5 where the simple 23... ♖xh6 leads to a draw after 24. ♜h7+ ♖xh7 25. ♜xh7 ♔xh7 26. ♖h5+. But 22. hxg7 ♖h6+! deserves checking. After all, Black is playing with a semi-open king. One line which comes into consideration is 23. ♔b1 ♜fd8 24. ♖xd1 (24. ♜xd1 ♜d5 25. ♜e5 ♜ad8 26. a3 ♜xd4 27. ♜g1 f5 28. ♜g6 ♜d1+ 29. ♜xd1 ♜xd1+ 30. ♖xd1 ♖xg6 31. ♖d8+ ♔xg7 32. ♖e7+ ♖f7 33. ♖g5+ ♔h7 34. ♖h4+ ♔g6 35. ♖g3+ ♔f6 36. ♖h4+ ♔e5 37. ♖h8+ ♖f6 38. ♖b8+ ♔e4 39. ♖xb7 f4 40. ♖xc6+ ♔e3 41. ♖h1 f3 42. ♖e1+ ♔f4 43. c4 ♖d4 44. ♖h4+ ♔e5 45. ♖g5+ ♔e4 0-1 Horvath,A-Michalik,P Meissen 2013) 24... ♜d5! 25. ♜e5 (25. ♜h1 is parried by 25... ♜h5!) 25... ♜ad8 26. ♖f3 (26. ♜h1? ♜xd4!; 26. ♖f1 f5 27. ♜h1? ♜xd4!) 26... f5! 27. c3 and here the simplest is 27... ♜xe5! 28. dxe5 ♜d7 — Black is even better.

22... ♖xf3!

Black's moves are forced at this stage.

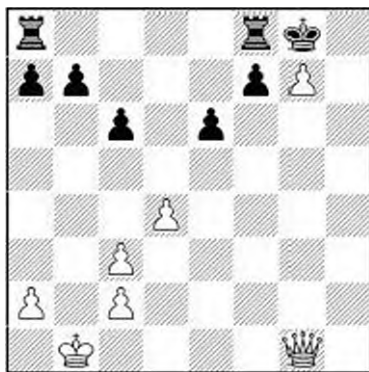
23. hxg7 ♖e3+! 24. ♔b1!



24...♖c3+!

24...♚xg1? 25.♗h8#

25.bxc3 ♚xg1+ 26.♗xg1



Black holds this endgame easily.

26...♗fd8 27.♗g5 ♔h7

Up to now, the whole line was given by Alex Baburin in CT-3056.

28.♗f6 ♗d7 29.♔b2

29.♔c1 ♗ad8 30.a3 ♗g8 31.♗h4+ ♔g6 32.♗g4+ ♔f6 33.♗h4+ ♔xg7
34.♗g3+ ♔f8 35.♗b8+ ♔g7 36.♗g3+ ½-½ Baratosi, D-Manole, S Baile
Olanesti 2013.

29...♗g8 30.♗h4+ ♔xg7 31.♗g3+ ♔f8

Or 31...♔h7=; 31...♔h8=

32.♚b8+ ♔g7 33.♚g3+

After 33.♚xa7? it's risky for White.

33...♔f8 34.♚b8+ ♔g7 35.♚g3+ 1/2-1/2

In opposite-sides castling situations there is not even one tempo to be missed.

□ Ni Hua

■ Le Quang Liem

Ho Chi Minh City 2012 ●



Opposite castles give the opportunity to both sides to try their knowledge...

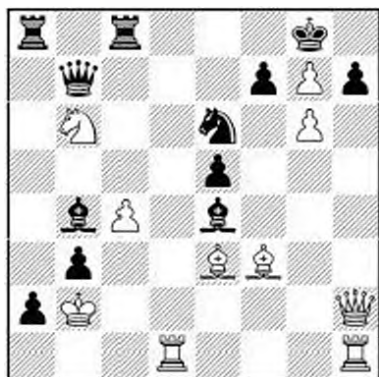
28...axb3?

Natural but wrong. Black could prevail with 28...♗xg5! 29.♙xg5 ♚xb6 30.♙xe4 ♙c3+! 31.♔xc3 (31.♔c2 axb3+ 32.♔xc3 [32.♔d3 ♚d4+ 33.♔e2 ♚xe4+] 32...a1=♚+) 31...a1=♚+! (31...♚xb3+? 32.♔d2+-) 32.♔d2 (32.♚xa1 ♚d4+ 33.♔c2 [33.♔b4 ♚xc4+!] 33...axb3+ 34.♔xb3 ♚xc4+ 35.♔b2 ♚b4#) 32...♚bd4+ 33.♙d3 (33.♔e2 ♚xe4+) 33...♚ab2+ 34.♔e1 ♚xh2 35.♚xh2 ♚g1+-+

29.g6!?

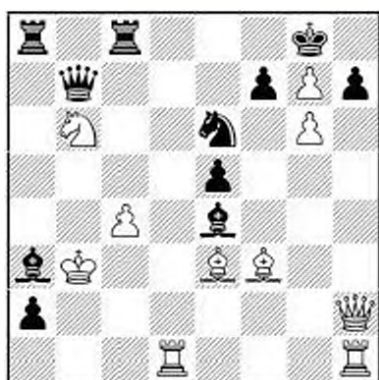
Objectively best for White was 29.♚xh7+ ♔xh7 30.♙xb7 a1=♚+

31. ♖xa1 ♖xa1 32. ♖xa1 ♖b8+, but he decided to gamble...



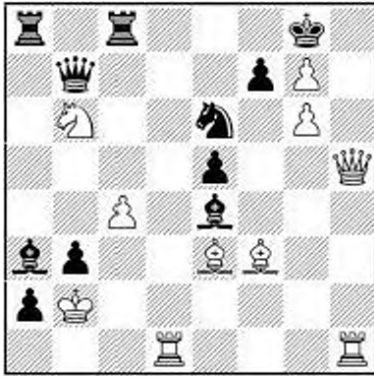
29...h5?

And Black assisted with pleasure! Good was 29... ♖a3+! 30. ♖xb3 (30. ♖a1 b2+ 31. ♖xa2 ♖c5+ 32. ♖xb2 ♖xb6+ 33. ♖c3 ♖b4# ; 30. ♖c3 a1=♖+ 31. ♖d2 [31. ♖xa1 ♖xc4+ 32. ♖xb3 ♖d4+ 33. ♖xd4 ♖c2+ 34. ♖xc2 ♖b4+ 35. ♖c3 ♖xf3+ 36. ♖d3 exd4+ 37. ♖c2 ♖b2+] 31... ♖b4+ 32. ♖e2 ♖xf3+ 33. ♖f2 ♖a2+)



30...a1=♖+! 31. ♖xa1 (31. ♖c3 ♖xc4+! 32. ♖d2 [32. ♖xc4 ♖c6+ 33. ♖c5 ♖xc5# ; 32. ♖xc4 ♖b4#]) 31... ♖xb6+! 32. ♖xb6 ♖d4+ 33. ♖c3 (33. ♖xd4 ♖cb8+ 34. ♖b6 ♖xb6+ 35. ♖c3 ♖b4+ 36. ♖b3 ♖e1#) 33... ♖xc4+! 34. ♖d2 (34. ♖xc4 ♖c8+ 35. ♖c7 ♖xc7#) 34... ♖xf3+ 35. ♖e2 ♖xh2+)

30. ♖xh5 ♖a3+



31. ♖xb3

and Black resigned: 31...a1=♗+ 32.♞xa1 ♕xb6+ 33.♙xb6 ♜d4+ 34.♜c3 ♞xc4+ 35.♜d2 ♞c2+ 36.♜e3 ♜f5+ 37.♜xe4 ♜g3+ 38.♜d3 ♜xh5 39.♙xa8+-

1-0

□ Aronian Levon

■ Ivanchuk Vassily

Istanbul 2012 ○



25. b4!

Surprisingly, the killing blow comes from the queenside. White takes advantage of the opened files to deliver irrefutable threats.

25...axb4 26.axb4 ♙xb4 27.♞a7 ♜e6 28.♜e7

That's one exchange, and the attack continues strongly.

28...♖g7

28...♖g7 29.♘xd5 loses a piece.

29.♘xg8 ♔xg8 30.♖xd5

Up the exchange, the rest is a piece of cake. However the finish is quite pleasant.

30...♙c5 31.e3 b5 32.♖a8 ♖xa8 33.♖xa8+ ♖f8 34.♖e4 ♖h6 35.♖a1 b4 36.♖a5 ♙f8 37.♖g4+ ♖g7 38.♖h4 h6 39.♖a8 ♘c7



Basically any move here wins. Simply ♖c8 creates too many threats. But L.Aronian forces immediate resignation:

40.♖xf8+! ♖xf8 41.♖g4+ ♔h8 42.♖f5 1-0

And Black must drop the knight to prevent checkmate.

CONCLUSION

Violent attacks via open files and diagonals are spread all around and are quite common in all of chess history.

One should be aware of their mechanisms and use prophylaxis to avoid them, or take advantage of them if in the driver's seat.

BODEN'S MATE

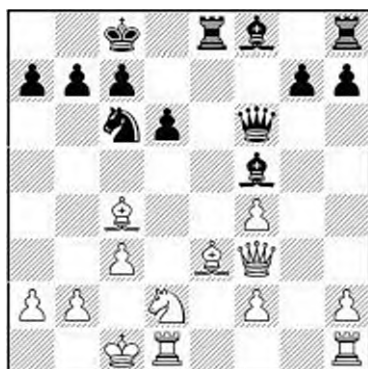
Boden's Mate is a mating pattern characterised by bishops on two criss-crossing diagonals (for example, bishops on a6 and f4 delivering mate to a king on c8), with possible flight squares for the king being occupied by friendly pieces.

Most often the mated king has castled queenside, and is mated on c8 or c1. Many variants on the mate are seen, for example a king on e8 mated by bishops on g6 and a3, and a king on f1 mated by bishops on h3 and b6.

Often the mate is immediately preceded by a sacrifice that opens up the diagonal on which the bishop delivers mate. The mate is named for Samuel Boden, who played a famous early game.

- **Schulder R.**
- **Boden Samuel**
London 1853

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d6 3.c3 f5 4.♙c4 ♘f6 5.d4 fxe4 6.dxe5 exf3 7.exf6 ♗xf6 8.gxf3 ♘c6 9.f4 ♙d7 10.♙e3 0-0-0 11.♘d2 ♚e8 12.♗f3 ♙f5 13.0-0-0



Nothing indicates the storm coming...

13...d5! 14.♙xd5 ♗xc3+ 15.bxc3 ♙a3# 0-1

However, it had been known previously from the game Horwitz-Popert, Hamburg 1844.

□ Horwitz Bernhard

■ Popert William

Hamburg 1844 ●



Black set a trap with his next move:

1...♖b8! 2.♖xd5?

Which White fell into!

2...c6?

Black blundered with the text move, instead of playing the winning **2...♔xh2+ 3.♔xh2 ♖xh2+ 4.♔xh2 c6+-+** After that White could not save his rook because of the threatened mate in two. Instead, he surprised Black with

3.♖h5! ♔xh5 4.♔xc6+! bxc6 5.♔xa6#

1-0

Boden's Mate occurred in many later games, usually, as in the Boden and Horwitz games, after the losing king has castled on the queenside, and the winner sets up the mate by a queen sacrifice on c3 or c6.

Perhaps the most famous example of Boden's Mate is the so-called 'Peruvian Immortal Game':

□ Canal Esteban

■ NN

Budapest 1934

1.e4 d5 2.exd5 ♖xd5 3.♗c3 ♜a5 4.d4 c6 5.♘f3 ♙g4 6.♚f4 e6 7.h3
♙xf3 8.♜xf3 ♙b4 9.♚e2 ♘d7 10.a3 0-0-0



11.axb4! ♜xa1+ 12.♙d2 ♜xh1 13.♜xc6+! bxc6 14.♚a6# 1-0

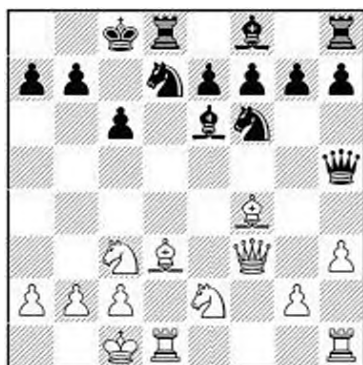
And here come some more examples to fully understand the mechanisms of the mate:

□ Diemer Emil Joseph

■ Portz

Lindau 1948

1.d4 d5 2.e4 dxe4 3.♗c3 ♘f6 4.f3 exf3 5.♜xf3 ♜xd4 6.♚e3 ♜e5
7.0-0-0 c6 8.h3 ♚e6 9.♚d3 ♘bd7 10.♘ge2 0-0-0 11.♚f4 ♜h5



12.♜xc6+! bxc6 13.♚a6# 1-0

□ Lasker Edward

■ Englund Fritz

Scheveningen 1913

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗c3 ♗f6 4.♙b5 ♗d4 5.♗xe5 ♚e7 6.♗f3 ♗xe4
7.0-0 ♗xc3 8.dxc3 ♗xf3+ 9.♚xf3 ♚c5 10.♞e1+ ♙e7 11.♙d3 d5
12.♙e3 ♚d6 13.♙f4 ♚f6 14.♚xd5 c6 15.♚e4 ♙e6 16.♞e3 ♙c5
17.♙e5 ♚h6 18.♞g3 ♙f8 19.♞d1 0-0-0



20.♚xc6+! bxc6 21.♙a6# 1-0

□ Morphy Paul

■ Thompson James

New York 1859

1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗c6 3.♙c4 ♙c5 4.b4 ♙xb4 5.c3 ♙a5 6.0-0 ♙b6 7.d4
d6 8.dxe5 ♗xe5 9.♗xe5 dxe5 10.♙xf7+ ♔e7 11.♚b3 ♗f6 12.♙a3+
c5 13.♞d1 ♚c7 14.f4 ♞f8 15.♙c4 ♞d8 16.♞de1 ♙d7 17.♙c1 ♞f8
18.fxe5 ♚xe5 19.♙f4 ♚h5 20.♞d1 ♔d8 21.e5 ♗e8 22.♚a4 ♚g4
23.e6 ♗f6 24.♞xd7+ ♔c8



25. ♖c6+! bxc6 26. ♙a6# 1-0

□ Reshevsky Samuel Herman

■ Duncan Edward

St. Louis 1921

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 d5 3.exd5 e4 4.♗e2 ♘f6 5.♘c3 ♙c5 6.♘xe4 0-0
 7.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 8.c3 ♙d7 9.d4 ♙d6 10.♙e3 ♙f5 11.♘d2 ♘d7 12.g3
 ♞fe8 13.♙g2 ♗g6 14.0-0-0 c5 15.dxc6 bxc6 16.♙xc6 ♞ac8



17. ♙xd7?

17.d5 was White's only chance.

17... ♞xc3+!

White resigned due to 18.bxc3 ♙a3#

0-1

□ Stroud A.F.
 ■ Fraser Alistair
 CCCA Corr 1961

1.d4 d5 2.c4 ♘f5 3.♗c3 ♗f6 4.♗f3 e6 5.e3 ♘b4 6.♙d2 0-0 7.♗e5
 ♗bd7 8.f3 ♗xe5 9.dxe5 ♗d7 10.f4 ♗c5 11.♚f3 d4 12.exd4 ♚xd4
 13.0-0-0 ♚fd8 14.♙e3



14...♚xc3+! 15.bxc3 ♙a3#

0-1

More rarely, Boden's Mate can occur, for example:

1. Where a white bishop on g6 delivers mate to a black king on e8, which is hemmed in by a white bishop on a3, and his own queen on d8 and knight on d7.

2. Where a bishop on h6 delivers mate to a black king on f8, which is hemmed in by a white bishop on c4, and its own queen on e8 and bishop on e7.

Examples of both cases follow:

□ Alekhine Alexander
 ■ Vasic
 Banja Luka 1931

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♗c3 ♘b4 4.♙d3 ♘xc3+ 5.bxc3 h6 6.♙a3 ♗d7
 7.♚e2 dxe4 8.♙xe4 ♗gf6 9.♙d3 h6



10. ♖xe6+! fxe6 11. ♗g6# 1-0

□ Elyashov

■ NN

Paris 1948

1.f4 e5 2.fxe5 d6 3.exd6 ♗xd6 4.♘f3 g5 5.d4 g4 6.♘g5 f5 7.e4 ♗e7
8.♘h3 gxh3 9.♖h5+ ♔f8 10.♗c4 ♖e8



11. ♖h6+! ♘xh6 12. ♗xh6# 1-0

□ Zukertort Johannes Hermann

■ Anderssen Adolf

Breslau 1865

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5 ♘ge7 4.c3 d6 5.d4 ♗d7 6.0-0 ♘g6 7.♘g5
h6 8.♘xf7 ♔xf7 9.♗c4+ ♔e7 10.♖h5 ♖e8



11. ♖g5+! hxg5 12. ♗xg5# 1-0

□ Pandolfini Bruce

■ NN

United States 1970

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♞c6 3.♞b5 a6 4.♞a4 ♟f6 5.0-0 ♟xe4 6.d4 exd4
 7.♞e1 d5 8.♟xd4 ♞d6 9.♟xc6 ♞xh2+ 10.♞h1 ♞h4 11.♞xe4+ dxe4
 12.♞d8+ ♞xd8 13.♟xd8+ ♞xd8 14.♞xh2



So far this is a position known to opening theory as the 'Riga Variation' of the 'Ruy Lopez'. White is considered to have the advantage after 14...♞e6 15.♞e3.

14...f5?

But Black was kind enough to be helpful!

15.♞g5# 1-0

□ **Balk Oscar**

■ **Barnes Richard James**

New Zealand 1926

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙c4 ♘f6 4.♘g5 d5 5.exd5 ♘a5 6.♙b5+ c6
7.dxc6 bxc6 8.♙a4 h6 9.♘f3 e4 10.♘g1 ♙d6 11.d3 0-0 12.dxe4
♘xe4 13.♙e3 ♙a6 14.♘f3 ♚c7 15.♘bd2 ♜fe8 16.c3



16...♘xc3! 17.bxc3 ♜xe3+! 18.fxe3 ♙g3+ 19.hxg3 ♚xg3# 0-1

CONCLUSION

The Boden's Mate is characterised by specific and easy-to-learn patterns and mechanisms.

Nowadays it occurs less-often, as it has become known even to beginners!

Nevertheless, good understanding can help you to avoid or to execute this pretty combination!

CASTLED DEATH

A quite famous micro-combination is the one which involves castling as the final and decisive move.

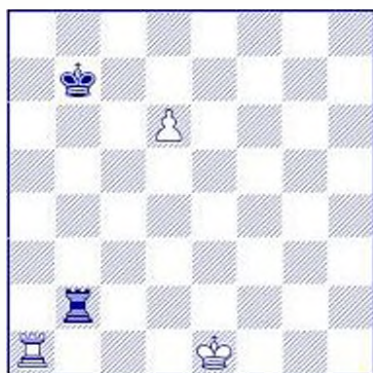
Of this double attack, working much like a discovered check, many examples exist. But of course this cannot be implemented without the clear help (blunder) of the opponent.

Please note that the main guide for this survey was Tim Krabbe's excellent book 'Chess Curiosities' (Allen & Unwin 1985). But let's examine the combination in question, starting with an illuminating study:

Study 1

Selezniev-Alexey-Sergeevich

Tidskrift for Schach 1921 ○



Black seems to handle the white pawn...

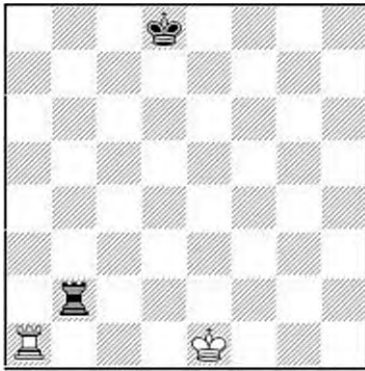
1.d7!

But this is not the case! Wrong would be 1.0-0-0? ♖a2! 2.d7 ♖a1+
3.♔c2 ♖xd1 4.♔xd1 ♔c7=

1...♔c7 2.d8=♚+!

Precise, as again wrong would be 2.0-0-0? ♖b8=

2...♔xd8



3.0-0-0+

And with this 'unexpected' move, White wins the black rook!

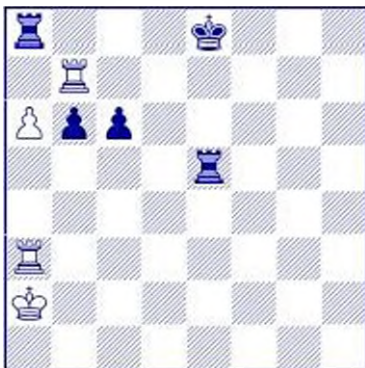
1-0

So, after the primary — and most important for the explanation of the combination — example, we will move on to rather more complex stuff:

Study 2

Katsnelson-Leonard

Moscow 1980 ○



A passed pawn is always a threat...

1.a7!

1. ♖h7? looks like it's killing, but Black can continue with 1...0-0-0!
 2. a7 ♜e2+ 3. ♔b3 ♞d3+-+

1...♖e2+

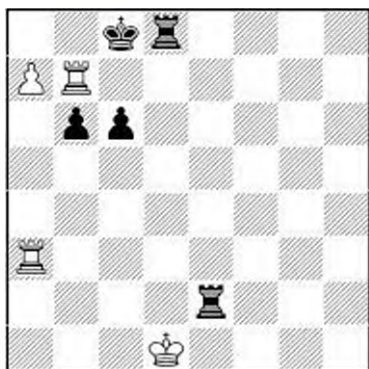
There is not much to be done. If 1...♞d8, then 2.♞xb6! (2.a8=♞? ♞e2+=) 2...♞e2+ 3.♔b3 ♞e3+ 4.♔a4 ♞e4+ 5.♔a5+-

And if 1...♔f8, then 2.♞f3+ ♔g8 3.♞ff7 ♞ee8 4.♞fe7 ♞ed8 5.♞xb6+-

2.♔b1 ♞e1+ 3.♔c2 ♞e2+ 4.♔d1!

And not the naive 4.♔d3? — we will see later the reason.

4...0-0-0+



The 'unexpected' long castle and it seems that Black is doing more than fine now...

5.♞d7!

But again, this is not the case!

5...♔xd7

5...♞xd7+ fails to 6.♔xe2+-

6.♞d3+!

Now it becomes clear why White played 4.♔d1!

6...♔c7 7.♞xd8

And White queens the pawn.

1-0

Now, enough with the studies; let's examine some over-the-board real examples.

Well, remember that the losing side has to assist by blundering badly!

□ Dunbar

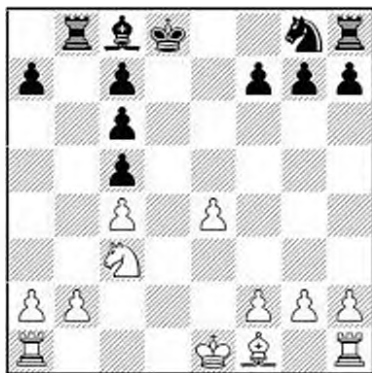
■ Sjavkin

Poland 1925

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.d4 exd4 4.♘xd4 ♙c5 5.♙e3 d6?

A typical beginner's mistake...

6.♘xc6 bxc6 7.♙xc5 dxc5 8.♚xd8+ ♔xd8 9.c4 ♖b8 10.♘c3



White has a won position due to his much superior pawn structure, but Black didn't need to blunder...

10...♖xb2? 11.0-0-0+ 1-0

□ Matisons Hermanis

■ Millers R.

Karalauči 1926

1.e4 c5 2.g3 ♘c6 3.♙g2 ♘f6 4.♘c3 e6 5.f4 d5 6.e5 d4 7.exf6 dxc3 8.fxg7 cxd2+ 9.♚xd2 ♙xg7 10.♙xc6+ bxc6 11.♚xd8+ ♔xd8 12.c3

12.♘f3 ♔c7 13.0-0, as in Haselhorst,H-Lamby,P Emsdetten 2015, is another story.

12...♝b8 13.♙e3!



White is now ready for 0-0-0, protecting his b2-pawn...but Black was too generous!

13...♝xb2? 14.0-0-0+! 1-0

□ Feuer Otto

■ O'Kelly de Galway Alberic

Liege 1934

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 a6 4.♙a4 d6 5.♙xc6+ bxc6 6.d4 f6 7.♘c3 ♝b8 8.♞d3 ♘e7 9.h4 h5 10.♙e3



White stands somewhat better due to his superior space control and he prepares something like 0-0-0.

10...♙xb2?!

10...exd4 11.♘xd4 c5 12.♘b3 g6+= looked like a must for Black; obviously it wasn't his day...

11.dxe5 dxe5?

But that's a clear blunder. Forced was 11...♘g6, when White would simply stand better after 12.exf6 ♗xf6 13.♘e2!



12.♗xd8+ ♖xd8 13.0-0-0+ 1-0

□ Kantardzhiev Mikhail

■ Kiprova Alexander

Sofia 1937

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘d2 c5 4.exd5 ♗xd5 5.♘gf3 cxd4 6.♙c4 ♗d8
7.♘b3 ♘c6 8.♘bxd4 ♘xd4 9.♘xd4 ♙c5 10.♙e3 ♘f6 11.♙b5+ ♙d7



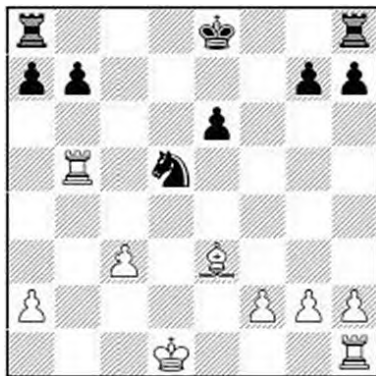
12. ♖xe6!? ♗b4+?

The wrong idea! Black should have opted for 12... ♖a5+! 13. ♗d2 ♗xf2+! 14. ♖xf2 ♖b6+ 15. ♗e3 ♖xe6=

13. c3 ♗xc3+ 14. bxc3 fxe6 15. ♖b1?

Good was 15. ♗d3± with the bishop pair.

15... ♗xb5 16. ♖xb5 ♖xd1+ 17. ♖xd1 ♗d5



18. ♖xb7?

White falls into the trap! Fine was 18. ♖d2 b6 19. c4 ♗xe3 20. ♖xe3=

18... ♗xe3+ 19. fxe3 0-0-0+! 0-1

□ Borbely Istvan

■ Kovach

Oradea 1948

1. e4 c5 2. ♗f3 d6 3. d4 cxd4 4. ♖xd4 ♗c6 5. ♗b5 ♗d7 6. ♗xc6 bxc6 7. ♗c3 ♗f6 8. ♗g5 ♖b8 9. e5 dxe5 10. ♗xe5



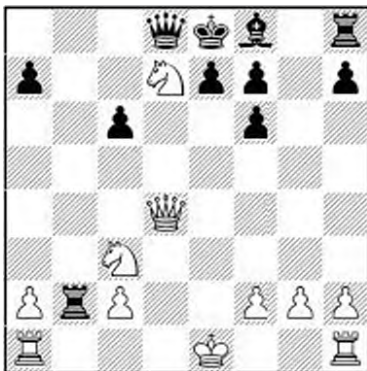
10...♖xb2?!

10...♔b6 11.♞d1 ♕xd4 12.♞xd4 ♖b7+= was a must.

11.♙xf6?

11.♞d1! ♖b7 12.0-0 was curtains; White is simply too well-developed...

11...gxf6 12.♘xd7



12...♔xd7?

An automatic response, which loses on the spot. Black had to opt for 12...♖b7! 13.♘xf6+ exf6+=

13.♔xd7+ ♙xd7 14.0-0-0+!

1-0

□ NN

■ Abrahams Gerald

Moscow 1949

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 c6 4.e4 ♗b4 5.♙d3 e5 6.dxe5 dxe4 7.♙xe4
♙xc3+ 8.bxc3 ♖xd1+ 9.♙xd1 ♙e6 10.♖b1 ♜a6



A blitz game — with white a Soviet GM, who wanted to remain anonymous...

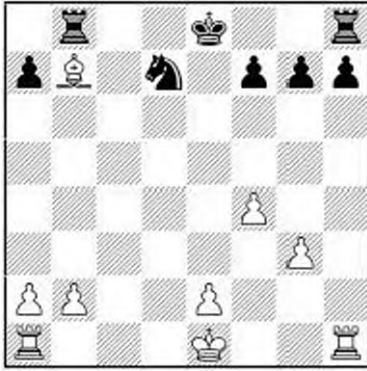
11.♖xb7? 0-0-0+! 0-1

□ Jagelski

■ Kohler

Munich 1952

1.♜h3 d5 2.g3 e5 3.f4 exf4 4.♜xf4 ♙d6 5.d4 ♜f6 6.c4 ♙b4+ 7.♙d2
♙xd2+ 8.♜xd2 dxc4 9.♜xc4 ♜d5 10.♖d3 ♜xf4 11.gxf4 ♖h4+
12.♖g3 ♖xg3+ 13.hxg3 ♙e6 14.♙g2 ♙c8 15.♜a5 c6 16.d5 cxd5
17.♙xd5 ♜d7 18.♜xb7 ♙xb7 19.♙xb7 ♖b8



20. ♖c6! ♜b6

Black seemed to have understood that 20... ♜xb2? would be a blunder...

21. ♖a4 ♜xb2?

Or maybe not?

22. ♖xd7+ ♔xd7 23. 0-0-0+! 1-0

□ Schroeder

■ Rudy

New York 1958 ●



Another blitz game.

18... a6! 19. ♜xb7?

Such combinations can be easily missed in short time controls!

Here 19.♖b2 was a near must.

19...0-0-0!

Here we have no check, but the double threat of the rook on b7 and the mate on d1, decides.

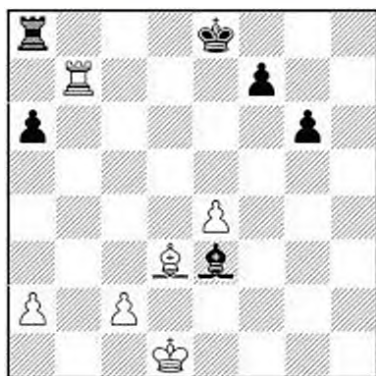
0-1

□ Sznepik Aleksander

■ Adamski Jan

Gdynia 1973

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♘f6 5.♗c3 d6 6.♙e3 a6 7.f4 b5
8.♚f3 ♗b7 9.♙d3 ♗bd7 10.g4 b4 11.♗ce2 e5 12.♗f5 g6 13.♗fg3
exf4 14.♙xf4 h5 15.gxh5 ♗xh5 16.♗xh5 ♚xh5 17.♙g3 ♙g7 18.♚f1
♚f6 19.♙xd6 ♚xf3 20.♚xf3 ♙xb2 21.♚b1 ♙e5 22.♚xb4 ♙xd6
23.♚xb7 ♗e5 24.♚f6 ♙e7 25.♚f2 ♙c5 26.♚g2 ♗f3+ 27.♗d1 ♚xh2
28.♚xh2 ♗xh2 29.♗f4 ♗g4 30.♗d5 ♗e3+ 31.♗xe3 ♙xe3



32.♙c4?

White should stand slightly better after 32.♗e2 ♙c5 33.♙c4, but somehow messed-up...

32...0-0-0+! 33.♗e2 ♗xb7 34.♗xe3 f6

And the rest of the game was easy for Black.

35.♔f4 ♖d7 36.♙d3 ♜e7 37.♙c4 ♗b6 38.♙g8 ♗c5 39.c3 a5 40.♙b3
 ♗d6 41.♙g8 ♜c7 42.c4 ♜g7 43.♙d5 ♜e7 44.♗e3 ♗c5 45.♗d3 ♜h7 0-1

□ Kupreichik Viktor

■ Kapengut Albert

Minsk 1978

1.e4 e6 2.♗f3 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♙d7 5.♗a3 ♗c6 6.♗c2 ♜c8 7.d4 cxd4
 8.♗cxd4 ♗ge7 9.♙d3 ♗xd4 10.♗xd4 ♗g6 11.♞e2 ♙c5 12.♗b3 ♙b6
 13.h4 ♗xh4 14.♞g4 ♗g6 15.♙xg6 fxg6 16.♜xh7



White seems to have a crushing attack...

16...♙xf2+! 17.♗e2

What else? If 17.♗xf2? 0-0+ wins!

17...♜xh7?!

Much better was 17...♙b5+! 18.♗d1 ♜xh7 19.♞xg6+ ♗d7 20.♞xh7
 ♗c7 21.♞xg7+ ♗b8

18.♞xg6+ ♗f8 19.♞xh7 ♞h4 20.♞xh4 ♙xh4

And the chances are now equal.

21.♙e3 b6 22.a4 ♜c4 23.a5 ♜e4 24.♞f1- ♗e8 25.♞f4 ♙b5+ 26.♗f3
 ♙a4 27.♞xe4 dx4+ 28.♗g4 ♙xb3 29.♗xh4 bxa5 30.♙xa7 ♙d5

31.g3 a4 1/2-1/2

□ Tuor Gallus

■ Hugentobler Patrick

Silvaplana 1982 ○



17.♖xb7?

White hurries to regain his pawn, but the text is a clear blunder! He had to opt for 17.♖c3 b6 18.♔e3 0-0

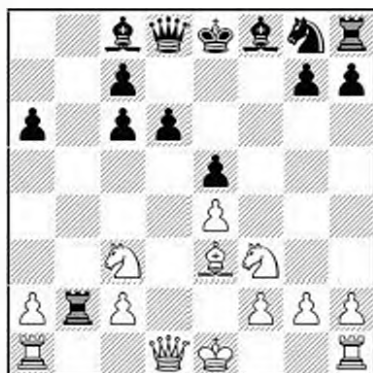
17...0-0-0+! 0-1

□ Neely Elizabeth

■ Levit Roman

Chicago 1989

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5 a6 4.♗a4 d6 5.♗xc6+ bxc6 6.d4 f6 7.♗e3 ♗b8 8.♘c3 ♖xb2 9.dxe5 fxe5



Here Black faces no problems.

10. ♖xe5?! ♜f6!

Of course not 10...dxe5? 11. ♜xd8+ ♔xd8 12. 0-0-0+-

11. ♙d4 dxe5 12. ♖d5 cxd5 13. ♙xb2 ♙b4+ 14. c3 ♙c5



And Black had a clear advantage, which he later converted to a win.

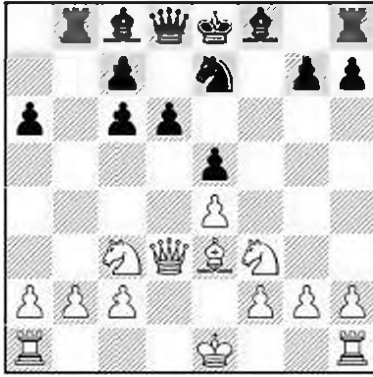
15. 0-0 dxe4 16. ♜d5 ♜d6 17. ♜xe4 ♖f6 18. ♜a4+ ♙d7 19. ♜b3 ♜b6
20. c4 ♖g4 21. ♜xb6 cxb6 22. ♜ad1 ♜f8 23. ♜d2 ♙e6 24. h3 ♖xf2
25. ♜xf2 ♜xf2 26. ♜xf2 e4 27. ♔f1 ♙xc4+ 28. ♜e2 g6 29. ♔e1 ♙xe2
30. ♔xe2 ♔d7 0-1

□ Mestek Igor

■ Voscilla Adriano

Pula 2016

1. e4 e5 2. ♖f3 ♖c6 3. ♙b5 a6 4. ♙a4 d6 5. ♙xc6+ bxc6 6. d4 f6 7. ♙e3
♖e7 8. ♖c3 ♜b8 9. dxe5 fxe5 10. ♜d3



10...♖xb2?

But here things are different. Black had to opt for 10...g6.

11.♘xe5! dxe5?

A second blunder in a row. Black had to accept a bad position with 11...♖b8 12.♖d1 ♗e6 13.♘c4±

12.♙xd8+ ♔xd8 13.0-0-0 ♔e8 14.♔xb2 ♗e6 15.♘a4 ♘c8 16.♘c5 ♗c4 17.♔c3 ♘b6 18.♘b7 ♗xa2 19.♖d8+ ♔f7 20.♗xb6 ♔xb6 21.♖a1 1-0

CONCLUSION

This micro-combination is quite easy to remember, as it is also quite easy to forget!

The involvement of castling makes it a bit unusual, but it is still a simple version of a double-attack.

And in most of the cases it is quite a forceful and efficient one, as it usually comes with a nasty check from nowhere!

FIERCE QUEEN

The queen is a 'sensitive' piece and obviously she cannot be exposed to unnecessary and unforced attacks by any opposing piece except her counterpart.

Pawns are especially quite dangerous, as the loss of a queen for insufficient material logically leads to a lost game. But there are certain cases where the queen 'doesn't care' or isn't afraid of the opponent's pawns, obviously due to certain tactical considerations.

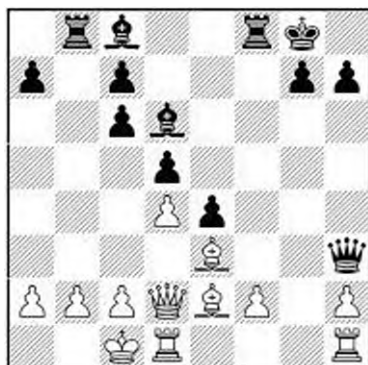
In these cases the pawns are proved to be 'false guards' — let's start with the famous game nicknamed as 'Meta-Morphosis'!

□ Bird Henry Edward

■ Morphy Paul

London 1858

17.0-0-0



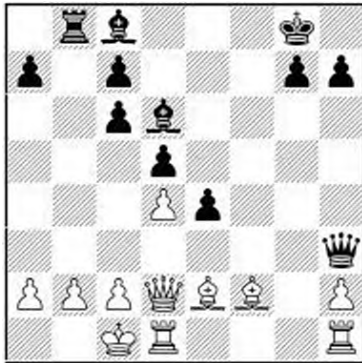
Black has an extra pawn, but the position is quite sharp as the kings are on different wings. Now P.Morphy started an amazing combination:

17...♞xf2?!

I raise my hat to the great chess artist, but the crude 17...♞g4! was correct — G.Kasparov. It looks to me that P.Morphy consistently liked to be down pieces when such offers gave him

open lines and brilliant mating nets. His prodigious memory allowed him to calculate moves far in advance. Thus he did not consider being down in pieces a true detriment. But when eagle-eyed P.Morphy goosed H.Bird with the text move, the game had migrated to a completely different level — one that left White wandering around like a duck hit over the head.

18. ♖xf2



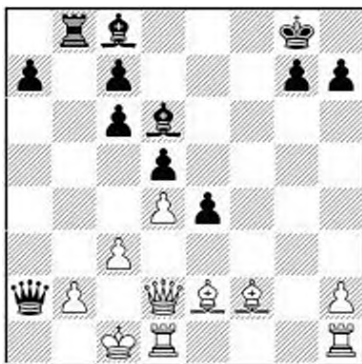
18... ♔a3!

A beautiful, geometrical and paradoxical move from one end of the board to the other. 18... ♖a3? is met by 19. ♔e3! +=

19. c3!

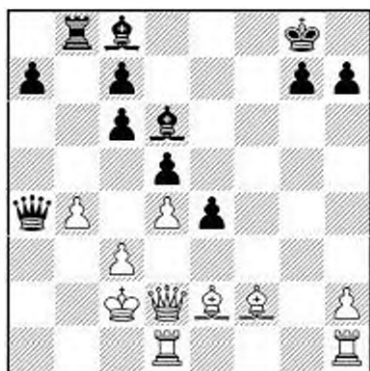
The only defence: 19. ♔g5? ♖xb2 20. ♔d8+ ♔f7 21. ♖h5+ g6 or 19. bxa3? ♖xa3#

19... ♔xa2!



19...e3? is refuted by 20.♙xe3 ♜f5 21.♚c2!

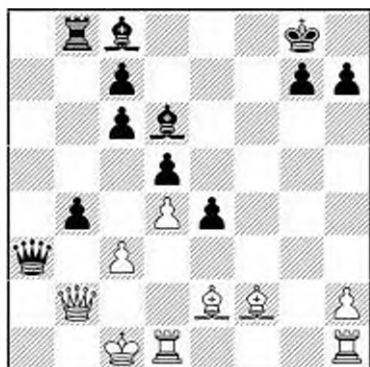
20.b4 ♜a1+ 21.♚c2 ♜a4+



Black's attack has flowed along nicely until this critical point.

22.♚b2?

H.Bird crumbles under the pressure and loses quickly. This position makes a good tactical exercise, one which is solved by P.Morphy easily. 22.♚c1! is the only move and, as it seems now, Black cannot win: 22...a5 (22...♙f5!? 23.♙e3 [23.♙e1? e3 24.♚b2 a5+] 23...♙xb4 24.cxb4 ♜xb4 25.♚c2 ♜a3+ 26.♚d2 ♜b2 [26...♜xd4+ 27.♚e1 ♚xe3 28.♜xd4 ♚xd4 29.♚xc6=] 27.♚xb2 ♚xb2+ 28.♚e1, when Black has many pawns, but they are not very mobile) 23.♚c2 ♜a3+ 24.♚b2 axb4 25.♚b1!

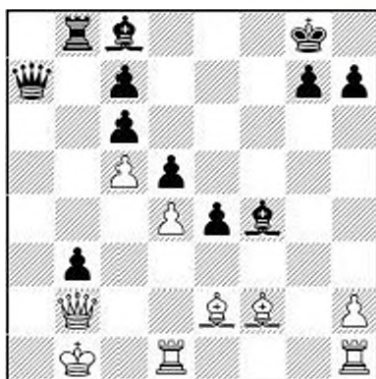


This is the critical move. Previously analysis went as follows: 25.♚xa3? bxa3 26.♙g3! (26.♙e3? ♜b3 27.♚d2 ♜b2+ 28.♚e1 a2

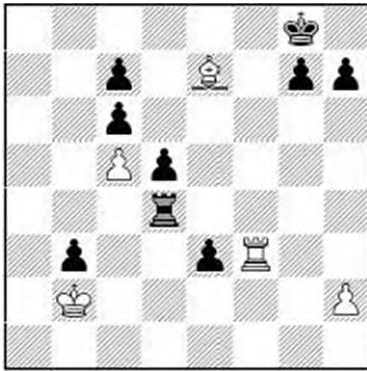
29. ♖a1 ♕d7 30. ♔d1 c5 31. dxc5 ♕e7 32. h4 h6!-) 26... ♕e7 (26... a2?
 27. ♔d2 ♕a3 28. ♖a1 ♖b2+ 29. ♔e3 ♖c2 30. ♕xc7 ♖xc3+ 31. ♔d2 ♕b2
 32. ♕f4 ♖a3 33. ♕d6 ♖a8 34. ♕c5 ♕f5 35. ♔c2 ♕xa1 36. ♖xa1 e3+
 37. ♕d3 g6 38. ♕xf5 gxf5 39. ♔d3 ♔f7 40. ♔xe3 ♔e6 41. ♔f4=) 27. ♕f4
 (27. h4 e3 28. ♕xc7 ♖b3 29. ♖df1 ♖b2 30. ♖h2 ♖b7 31. ♕a6 ♖xc7
 32. ♕xc8 ♖xc8 33. ♔c2 c5+) 27... ♕f5 28. ♔d2 a2 29. ♖a1 (29. ♔e3 ♖b3
 30. ♖a1 ♖xc3+ 31. ♔d2 ♕b4 32. ♔d1 ♖a3 33. ♕d2 ♕xd2 34. ♔xd2 e3+
 35. ♔e1 ♔f7+) 29... ♖b2+ 30. ♔e3 c5 31. ♕d1 ♔f7 32. ♖e1 cxd4+
 33. ♔xd4 ♕f6+ 34. ♔xd5 ♕xc3 35. ♖f1 ♕e6+ 36. ♔xe4 ♖b4+ 37. ♔e3
 ♕d4+ 38. ♔d2 ♕c4 39. ♕h5+ ♔g8 40. ♖xa2 ♕xa2 41. ♕xc7 ♕f6+= Now
 Black can choose:

a) 25... ♕f5 26. ♖xa3 bxa3+ 27. ♔a1 ♖b2 28. ♖he1! (28. ♖de1? ♕f4!
 28... ♕xh2 (28... ♕f4 29. ♕g3 ♕d2 30. ♖xd2 ♖xd2 31. ♕xc7∞) 29. ♕e3 ♕g3
 30. ♖g1 ♕h2 31. ♖g2 ♕d6 32. ♖d2 ♖xd2 33. ♕xd2 ♔f7 34. ♔a2 c5 35. ♕c1
 g6 36. ♕xa3 ♕f4 37. ♖g1 and Black cannot win.

b) 25... ♖a7!? 26. c4 b3 27. c5 (27. ♖hg1? ♕a3 28. ♖a1 [28. ♖xg7+?
 ♔xg7 29. ♖g1+ ♔f8 30. ♖d2 ♕c1!-) 28... e3 29. ♕h4 ♕f5+ 30. ♕d3 e2
 31. ♕xf5 exd1=♖+ 32. ♖xd1 ♖a4+) 27... ♕f4



28. ♖hg1! (28. ♕g3? ♕h6 29. ♕e5 ♖a8 30. ♖hg1 ♕f5 31. ♖df1 ♕g6 32. h4
 ♕d2!-) ; 28. ♕e1? ♖a8 29. ♕c3 ♖b8 30. ♖df1 ♕h6 31. ♕d1 ♕a6 32. ♕xb3
 ♖b7 33. ♖d1 ♖b8 34. ♔a2 ♕e2 35. ♖he1 ♕xd1 36. ♖xd1 ♕f4 37. ♖h1 ♕e3
 38. ♕a4 ♖a7 39. ♖a3 ♖a8+) 28... ♖a8 29. ♕h4 ♕f5! 30. ♖g1! e3+ 31. ♔c1
 ♕c2 32. ♖xf4 ♕xd1 33. ♕xd1 ♖a1+ 34. ♖xa1 ♖xa1+ 35. ♔b2 ♖xd1
 36. ♖f3 ♖xd4 37. ♕e7! =



c) 25...♚a4!? 26.c4 b3 27.c5 ♕f4 28.♗g3 ♕h6 29.♚a1! ♚xa1+
30.♜xa1 ♞a8+ 31.♜b2 ♞a2+ 32.♜xb3 ♞xe2 33.♞a1∞.

d) 25...♗a6 26.♞he1! ♚xb2+ (26...♗xe2 27.♞xe2 ♚a4 28.♞g1 ♗xh2
29.♞c1 b3 30.c4 ♗d6 31.c5 ♗e7 32.♗e3∞) 27.♜xb2 bxc3+ 28.♜xc3
♗b4+ 29.♜c2 ♗xe1 30.♞xe1 ♗xe2 31.♞xe2=

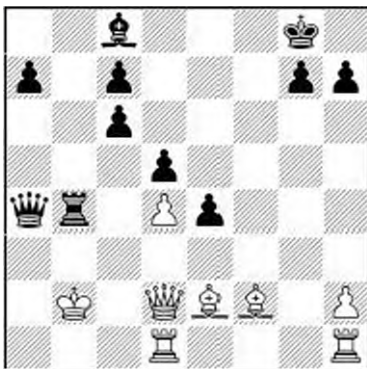
e) 25...♚xc3 26.♞c1 ♚h3 (26...♚a3 27.♗g3) 27.♗g3 ♗f5 28.♚b3∞.

So it seems that P.Morphy's amazing sacrifice does not win objectively.

22...♗xb4!

Black's king hunt flows nicely.

23.cxb4 ♞xb4+



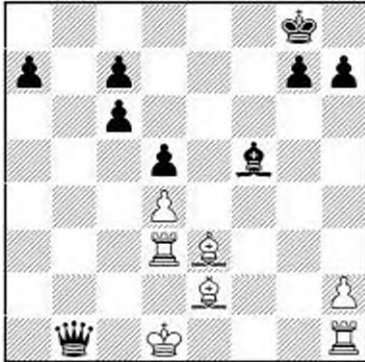
24.♚xb4

What else? If 24.♜c1? then 24...♚a1+ 25.♜c2 ♚b2#

24...♞xb4+ 25.♔c2

Or 25.♔a2 c5 26.dxc5 e3 27.♙e1 (27.♙xe3 d4 28.♙xd4 ♙e6+ 29.♔a1 ♞a3+ 30.♔b1 ♙f5+-) 27...♞e4 28.♙g3 ♞c2+-

25...e3 26.♙xe3 ♙f5+ 27.♞d3 ♞c4+ 28.♔d2 ♞a2+ 29.♔d1 ♞b1+



And so in the end, P.Morphy adds another feather to his cap...
When one plays with Morphy the sensation is as queer as the first electric shock, or first love, or chloroform, or any entirely novel experience — Henry Bird.

0-1

Well, there are many ways to 'evaluate' a move, as long as certain criteria are presented:

1. Aesthetic appeal.
2. Complexity.
3. Efficiency.
4. Effect.

Certainly, the following game can 'help':

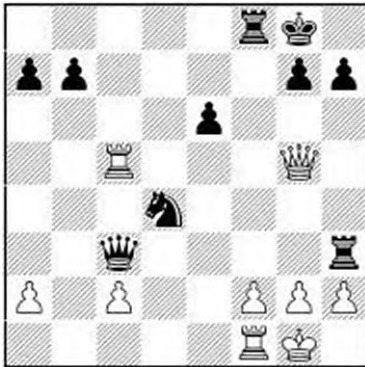
□ Levitsky Stepan

■ Marshall Frank James

Breslau 1912

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 c5 4.♘f3 ♘c6 5.exd5 exd5 6.♙e2 ♘f6 7.0-0
♙e7 8.♙g5 0-0 9.dxc5 ♙e6 10.♘d4 ♙xc5 11.♘xe6 fxe6 12.♙g4 ♞d6

13.♔h3 ♖ae8 14.♚d2 ♙b4 15.♙xf6 ♜xf6 16.♞ad1 ♚c5 17.♛e2 ♙xc3
 18.bxc3 ♚xc3 19.♞xd5 ♜d4 20.♚h5 ♞ef8 21.♞e5 ♜h6 22.♚g5 ♞xh3
 23.♞c5



Here Black actually has no less than five clear wins, but the move played is astonishing and one of the most beautiful in chess history...

23...♚g3!

White decided to simply give-up, as nothing can save him:
 24.♚xg3 (24.hxg3 ♜e2#; 24.fxg3 ♜e2+ 25.♔h1 ♞xf1#) 24...♜e2+
 25.♔h1 ♜xg3+ 26.♔g1 (26.fxg3 ♞xf1#) 26...♜e2+ 27.♔h1 ♞c3+ Well
 in this game 23...♚g3 was not necessary at all and some other
 moves are not much worse, although there is no move obviously
 stronger — and by forcing liquidation it's not without practical
 value. The game has been nicknamed as 'The Gold Coin Game'.

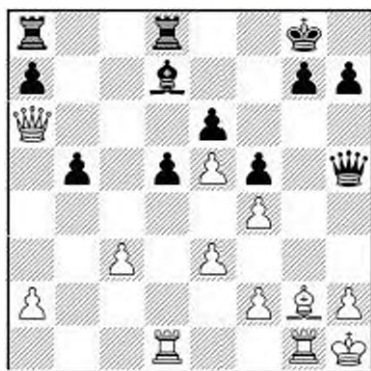
0-1

The following game does not present any 'strange' queen move around the enemy pawns. But it is aesthetically beautiful, as the white queen moves into the attack from far away.

□ Bogoljubow Efim
 ■ Miseses Jacques
 Baden-Baden 1925

1.d4 f5 2.g3 ♜f6 3.♔g2 e6 4.♜f3 d5 5.0-0 ♙d6 6.c4 c6 7.♜c3 ♜bd7

8.♖c2 ♘e4 9.♔h1 ♚f6 10.♙f4 ♙xf4 11.gxf4 ♚h6 12.e3 ♘df6
 13.♘e5 ♘d7 14.♗g1 ♘xe5 15.dxe5 ♘xc3 16.bxc3 ♙d7 17.♗ad1 b5
 18.♚b2 0-0 19.♚a3 ♗fd8 20.cxb5 cxb5 21.♚a6 ♚h5



The white queen stands ‘miserable on the queenside, far away from the rest of her army. It looks like Black is holding his own but White found an astonishing continuation:

22.♙xd5!

22.♗xd5? exd5 23.♙xd5+ ♔h8 24.♗xg7 loses to 24...♚d1+. With a sudden change of plan, white assails the hostile position like a streak of lightning — Emanuel Lasker.

22...exd5 23.♗xg7+!

This double sacrifice exhibits the superb talent of the Russian champion. He had to calculate not only the winning of the queen for three pieces, but also several moves ahead of that — Saviely Tartakower.

23...♔xg7 24.♚f6+ ♔g8 25.♗g1+ ♚g4 26.♗xg4+ fxg4 27.f5

27.e6 ♙c6 28.♚g5+ ♔h8 29.e7 was easier.

27...♗dc8 28.e6 ♙c6 29.♚f7+ ♔h8 30.f6 ♗g8 31.♚c7 ♗ac8 32.♚e5 d4+ 33.♔g1 ♙d5 34.f7+ ♗g7 35.♚xd5

The game was nicknamed ‘I Play Against Mises’.

1-0

□ Alekhine Alexander

■ Supico

Lisbon 1941

1.e4 e5 2.d4 exd4 3.c3 dxc3 4.♘xc3 ♟b4 5.♙c4 ♚e7 6.♗ge2 ♗f6
7.0-0 0-0 8.♙g5 ♚e5 9.♙xf6 ♚xf6 10.♗d5 ♚d6 11.e5 ♚c5 12.♞c1
♚a5 13.a3 ♙xa3 14.bxa3 c6 15.♗e7+ ♖h8 16.♚d6 ♚d8 17.♗d4 b6
18.♞c3 c5 19.♗df5 ♙a6



This game was played in June 1941 during a blindfold simultaneous display. White is winning anyway, but he found the quickest and most effective continuation:

20. ♚g6!

As said, Black played horribly and White would have won easily anyway, but the text move still looks spectacular. It's quite a common theme when a castled king is surrounded by knights and a 'lifted' rook is ready to come in: 20...fxg6 (20...♞g8 21.♚xh7+ ♖xh7 22.♞h3#; 20...hxc6 21.♞h3#) 21.♗xg6+ hxc6 22.♞h3+ ♚h4 23.♞xh4# By the way, 20.♗g6+ fxg6 21.♚xg6 ♞xf5 22.♞h3 mates as well.

1-0

American GM Nicolas Rossolimo, with Ukrainian and Italian origins, ran a chess studio in Greenwich Village, NY in the 1960s.

He was a wonderful guy, and had many grandmasters visit the studio, including Bobby Fischer. Rossolimo died way before his time in a tragic fall on a stairway.

□ Rossolimo Nicolas

■ Reissmann Paul

San Juan 1967

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙c4 ♙c5 4.c3 ♗f6 5.d4 exd4 6.cxd4 ♙b4+
7.♙d2 ♙xd2+ 8.♗bxd2 d5 9.exd5 ♗xd5 10.♚b3 ♗ce7 11.0-0 c6
12.♞fe1 0-0 13.a4 b6 14.♗e5 ♙b7 15.a5 ♞c8 16.♗e4 ♞c7 17.a6 ♙a8
18.♚h3 ♗f4 19.♞g4 ♗ed5 20.♞a3 ♗e6 21.♙xd5 cxd5 22.♗f6+ ♔h8



23.♞g6!

Of course White could win as well with the 'natural' 23.♞xe6! ♞c1 (23...fxe6 24.♗g6+ hxg6 25.♞h3#) 24.♗xf7+ ♞xf7 25.♞c3, but the move played is far more beautiful!

23...♞c2 24.♞h3

Black resigned due to 24...♗g5 25.♗xf7+ (25.♞xg5+-) 25...♞xf7 26.♞xc2 ♞xc2 27.♞e8+ ♞f8 28.♞xf8# The game was nicknamed 'La Regina Della Notte'.

1-0

□ Darga Klaus Viktor
■ Dueckstein Andreas
Lucerne 1963 ○



26. ♖g6! 1-0

CONCLUSION

Expect the unexpected. Do not be fooled by pawn power and control and false guards.

LETHAL DIAGONALS

Bishops live, move, threaten and defend on diagonals. We have seen many beautiful combinations based on diagonal tricks and we have studied many more bishop endings.

And more-or-less we know how to mate with two bishops or with bishop & knight vs. a lonely king...

But what about mates with a single bishop or mates in the late middlegame? Well, these cases are rare birds, so their beauty is even huger! When you want to create a masterpiece you firstly have to imagine — and then to construct.

Well, imagination does not always become reality but it is a good first step and it doesn't do any harm, depending on the time you have left on your clock!

Let's start our 'imaginary' survey with some nice studies as usual!

Study 1

Timman Jan

2007 ○



Black seems to hold the draw here...

1.h4+!

Preparing the cage for the black king... 1.hxg4? ♖d6+ 2.♔h3 h5, should be OK for Black.

1...♔h5 2.♖f5! ♕f8

2...♗d6+ 3.♖xd6 ♕f5 4.♖xf5! ♕xf5 5.♗e2+ ♗g4 6.♗xg4#

3.h3 ♗d1

3...♗xh3 4.♗e2+ ♗g4 5.♗xg4#

4.♗e6! ♗e2 5.♖g7+ ♗xg7 6.♗g4+ ♗xg4 7.hxg4# 1-0

Study 2

Bron Vladimir

Rustaveli MT 1967

3rd Special Prize 1967 ○



In this study, White is a pawn up but faced with threats by Black's advanced pawn. Nonetheless, he will prove that the two bishops are powerful enough to win.

1.g7+!

White sacrifices a pawn for the initiative. If Black captures with the king, he will face a deadly discovered check, so he takes with the bishop, allowing White to move his h1-bishop away with tempo soon. With normal play, White can even lose if he isn't careful, for example 1.♗a3+? ♔g7! 2.♗f3 (losing is 2.d5? ♖xh1 3.♗b2+ ♔xg6 4.♗xh8 h2 5.♗e5 ♖g3!-+) 2...h2 3.d5 ♔xg6=

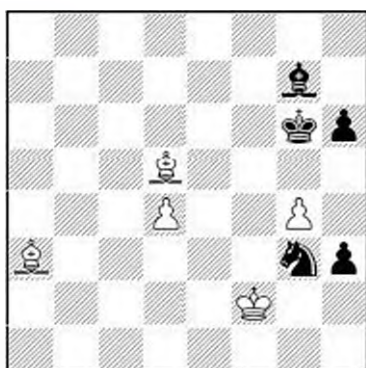
1...♗xg7

No better is 1...♔xg7 2.d5+ (the computer wants to play 2.♕f3+- but V.Bron's variation is easier to understand. In the computer variation Black's knight is captured) 2...♔g6 (after 2...♔g8 3.♕xh8 ♖xh1 4.d6!+- the passed pawn decides) 3.♕xh8 ♖xh1 4.♕e5+- and the knight is caught in the corner.

2.♕a3+ ♔f7 3.♕d5+ ♔g6!

Black aims to exchange all the pawns, in which case even a piece less — as long as he keeps his bishop — won't matter.

4.♔f2



4...♖h1+!

A nice sacrifice, playing for a trick to exchange the pawns. The immediate capture on d4 does not work out: 4...♕xd4+ 5.♔xg3 with three variations, but in all of them the g4-pawn survives: 5...♕e5+ (5...h5 6.♕e4+-) 6.♔f3! h2 (6...h5 7.♕e4+ ♔h6 8.♕c1+-) 7.♕e4+! ♔g5 8.♕e7+ ♕f6 9.♕xf6+ ♔xf6 10.♔f4+-

5.♕xh1

If White declines, according to V.Bron the two extra pawns for Black should secure a draw, although in a game Black would certainly lose: 5.♔e3? ♕xd4+ 6.♔xd4 ♖f2 7.♔e3 ♖xg4+ 8.♔f4 h5= The study would still be sound if Black could only repeat the moves, this would be called a 'loss of time dual': 5.♔e3 ♖g3 6.♔f2 ♖h1+

5...♙xd4+ 6.♔g3 ♙e5+



How can the game now not end in a draw?

7.♔h4!

It would be wrong to take immediately: 7.♔xh3? h5 8.♙e4+ ♔g5!
9.♙c1+ (9.♙e7+ ♙f6 10.♙xf6+ ♔xf6) 9...♙f4 10.♙xf4+ ♔xf4 11.gxh5
♔g5= To invalidate this defence, White must steer the ♙e5 to f6 —
in ‘problem language’, a ‘Roman’ manoeuvre.

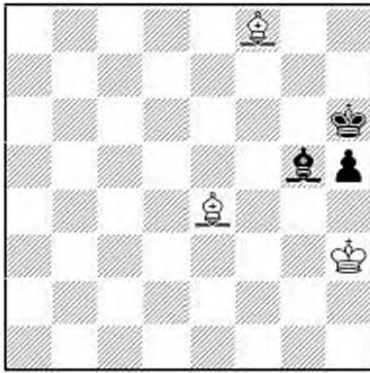
7...♙f6+! 8.♔xh3 h5 9.♙e4+ ♔h6

The second issue is that White has reached a position where he can fork king and bishop to reach this and another checkmate. The first issue is that with the bishop on f6, the defence that once worked now ends in checkmate: 9...♔g5 10.♙c1#

10.g5+! ♙xg5

Or, as we saw before, 10...♔xg5 11.♙c1#

11.♙f8#



Certainly the material balance is enough for a draw, but Black has a small positional issue preventing it — he is checkmated!

1-0

Study 3

Korolkov Vladimir

Trud 1935

1st Prize 1935 ○



This ingenious study by Vladimir Korolkov features two bishops that have to do heroic deeds while pawns want to promote all over the board. Firstly, the f2-pawn wants to promote on f1, and playing 1.♖b1 e2 does not help either. So White has to create counterplay. There is only one way to stop the pawn for now, and that is to prepare a discovered check.

1.d7!

After 1.♖b1? e2-+ White has no useful continuation.

Sacrificing the rook can stop the pawns for now, but White can't create enough counterplay to draw, for example 1.♖f7+? ♗xf7 2.♙a6 ♕d8 3.♗f4 (3.♗f3 ♕b6 4.g4 [4.♙c4+ ♗f6 5.♗e2 a5-+] 4...♗e6 5.g5 ♗xd6 6.g6 ♗e6-+) 3...♕b6 4.♗f5 e2 5.♙xe2 a5 6.♙c4+ ♗e8 7.♗e4 a4 8.♗f3 ♗d7-+ and Black eventually wins with his passed pawns.

1...♗e7 2.♖b8!

It is important to choose the correct order of moves, as the immediate sacrifice 2.d8=♖+? ♗xd8 3.♖b8 allows Black to take on g3 without consequences: 3...♙xg3 4.♖a8 (4.♗xg3 f1=♖ 5.♙a6+ ♗c7 6.♖c8+ ♗d7) 4...♕b8! 5.♙a6 ♗c7 and White is lacking a tempo compared to the main line: 6.♗h3 f1=♖+ 7.♙xf1 ♗b7= with a draw because of the extra pawn on e3. Of course not 8.♙g2? e2-+ and Black even wins.

2...♙xg3!

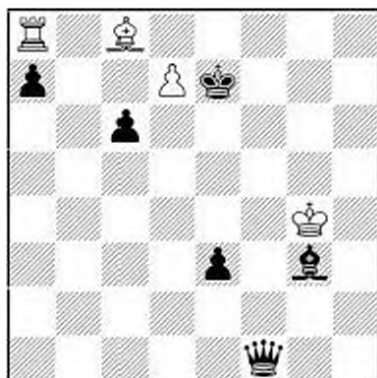
White must be very careful now, as the line we just saw will turn out to be a draw if White takes the bishop, so he must bring his rook to a secure place. Taking on g3 is the best defence, as otherwise White wins easily with his g-pawn: 2...f1=♖? 3.d8=♖+ ♗xd8 4.♙a6+ ♗c7 5.♙xf1 ♗xb8 6.gxh4+- and the pawn promotes soon.

3.♖a8!

Without the g-pawn, the draw is clear after 3.♗xg3? f1=♖ 4.d8=♖+ ♗xd8 5.♙a6+ ♗c7, and now White loses his rook if he wants to take the queen. Otherwise, there is nothing better than perpetual check. 6.♖b7+ ♗c8 7.♖b6+ (7.♖xa7+ ♗b8 8.♖b7+ ♗a8) 7...♗c7 8.♖b7+, and taking on a7 allows Black to go to a8. 8...♗c8 9.♖xa7+ ♗b8 10.♖b7+ ♗a8=, although of course 10...♗c8 also draws as before.

3...f1=♖

Black can't be too clever: 3...♙b8 4.♙a6+- wins easily but not 4.♖xb8? f1=♚ 5.d8=♚+ ♔xd8 6.♙a6+ ♔c7= again.



4.d8=♚+ ♔xd8 5.♙a6+ ♙b8!

The heroic sacrifice of the bishop leads to the known draw if White takes, but if he captures the queen immediately, Black wins the rook. So what should White do?

6.♙xf1

Anyway! 6.♖xb8+? ♔c7=

6...♔c7 7.♙a6

But not the other way round, as Black's pawn will draw: 7.♙e2? ♔b7 8.♙f3 e2!=

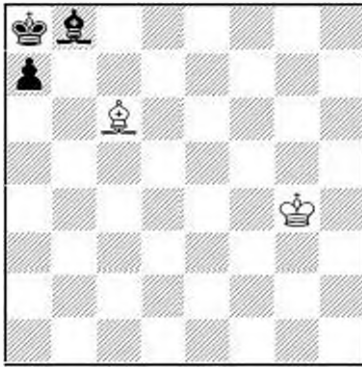
7...e2! 8.♙xe2 ♔b7

White loses the rook...

9.♙f3! ♔xa8

9...a6!? 10.♙xc6+!+-

10.♙xc6#



And eventually White is a pawn down, which is not too much of an issue as Black is checkmated...

1-0

□ Jackson Edward Mackenzie

■ Marshall Frank James

London 1899 ●



If White was on the move he could draw with 23.♖he1. But Black to move can create troubles for the exposed white king.

22...♖e2! 23.♖ad1 ♖f2+

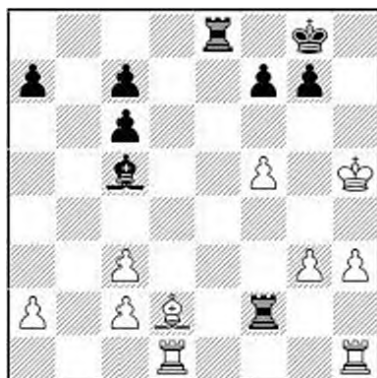
Also good is 23...h5 24.♖hf1 ♖h2 25.a4 ♖e5, when Black wins material.

24.♔g4 h5+?!

Black goes for uncertain tactics. Better was 24...♗d6! 25.♗f4 ♗xf4

26.gxf4 ♖g2+ 27.♔h4 ♖xc2, when Black will prevail.

25.♔xh5



25...g6+?

But this is too much. Black's last try was 25...♖xf5+ 26.♔g4 ♖f2 27.♖he1 ♖xe1 28.♗xe1 ♖xc2 29.♖d2! when he has chances, but White should probably defend.

26.fxg6 ♖e5+ 27.♔g4 f5+ 28.♔h4

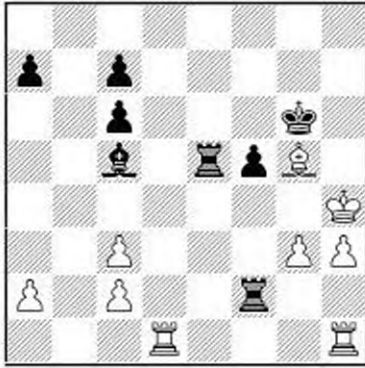
Not losing directly, but better was 28.♔h5! f4+ 29.♔g4 fxg3 30.♔xg3 ♖ee2 31.♗h6! ♗d6+ 32.♖xd6 cxd6 33.♖b1 and now Black must go for perpetual check.

28...♔g7 29.♗f4?

A terrible blunder. White was OK after 29.♔h5! f4+ 30.♔g4 fxg3 31.♔xg3 ♖ee2 32.♗f4.

29...♔xg6! 30.♗g5

Probably White missed the easy 30.♗xe5 ♗e7+.



30...♞f4+!

Nice and lethal! White resigned: 31.♙xf4 (31.g4 ♕f2#; 31.gxf4 ♕f2#) 31...♙e7+ 32.♙g5 ♕xg5#

0-1

□ Gelfand Boris

■ Shirov Alexei

Odessa 2007 ●



A Rapid game, but still the beauty of the final touch is extraordinary!

41...♞f4+!

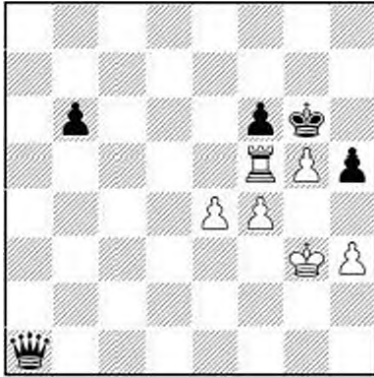
An excellent resource, but even nicer was 41...a1=♞! 42.♞xa1 ♞f4+!!

42.gxf4

42. ♖xf4 fxg5# is out of the question...

42... ♔f2+ 43. ♕g3 ♕xg3+ 44. ♖xg3 a1=♚

And Black won the ending.



45. ♖xf6+ ♔g7 46. e5 b5 47. ♖h4 b4 48. ♖xh5 ♕d1+ 49. ♖h4 b3 50. e6
b2 51. ♖f7+ ♔g8 52. ♖b7 b1=♚ 53. ♖xb1 ♕xb1 54. ♖g4 ♕e4 0-1

CONCLUSION

The bishop is a long-range piece and delivers from afar. So, the need to keep an open eye on the entire board is a necessity and an obligation as well!

LONG TERM SACRIFICES

With the description long-term sacrifice we tend to mean sacrifices which are not easy to evaluate in a few moves and might take much more time to reach a final conclusion.

Usually these sacrifices demand a high price; normally a minor or heavy piece!

In the Gashimov Memorial which was held in Shamkir, Azerbaijan (April 2017), we came across two very interesting and impressive games.

In the first game Vladimir Kramnik tried to catch his opponent in one of his pet lines. As this didn't work out, he had to go for complications, sacrificing material.

□ Kramnik Vladimir

■ Harikrishna Pentala

Shamkir 2017

Notes based on those of GM Tiger Hillarp-Persson.

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5

As far as we can observe, this is the first time V.Kramnik has entered the 'Ruy Lopez' from the white side in a very long time. 3.♙c4 ♘f6 4.d3 ♙e7 5.0-0 0-0 6.♖e1 d6 7.c3 ♘a5 8.♙b5 a6 9.♙a4 b5 10.♙c2 c5 Why do we give this line? The explanation follows after 8.c3 in the game.



3...a6!

P.Harikrishna also has the 'Berlin Defence' in the repertoire, but to play it against V.Kramnik? Not good advice!

4.♘a4 ♟f6 5.0-0 ♚e7



6.d3

6.♖e1 is still the main move, but after 6...b5 7.♘b3 0-0 8.c3 (8.a4 is the most challenging move for those who prefer to avoid the 'Marshall Gambit') 8...d5 no one above 2600 has lost with the black pieces in the last half year.

6...b5 7.♘b3 d6

7...0-0 is played far less often. Perhaps since 8.a4 or 8.♗c3 d6 9.a3 is an option again.

8.a3



White must save the light-squared bishop. And since the other options such as 8.♘c3?! ♞a5! have been found to set Black few(er) problems, this seemingly meek move has become the latest fashion. 8.a4 ♕d7! is a neat point behind 7...d6. After 9.c3 ♞a5 10.♙c2 c5 11.d4 ♞b8 12.♙g5 h6 13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.axb5 axb5 15.dxc5 dxc5 16.♞d5 ♞c8 17.b4 ♙e6 18.♞xc5 ♞xc5 19.bxc5 ♔d7! Black was doing very well, in Morozevich,A-Vitiugov,N Novi Sad 2016, and went on to win. 8.c3 0-0 9.♞e1 ♞a5 10.♙c2 c5 is a position that can also arise in the 'Prussian Defence' (3.♙c4 ♞f6).

8...0-0

8...♙e6 is an idea that is usually better when White has already played h3. Then after 9.♙xe6 fxe6 White ought to be a bit better here, although it is far from clear: 10.c3 0-0 11.♞bd2 ♞d7 12.♞e1 ♞ae8 (12...♞h5!?) 13.a4+= Pavlidis,A-Schwarz,D Tallinn 2016.

9.♘c3

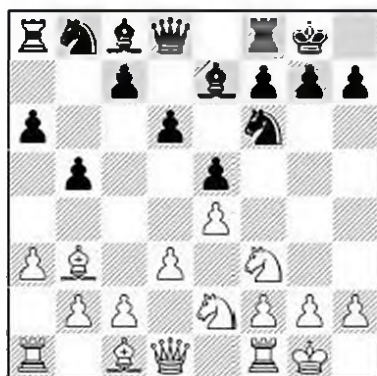


There are few positions in chess where there are more than 4-5 decent moves, but in this position there are no less than 7 perfectly reasonable moves for Black! It is also notable that this position was reached 4 times in the last FIDE-WC match between M.Carlsen and S.Karjakin, with M.Carlsen, as Black, scoring three draws and one win!

9...♞b8!?

The start of the ‘Breyer’ plan. Black is aiming for a harmonious set-up with ...♖bd7 and ...♗b7, before continuing — usually — with ...♞e8, ...♙f8, ...g6 and ...♙g7. For someone who has played the ‘Pirc/Modern Defence’ for many years, it gives rise to a kind of déjà vu; haven’t we seen something similar somewhere? 9...♙e6 10.♙e3 d5 11.♙g5! has scored well for White, while 9...♗a5 10.♙a2 ♙e6 (playing ‘Chigorin’ style with 10...c5, makes more sense when White has spent time on moves like c3 and h3. Here White is ready to fight for the d5-square immediately: 11.b4 ♗c6 12.♗d5+= This is possibly the reason why M.Carlsen played ...♗b8, ...c5 and ...♗c6 in an earlier game. Here it actually helps White to have the bishop kicked back to a2) was played by M.Carlsen in two of the FIDE-WC games: 11.b4 (11.d4 ♙xa2 12.♞xa2 ♞e8 13.♞a1 ♗c4 14.♞e1 ♞c8 15.h3 h6 16.b3 ♗b6 17.♙b2 ♙f8 18.dxe5 dxe5 19.a4 c6 20.♞xd8 ♞cxd8 21.axb5 axb5 22.♗e2 ♙b4 23.♙c3 ♙xc3 24.♗xc3 ♗bd7 25.♞a6 ♞c8 26.b4 ♞e6 27.♞b1 c5 28.♞xe6 fxe6 29.♗xb5 cxb4 30.♞xb4 ♞xc2 31.♗d6 ♞c1+ 32.♙h2 ♞c2 33.♙g1 ½-½ Karjakin,S-Carlsen,M New York 2016) 11...♗c6 12.♗d5 ♗d4 13.♗g5 ♙xd5 14.exd5 ♗d7 15.♗e4 f5 16.♗d2 f4 17.c3 ♗f5 18.♗e4 ♞e8 19.♙b3 ♞g6 20.f3 ♙h4 21.a4 ♗f6 22.♞e2 a5 23.axb5 axb4 24.♙d2 bxc3 25.♙xc3 ♗e3 26.♞fc1 ♞xa1 27.♞xa1 ♞e8 28.♙c4 ♙h8 29.♗xf6 ♙xf6 30.♞a3 e4 31.dxe4 ♙xc3 32.♞xc3 ♞e5 33.♞c1 ♞a8 34.h3 h6 35.♙h2 ♞d4 36.♞e1 ♞b2 37.♙f1 ♞a2 38.♞xc7 ♞a1 0-1 Karjakin,S-Carlsen,M New York 2016.

10.♗e2



The start of the most famous manoeuvre known to chess. The end station is the g3-square, where the knight is bolstering e4, stopping ...♘h5, and making sure that a future ...♙g4 will be well and truly kicked with h3; all this while not being in the way of any other pieces.

10...♘bd7

P.Harikrishna is going for a more traditional interpretation of the 'Breyer' set-up. M.Carlsen preferred 10...c5 11.♘g3 ♘c6 12.c3 ♖b8 13.h3 a5 14.a4 b4 15.♞e1 ♙e6 16.♙c4 h6 17.♙e3 ♞c8 18.♞e2 ♞d8 19.♙xe6 fxe6 20.d4 bxc3 21.bxc3 cxd4 22.cxd4 exd4 23.♘xd4 ♘xd4 24.♙xd4 ♞b4 25.♞ec1 ♞d7 26.♙c3 ♞xa4 27.♙xa5 ♞xa1 28.♞xa1 ♞a8 29.♙c3 ♞xa1+ 30.♙xa1 ♞c6 31.♙h2 ♙f7 32.♙b2 ♞c5 33.f4 ♙d8 34.e5 dxe5 35.♙xe5 ♙b6 36.♞d1 ♞d5 37.♞xd5 ♘xd5 1/2-1/2 Karjakin,S-Carlsen,M New York 2016.

11.c3



If Black is worried about the ...♘b6-c5 plan that V.Kovalev used against M.Kobalia (see next comment), it makes sense to play 11.♘g3 first: 11...♘b6 (11...♘c5 12.♙a2 ♙e6 is probably the reason why V.Kramnik chose the move order with c3 first) 12.♙d2 c5 13.♙a5!?

11...♙b7

This quite logical move seems new. If we compare the position with the classical 'Breyer System', then White has played d3

instead of d4, has added a3, avoided h3 and can play the knight to g3 without going ♖e1 first. Black should be ahead on tempi, but not having played d4 is something of an advantage for White, who is more flexible and doesn't have to worry about tactical operations revolving around a weak e4-pawn. 11...♘b6 12.♗g3 c5 13.d4 ♜c7 14.♞e1 a5 15.h3 ♙d7 16.♙d2 a4 17.♙c2 ♘c4 18.♙c1 ♞fc8 led to a very complex fight, in Kobalia,M-Kovalev,V Gjakova 2016.

12.♗g3 c5 13.♞e1 ♜c8

Black would love to get a chance to force the exchange of the c-pawn for White's d-pawn.



14.♗f5!?

This move changes the flow of the game and takes it into unclear waters. More logical and reasonable are 14.♙a2 or 14.♙c2.

14...c4! 15.dxc4

If 15.♙c2 cxd3 16.♙xd3 ♞e8 17.♙c2, then 17...♗c5 18.♙g5 ♙f8 and Black's pieces are too harmonious for White to even dream of an advantage: 19.♗d2 g6 20.♗e3 ♙e7 21.♙xf6 ♙xf6 22.a4 ♙g5=



15...♙xe4

Black can also consider 15...bxc4?! 16.♙c2 ♜c5, but after 17.♙g5 ♜c7 18.♙xf6 ♙xf6 19.♚xd6 it seems that he doesn't have enough compensation for the pawn.

16.♞xe7+

16.♞xd6? ♙xd6 17.♚xd6 ♞c5 leads to a total collapse on the light squares.

16...♚xe7 17.cxb5 axb5



18.♙g5!

This must be played before Black gets the chance to shut it out of the game with ...h6.

18...♞c5 19.♙a2

19.♙c2 ♖xc2 20.♚xc2 ♜e6 looks balanced.

19...h6 20.♗h4!?

Burning bridges. The bishop will be terribly passive on g3, so the natural thing to do would be to go 20.♙xf6 ♚xf6 21.♞e3. Still, Black has no complaints here, so V.Kramnik's choice was in harmony with the bishop retreat to a2. He is aiming for complications!



20...g5! 21.♙g3 ♗h7

Usually the bishop is better off at g6, from where it supports h5 and leaves the h7-square for other pieces: 21...♙g6 22.♙b1 ♜fe4 23.♜d2 d5 24.♜f3 f6 25.♚xd5+ ♔g7 and Black has a nice initiative for the pawn.

22.♚e2

22.♙b1!? wasn't so bad, but obviously V.Kramnik is cooking-up something tasty...

22...♔g7!



Black's plan is simple but effective: to evacuate the knight from f6, play ...f6 in order to bury the bishop on g3, and then occupy the light squares. White needs to come up with an antidote to this scenario.

23. ♖ad1?!

If V.Kramnik played this with the express intention of what is coming next, then this is one the 'greatest' moves we have ever seen. Wrong would be 23. ♖xb5? ♗d3 and the b-pawn falls.

23. ♗d4!? ♖d7 24. ♗b3 ♗ce4 25. ♗d2 ♗c5 26. ♗b1 is another way to get some grip on the light squares. If Black is unable to move the central pawns forward, they could turn out to be weak in the end.

23... ♗fe4! 24. ♖d5

White doesn't have the time to play 24. ♖xb5, since 24...f5! leaves the g3-bishop in mortal danger and 25. h3 ♖b8 26. ♖e2 f4 27. ♗h2 ♗a4 28. ♖b1 ♗ec5 is game over-ish. To play something like 24. h3, is paramount to resignation: 24...f5 25. ♗h2 f4 26. ♗b1 ♖b7 27. ♗d2 ♗f6 and Black has the most terrible domination.

24...f5

This looks so natural and so strong. How to stop oneself from playing such a move? 24...f6! also looks nice when after 25. ♗b1 f5 we get a position similar to the one in the game. How is the sacrifice here? We would not be able to make a precise

evaluation over-the-board. 24...♖fe8! might be the most flexible move, planning on ...f5 while opening a slot for the king on f8. It seems that Black is just clearly better here.



25.♖xe5!!

Daring and genius in one move. V.Kramnik realised he was sliding into a bad situation and decided to change the course of the game, whatever the price. This is much trickier than 25.♖xd6?! ♜xd6 26.♖xe5+ ♜xe5 27.♙xe5+ ♖f6! when there is no obvious way for White to get full compensation. With no queens on the board, this would be far easier for a human to handle.

25...dxе5 26.♙xe5+



Here we must pause and try to understand why V.Kramnik made this sacrifice; what is his 'compensation'? Well, we can observe that he has a lively position, two bishops, some pawns and in combination with Black's weak king this can form a type of

compensation. The truth is that this compensation shouldn't be enough for a rook, when it comes to the 'analysis mode', but over a practical game there are many problems to be solved. In a way this type of sacrifice reminds of M.Tal; his semi-correct sacrifices, which made him famous!

26... ♖f6?!

Not a big mistake, but a step in the wrong direction. Black should find a way to exchange one of the bishops as quickly as possible. The best way to do that is 26... ♔g6! (which avoids the pins and prepares for ... ♔g8) 27. ♕d4! ♔g8! (now the price of avoiding the exchange is too high) 28. ♕xg8 (28. ♕b1 ♔h7 29. ♖xb5 ♕b3) 28... ♖xg8 29. g4!? (29. ♖xb5 g4 30. ♕e5+ ♔h7+) 29... ♖ge8 30. gxf5+ ♔h7 31. ♖c2 ♖b7 (31... ♖d7!?) 32. f6 ♖d7 Even here there are still traps to watch out for, so from a practical point of view V.Kramnik's sacrifice was brilliant.

27. ♖xb5!

Picking up a pawn, so as to make the queenside pawn majority mobile.



27... ♗ce4 28. ♕d4 ♖fd8

What to do now?

29. h3!

What a cool move. It is still not clear what Black should do, so

airing the king cannot be wrong.

29...♖b8 30.♚e2



There seem to be so many good moves for Black, but which one wins?

30...♗g8?!

30...♖e8 is what A.Karpov would have played. Over protecting the knight on e4, it gives more freedom to the rest of the pieces. 31.b4 ♗g6 32.♚b2 ♖h7 33.c4 ♖bd8 — M.Botvinnik would have liked this cne: 34.c5 and finally, Black is ready for 34...g4!

31.♗b1 ♚b7

31...♖b3 32.♗a2! ♖bb8 seems to draw, but can Black 'accept' a draw a rook up?

32.b4 ♖e8 33.c4

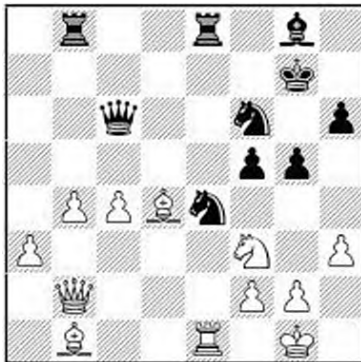


A few moves ago Black only had one problem; how to get out of the pin and get his pieces active. Now there is a second issue. The pawns are starting to look menacing.

33...♖c6?

This move allows White to get fully coordinated. The last chance for an advantage was 33...♖a6! but things are still not as clear as the engine would like you to think: 34.b5!? (34.♖b2 ♗xc4 35.♖c1 ♗d5 36.♖c7+ ♔g8 37.♗xe4 ♖xe4 38.♘h2 ♘h5 39.♘g4 ♖b7+) 34...♖d6 (34...♖xa3?! 35.♗xe4 ♖xe4 36.♖d2 ♖be8 37.♖a1) 35.♖b2 ♗xc4 36.a4 ♖a8 37.♗xe4 ♖xe4 38.♖xe4 ♖xe4 39.♘e5 ♗e6 (39...♖d8 40.♘c6) 40.b6 ♖xa4 41.♘c6 ♖xd4 42.♘xd4 ♔f7 43.b7 ♘d7 44.♘xe6 ♔xe6 45.♖g7 and White will probably get a draw.

34.♖b2



With this move Black's position goes from hard-to-handle to just worse.

34...♖bd8?!

34...♔h7! is a good chance for Black, but after 35.c5 (35.♗e5 ♖bd8 36.♘d4 ♖xc4 37.♘xf5 ♖d2 38.♘d6 ♖xb2 39.♗xb2 ♖b3 40.♗xf6 ♖xb1 41.♖xb1 ♘xd6 42.a4), Black still needs to find a few exact moves: 35...♗f7! (35...♘d7?! 36.♘d2 ♗d5 37.♘f1) 36.♘e5 ♖d5 37.♘xf7 ♖xf7 38.f3 ♘g3 39.♗e5 ♘fh5 40.♔h2 ♖d5 41.♖c3 ♘f1+ 42.♔g1 ♘fg3 43.♗xb8 ♖d4+! 44.♖xd4 ♖xe1+ 45.♔f2 ♖e2+ 46.♔g1 ♖e1+=

35.c5

35.b5 ♔d6 36.♖c1 ♜c8 37.♙xe4 ♞xe4 38.c5 ♚e7 39.c6 is even better. Black is balancing on the edge of the abyss.

35...♚e6 36.b5!?

36.♖c1! g4 37.hxg4 fxg4 38.♙xe4 ♞xd4 39.♚xd4 ♚xe4 40.♚xe4 ♞xe4 41.♜d2 ♞e2 42.♜f1+=



36...♔f8?

Black's last chance was 36...♚b3! 37.♚a1 ♔g6! 38.♙xf6 (38.b6 ♜d7 39.♖c1 ♜c8 40.c6 ♜xb6 41.♙xe4 fxe4 42.♙h8 ♚f7 43.♜e5+ ♞xe5 44.♚xe5 ♚e6=) 38...♜xf6 39.♞xe8 ♞xe8 40.♙xf5+ ♔g7 41.♜d4 and this unbalanced position seems to be in balance!

37.c6



37...g4?

This accelerates the end, but White's pawns were too advanced for a remedy to be found. The feeling is that Black was already psychologically 'destroyed'; after the rook sacrifice he felt obliged to win at any cost; a typical misfortune of the defender!

38.hxg4 fxg4 39.♙xe4! gxf3

Or 39...♖xe4 40.♗xe4 ♕xe4 41.♙g7+ ♔e7 42.♗f6#

40.♙xf6 ♜d6 41.♙g7+ ♔f7



42.♙e5

And P.Harikrishna resigned: 42...♕xe5 (42...♜dd8 43.♙xf3) 43.♙g6+. A marvelous swindle by V.Kramnik!

1-0

In the second game the sacrificed material wasn't that high; just an exchange!

Well, nowadays exchange sacrifices are spread around like mushrooms, so nothing new under the sun!

Veselin Topalov kept his opponent's king unsafe and soon delivered a deadly blow.

□ Wojtaszek Radoslaw

■ Topalov Veselin

Shamkir 2017

Notes based on those of GM Aleksandr Lenderman.

1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.e3 ♗f5



One of the many possible moves for Black here.

5.♘c3 e6 6.♘h4 ♗g6

6...♗e4 is slightly more common, but 6...♗g6 has been played more than once by V.Topalov, including in big games, such as the 2016 Candidates in Moscow, against Hikaru Nakamura.

7.♘xg6 hxg6 8.♗d3!?



8.♞b1! has been played by H.Nakamura: 8...♘bd7 9.c5 (the point of 8.♞b1. Now White's idea is to play b4 and be able to protect his space on the queenside) 9...a5 10.a3 ♗e7 11.g3 e5 12.♗g2 e4 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 ♘f8 15.b5 ♘e6 16.♗d2 0-0 17.♘a4+= White won the opening battle and then won the game after complications, Nakamura,H-Topalov,V Moscow 2016. It is certain that V.Topalov had improvements though.

8...c5!?

Quite a rare move, so probably the first small surprise for R.Wojtaszek. The only high-level game from this position was between V.Kramnik and B.Gelfand from 2005.

9. ♖b3

V.Kramnik also played this. Since the game was in 2005, it's possible that V.Topalov had even analysed this position back when he was preparing for his FIDE WC match against V.Kramnik.

9... ♜d7

So far V.Topalov had played very quickly. It was obvious that he was 'following' an already-analysed but never-played line...

10.cxd5 exd5 11.dxc5



11... ♞c6!

According to the databases, a novelty — and a very interesting, dynamic one, not to mention very good. Black is sacrificing a pawn for the initiative. Now Black has a practical edge, since he not only has the initiative, but is also probably better-prepared than his opponent in this rare territory. 11... ♞xc5 was played by B.Gelfand but he got a somewhat worse position where he might've had to suffer, had V.Kramnik played a bit more

precisely: 12. ♖b5 ♗xb5 13. ♘xb5 ♔d7 14. 0-0 ♘c6 15. ♚d1 ♕e7
 16. ♙d2 ♙b4 17. ♘c3 (17. ♙xb4+ ♘xb4 18. ♙e2+=) 17... ♚ac8 18. ♚ac1
 ♚hd8 19. a3 ♙d6 20. ♘e2 (20. ♙e2+=) 20... ♘e5 and the game was
 agreed drawn here, Kramnik, V-Gelfand, B Saint Vincent 2005.

12. ♙d2

R. Wojtaszek had his first big think here, for about 15 minutes. He had alternatives: 12. ♘a4!? (trying to hold on to the pawn) 12... ♘e4! 13. ♙xe4 dxe4, would lead to good compensation for Black, since he has annoying threats like ... ♘e5 and ... ♗g4, and he can castle quickly with ... 0-0-0, while White's pieces are uncoordinated. White's only move not to be worse now is 14. ♘c3 0-0-0 (14... f5!?) 15. ♘xe4 ♚h4 16. f3 f5 17. ♘f2 ♙xc5 and from a practical standpoint we should prefer Black, even though the position is dynamically equal. Another way is 12. ♗a3 ♗g4! 13. ♔f1 (13. 0-0?? ♚xh2 14. ♔xh2 ♗h4+ 15. ♔g1 ♘g4+; 13. g3 ♙e7) 13... ♙e7 with good compensation for the pawn.

12... ♙xc5



Now Black is able to avoid the queen trade, and therefore avoid the slightly unpleasant endgame.

13. ♚c1

13. ♘e2 might be a little bit more solid: 13... 0-0-0.

13... ♚d8

Interesting is 13...d4!? 14.♘a4 (14.♘e4 dxe3!) 14...dxe3! 15.♘xc5 exd2+ 16.♔xd2 ♚d6 17.♞he1+ ♔f8 18.♘xb7 ♚f4+ 19.♔d1 ♘e5 20.♘d6 ♚d4 21.♞xe5 ♚xd6 with very complex play. Of course this is just a sample line and not all the moves are forced here.

14.♘a4

14.♘e2 might be safer, but R.Wojtaszek is an ambitious player.

14...♚d6 15.♘c5 ♚xc5 16.♞xc5



16...d4?!

This move helped V.Topalov to win an excellent game, but perhaps objectively it's slightly inaccurate. 16...♔f8!? keeps the balance. Naturally Black doesn't want to castle since he doesn't want to give up control of the h-file. 16...g5 or 16...♘e4 are also viable alternatives.

17.♚b5?

But this move is probably asking more of the position than it can offer. White moving the same piece twice, falling behind in development and allowing an initiative is very dangerous, especially against V.Topalov. Good was 17.e4+= Black's knights don't have a good outpost square, and in the long run White's two bishops and strong centre should prove a nice advantage, while the bishop on d3 blocks the passed pawn on d4 and can't be dislodged easily. 17...♘g4 18.♞d5 ♚c7 19.h3 is better for White.

17...0-0!

Playing for the initiative.

18.♙xc6 bxc6



19.f3?!

Mistakes often come in pairs. When White played the move ♙b5, he left behind the key e4-square, and now tries to cover that mistake up by defending it. But here we have a classic situation where the cure is worse than the disease. Black no longer has ...♘e4, but now White's king is fatally weakened. 19.♖c2 still keeps White in the game: 19...♘e4! 20.♗e5! (20.♖xe4 dxe3 21.♖xe3 ♗fe8 22.0-0 ♖xe3 23.♙xe3 ♗ might also offer White drawing chances) 20...♗fe8 21.♗xe8+ ♖xe8 22.0-0 d3 23.♖d1=+, when even though Black is better with his strong passed pawn on d3, White is still in the game.

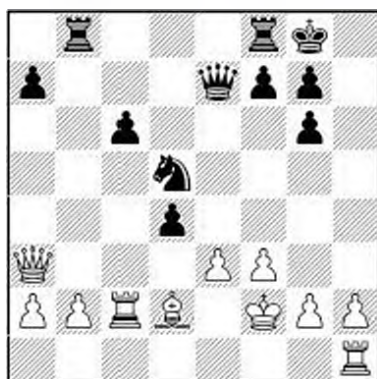
19...♗e7

19...♖b8 20.♖a3 dxe3 21.♙xe3 ♘d5 22.0-0 ♘xe3 23.♖xe3 ♖xb2 ♗ was also very promising for Black.

20.♗c2

20.♖xc6 dxe3 21.♙b4 ♗d7 22.♖d6 ♖c7 23.♖c3 ♗b8 24.♖d4 ♘d5! 25.♖xd8 ♖xd8 26.♙a5 ♘b6 ♗ is very dangerous for White. Here the e3-pawn is very strong.

20...♘d5 21.♔f2 ♝b8 22.♚a3



22...♝xb2!?

A very nice exchange sacrifice which shatters White's defences, and from here on he is under heavy pressure. The only reason we don't give this move a double exclamation mark is because objectively there were other good solutions for Black here, arguably even a bit better: 22...♚h4+! 23.g3 dxe3+ 24.♔xe3 ♚h3 would've also been very strong for Black but this isn't so obvious from afar. However, here White is kind of stuck to come up with a good plan.

23.♚xb2!

23.♚xe7?! ♝xc2 was Black's point: 24.♚e5 ♝xd2+ 25.♔g3 ♘xe3 26.♔h3 ♘xg2, when he ends up getting a rook, knight, and two pawns for the queen, and a very strong initiative against the White king. White is lost.

23...dxe3+ 24.♔xe3 ♚xe3+



25.♔g3?

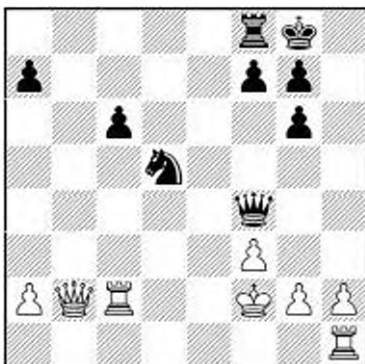
The final mistake. 25.♔f1 keeps White in the game: 25...♟f4! stopping ♜e2. Here the king looks very bad, but White can still try to defend here, for example: 26.♞c3 ♞b6! (otherwise White is fine) 27.♞b3 (27.♞b2 ♞a6+ 28.♔g1 ♟d3 29.♞b3 ♞e8) 27...♞d4! 28.♞c4! (giving back some material to get rid of the dangerous initiative) 28...♞d1+ 29.♔f2 ♟d3+ 30.♔g3 ♞xh1 31.♞xd3 ♞e1+ 32.♔h3 ♞e6+ 33.♔g3 is the best line for both sides according to Stockfish 8. Black has good winning chances of course with the extra pawn, but White can put up a good defence.

25...♞f4+

25...♞g5+ was also good: 26.♔f2 ♟f4 27.g3 (27.♔f1 ♞e8+) 27...♟d3+.

26.♔f2

26.♔h3? ♟g5 is mate in a few moves.



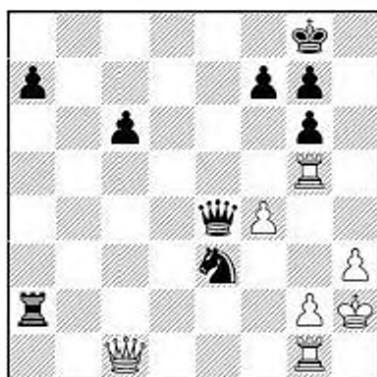
26...♖b8!

The last piece joins the fray. Without this move, Black is not even better. Now, however, his attack is unstoppable. A typical situation when three pieces attack the exposed king and the king can't defend successfully.

27.♙c1 ♗d4+ 28.♔g3 ♘e3 29.♖c5

29.♞d2 ♘f5+ 30.♔h3 ♗h4#

29...♖b2 30.♖g1 ♖xa2 31.h3 ♗d6+ 32.f4 ♗d3 33.♔h2 ♗e4 34.♖g5



34...♖c2!

And White resigned since he's about to lose the f4-pawn and Black will have both a material advantage and an unstoppable attack, which will lead to more and bigger material gains: 35.♗e1 ♗xf4+ 36.♗g3 (36.♖g3 ♘f5-+) 36...♖xg2+ (36...♘f1+ 37.♖xf1 ♗xf1-+) 37.♖xg2 ♘f1+-+

0-1

CONCLUSION

Never forget the classical values and remember that when violating them the punishment might come rudely.

To dance you need two; to create a masterpiece you need the cooperation of two again; just not both of them will feel happy in the end...

NEW YORK QUEEN SAC

In the last FIDE World Championship that was held in New York, October 2016, the last game of the match ended with an impressive queen sac.

Well, nothing too difficult or too deep, but still a nice touch to a more-or-less 'boring' match.

Here, we will examine similar cases to the nowadays so-called 'New York Queen Sac'. The main motif of this sac is that the queen is sacrificed on the third rank (h3/a3 or h6/a6), giving the opportunity to her rooks to deliver the mate.

Our first example contains only one rook, but it is still instructive:

Example 1 ○



Here is the 'guide':

1. ♖h6+! ♔xh6

1... ♔h8 2. hxg6.

2. hxg6+ ♔g5

2... ♔g7 3. ♖xh7#

3. ♖h5+! ♔xh5 4. f4+ ♔xe2

4... ♖f3+ 5. ♔xf3+ ♘xf3 6. ♖h1+ ♘h4 7. ♘f6+ ♔h6 8. ♖xh4+ ♔g7
9. ♘e8+ ♖xe8 10. ♖xh7+ ♔f6 11. ♖xf7#

5. ♘f6+ ♔h6 6. ♖h1+ ♔g7 7. ♘e8+! ♖xe8 8. ♖xh7+ ♔f6 9. ♖xf7#

1-0

The famous game mentioned above will open the series:

□ Carlsen Magnus

■ Karjakin Sergey

New York 2016 ○



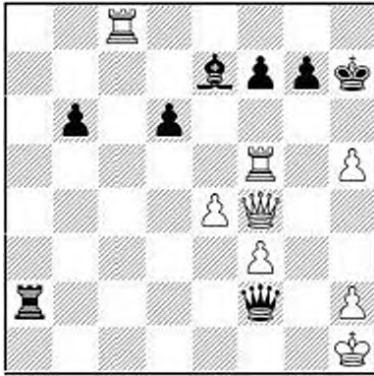
Of course White is winning here, but why not use some small tactics to finish-off the game in style?

47. ♖xf4! ♖a2+ 48. ♔h1 ♖f2

48... ♖xf4 49. ♖xf4 ♔f6 50. ♖f5 was Black's only chance, but of course White is winning here...

49. ♖c8+! ♔h7

After 49... ♔f8 White mates as well: 50. ♖xf8+ ♔xf8 51. ♖xf7+ ♔e8
52. ♖f8+ ♔d7 53. ♖f5+ ♔c6 54. ♖c8+ ♔b7 55. ♖d7+ ♔a6 56. ♖a8#



50. ♖h6+!

The end of the story! Black resigned: 50... ♔xh6 51. ♜h8# or
50... gxf6 51. ♝xf7#

1-0

The following example is the oldest predecessor I could find;
I wouldn't be surprised if I am wrong...

□ Neumann Augustin

■ Przepiorka David

Vienna 1904 ○



43. ♖xh6+! ♔xh6

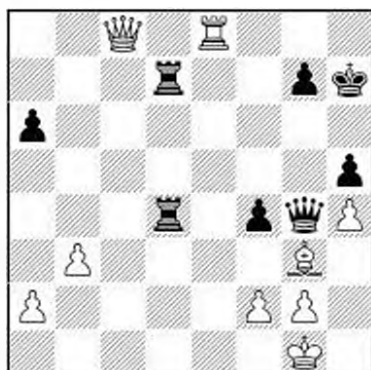
43... gxf6 44. ♜xh8#

44. ♜xh8+ ♔g5 45. ♜h5# 1-0

□ Hug Werner

■ Kavalek Lubomir

Haifa 1976 ●



Black is a rook-up and he obviously thought that sooner-or-later he would cash in the point...

35...fxg3?

Black could (and should!) mate by force here with 35...♖d1+ 36.♔h2 fxg3+ 37.fxg3, as now comes the 'known' 37...♚h3+! 38.gxh3 (38.♔xh3 ♖h1#) 38...♗7d2+ 39.♗e2 ♗xe2#

36.fxg3?

36.♗h8+ ♔g6 37.♚e8+ ♖f7 38.♚c6+ is a draw by perpetual check!

36...♚f5?

36...♖d1+! 37.♔h2 ♚h3+! would be a nice end! Over the next moves both sides overlook the combination...

37.♗f8? ♚e6?

37...♖d1+ 38.♔h2 ♚h3+!

38.♗e8? ♚f7?

38...♖d1+ 39.♔h2 ♚h3+!

39.♗f8 ♚e6 40.♗e8? ♚d5?

40...♖d1+ 41.♔h2 ♜h3+!

41.♜h8+ ♔g6 42.♞xa6+ ♝d6 43.♞c8 ♞e6 44.♞c3 ♝d3 45.♞a5 ♞e3+
46.♔h1 0-1

□ Popov Nikolay

■ Novopashin Arkady

Beltsy 1979 ○



White to move has already smelled blood...

30.♘g6+! hxg6 31.♝xf8+ ♔h7 32.♞h6+!

Black resigned: 32...♔xh6 33.♜h8# or 32...gxf6 33.♝xb7+ ♔d7
34.♝xd7+ ♘e7 35.♝xe7+ ♞f7 36.♝exf7#

1-0

□ Vyzmanavin Alexey

■ Tukmakov Vladimir

Soviet Union 1986 ♠



White seems to have lethal threats, but Black has seen deeper...

33...♖d1+ 34.♔h2 ♕h3+!

And White resigned due to 35.♔xh3 ♖h1# or 35.gxh3 ♖xf2#

0-1

The great Jan Timman was inspired as usual (!) and created two nice studies. I am copying them from the magazine 'New In Chess', with his notes:

Study 1

Timman Jan 2017

New In Chess 2017/3 ○



White mates in three moves. The key move is easy to find, at least if you know what it's all about.

1.♘b1!

Blocking the back rank and opening the way for the white queen to h6. Insufficient was 1.♖b1 in view of 1...d3! and there is no mate in two.

1...g1=♔ 2.♖h6+! gxh6

2...♗xh6 3.♖h8#

3.♖5c7# 1-0

Study 2

Timman Jan

New In Chess 2017/3 ○



J.Timman mentions that this study is based on one by the Russian composer Kalyagin from 1988.

1.♗f4 ♖xc4 2.♖a5!

A defensive move that will eventually be important for the final combination.

2...♗g5

Black has dangerous counterplay, threatening a devastating check on e7.

3.f6!

Opening the f-file.

3...♙xf6

After 3...gxf6 4.♙h4! ♙xh4 5.♘g6+! hxg6 6.♚h6+ the white queen will hoover up the board.

4.♙h4!

The open file was still blocked. The bishop sacrifice remedies this.

4...♙xh4 5.♘g6+!

Everything is becoming clear.

5...hxg6 6.♚f8+ ♔h7 7.♚h6+!

And again, one of the rooks will mate.

1-0

THE G-POINT CHECK

An easy combination to be learned is the following one:

Example 1 ○



It seems that White is in real trouble, as he is already two pawns down with some lethal threats to his king as well. But it's his turn to move, so he can execute the combination in question:

1. ♔g7+! ♚xg7 2. ♖a8+ ♚f8 3. ♖xf8#

1-0

As in every strategic or tactical concept, there is a mechanism behind it, which makes things move.

Here, the main parts of the combination, which we call mechanism, are:

1. The defending king has no escape from the 8th or 7th ranks.
2. The attacking side's queen is given with check to drive the defending bishop from its 8th rank.
3. The attacking side's rook delivers the mate on the 8th rank.

I do remember that many years ago the following game made headlines in every decent combinations' corner, for its simplicity and spectacularness:

□ Braga Fernando Alberto

■ Portisch Lajos

Mar del Plata 1982 ○



Of course White is lost; there is no question about it.

35. ♔c8

But he thought that he might have a chance threatening some nasty checks. Well, I cannot really add a question mark to this move, as any other move is losing as well, but the text makes it spectacular...

35... ♔g2+!

Actually the only winning move! White had to throw the towel in: 36. ♕xg2 ♖d1+ 37. ♕f1 ♖xf1#



0-1

Quite recently, in the annual 'Sigeman' tournament, Nigel Short

was lucky enough to have it on his dish...

□ Short Nigel

■ Blomqvist Erik

Malmö 2017 ●



Although Black is a pawn-up, his position is a mess and he cannot avoid mate by the joined white forces.

34...♕f1

A last 'try', although Black hardly threatens anything...

35.♖g4+!

35.♘e7+ ♔h8 36.♖xf7 is another way to mate, but less spectacular...

35...♔h8 36.♖g7+!

Black resigned: 36...♗xg7 37.♖b8+ ♖c8 38.♖xc8+ ♗f8 39.♖xf8#
Nigel Short commented: 'One doesn't need Viagra after a finish like this'.

1-0

After asking for help on Facebook to find more examples of this combination, games started to appear everywhere!

□ Summerscale Aaron

■ Roberts Paul

Edinburgh 2009 ●



White is two pawns up and obviously winning, but Black 'helped' him to finish-off the game quicker!

34...♔xb3?! 35.♔g7+! ♕xg7 36.♖d8+

And Black resigned due to 36...♗f8 37.♖xf8#

1-0

□ Givon Asaf

■ Wiczorek Oskar

Batumi 2010 ○



White stands much better here, but as both kings are unsafe, blunders can appear at any time!

38.♔f8?

And that's a decisive one! After 38.♖a8! Black would be in trouble.

38...♚b2+!

And White resigned after realising the cruel truth: 39.♙xb2 ♜g1+ 40.♚f1 ♜xf1+ 41.♙c1 ♜xc1#

0-1

□ Spivack Simon

■ Astaneh Lopez Alex

London 2010 ○



Black is on the attack, but White felt that he could create some counterplay..

32.♜xe7+ ♔g8!

32...♙xe7? would lose immediately to 33.♜xe7+.

33.♙f1 ♙xe7 34.♜xe7?!

White's only chance was to be found in 34.♚xe7 ♚xe7 35.♜xe7 ♜d1 36.♔g1 ♜h3+ 37.♔g2 ♜xf2 38.♜e3 ♜h3+ 39.♔g3, although of course his position would still be losing.

34...♚g2+!

Resigned: 35.♙xg2 ♜d1+ 36.♜e1 ♜xe1+ 37.♙f1 ♜xf1#

0-1

□ Admiraal Miguoei

■ Vedder Henk

Belgium 2017 ●

A typical lost position for Black; the f5-knight is a monster compared to the 'poor' f8-bishop...



37...♙xd5?!

This loses easily. Black had to try to fight with 37...♙b2 38.♞e4 (38.♞e8? ♙b1+ 39.♔g2 ♙xf5 40.♞xf8+ ♔g7) 38...♞c5 39.♘e3 ♙b8 40.♔g2+-

38.♙xf6+ ♔g8 39.♙g5+ ♔h8 40.♙g7+!

And, as usual, Black resigned: 40...♙xg7 41.♞e8+ ♙f8 42.♞xf8#

1-0

□ Collas Silvia

■ Schoucair Henry

Rochefort 2005 ○



27. ♖xg7+?!

Of course here 27. ♘xg7 wins on the spot, but White wanted to make it spectacular! After the text move Black resigned: 27... ♙xg7 28. ♚d8+ ♜e8 29. ♝xe8+ ♞xe8 30. ♞d7±

1-0

THE PONY EXPRESS

The knight is a tricky piece, especially when it is close to where the action is, meaning it is best used in areas of the board where the opponent's pieces are clustered or close together.

As we perfectly well know, pieces are generally more powerful if placed near the centre of the board, but this is particularly true for a knight.

A knight on the edge of the board attacks only three or four squares (depending on its exact location) and a knight in the corner only two.

The mnemonic phrases 'A knight on the rim is grim' or 'A knight on the rim is dim' are often used in chess instruction to reflect this principle.

But things are quite different when the opponent's king is located near the knight! Especially in cases when both knights can co-operate to deliver deadly kisses. Then the pony express comes by!

□ Enevoldsen Jens

■ Nimzowitsch Aron

Copenhagen 1933



Black is active on the queenside but without concrete threats. White's space advantage is good and he can create an attack. Well, A. Nimzowitsch was never famous for his tactical abilities but for his strategy, so it is not a surprise that he underestimated White's potential attack.

22. ♖g4! bxc3 23. bxc3 ♜a3

Too optimistic...

24. ♖xa3!

The white rook is not a valuable piece for the attack, while the black bishop is a good defender, so this exchange sacrifice is fully justified.

24... ♞xa3

24... ♖b2 25. ♞h6! ♖xa3 26. ♜h5+-

25. ♜h5

All White's pieces are on the attack now!

25... ♜g6 26. ♜gf6+! ♔h8

26... gxf6 27. ♜xf6+ ♕g7 28. ♖h5+-



27. ♜xg7!

The white knights are dancing around the black king, capturing pawns which could defend him!

27... ♞g8 28. ♜xh7!

The show continues!

28...♙xg7

28...♖xg7 29.♗f6 ♖h7 30.♗xh7 ♙xh7 31.♚h5+ and mate follows.

29.♚h5 f5 30.exf6+ ♙f7 31.♗g5+ ♙xf6 32.♚f3+ ♙e7 33.♚f7+ ♙d8
34.♚xg8+ ♗f8



And White won two pawns; more to come soon!

35.♗h7

The white knight continues its lethal march!

35...♚b2 36.♗xf8 ♚xc2 37.♗xe6+ ♙e7 38.♗g5+ ♙d6 39.♚f8+! ♙c6

39...♙xe6 40.♚f6#

40.♚xa3 1-0

□ Ftacnik Lubomir

■ Cvitan Ognjen

Germany 1997

1.d4 ♗f6 2.♗f3 g6 3.c4 ♗g7 4.♗c3 0-0 5.e4 d6 6.♗e2 e5 7.0-0 ♗c6
8.d5 ♗e7 9.♗d2 ♗e8 10.b4 f5 11.c5 ♗f6 12.f3 f4 13.♗c4 g5 14.a4
♗g6 15.♗a3 ♖f7 16.b5 dxc5 17.♗xc5 h5 18.a5 g4 19.b6 g3 20.♙h1
♗h7 21.d6 ♚h4 22.♗g1 ♗h3

□ NN

■ Blackburne Joseph Henry

Great Britain 1871

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙c4 ♙c5 4.0-0 ♘f6 5.d3 d6 6.h3 ♘e7 7.♙g5 c6
8.♙e3 ♙b6 9.♘c3 ♘g6 10.♚d2 ♙e6 11.♙b3 0-0 12.♞ad1 ♚d7
13.♘h2 ♙xh3 14.♙xb6 ♙xg2 15.♔xg2 ♘f4+ 16.♔h1 axb6 17.f3
♘6h5 18.♞f2 ♘g3+ 19.♔g1 ♚h3 20.d4



Black's attack is not just tremendous; it leads to a forced
knightmare!

20...♚g2+! 21.♞xg2 ♘h3# 0-1

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Piluso

Internet Chess Club 2013

1.c4 c6 2.♘f3 d5 3.e3 ♘f6 4.b3 ♙g4 5.h3 ♙h5 6.♙b2 e6 7.♙e2
♘bd7 8.0-0 ♙d6 9.cxd5 exd5 10.♘d4 ♙xe2 11.♚xe2 ♚c7 12.♘f5 0-
0 13.♘c3 ♞fe8 14.♞ac1 ♙f8 15.♚f3 ♘e5 16.♚g3 ♞ac8



White's pride is the f5-knight but it needs help to be effective.

17.f4

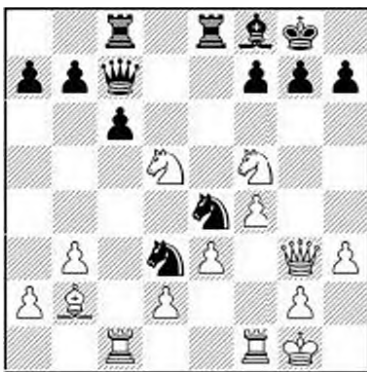
Maybe not the best, but keep in mind that this was a 3-minute game and accuracy wasn't easy. White wants to open the long diagonal.

17...♘d3?

A difficult move not to be played; temptation is strong! Black should defend with 17...♘g6!

18.♘xd5! ♘e4

18...♘xc1 loses to 19.♘xf6+ ♔h8 20.♚h4. But now all four knights attack something!



19.♙xg7! ♚e6 20.♘xc7 ♘xg3 21.♘xe6 ♘xf1?

21...♗e2+ 22.♔h2 fxe6 23.♕xf8 exf5 24.♖ce1 ♗xe1 25.♖xe1 ♗xf4
 26.exf4 ♗xf8 27.♖e5+-

22.♗h6# 1-0

□ Clemenz Hermann

■ Eisenschmidt Elen

Dorpat 1890

1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗c6 3.♖c4 ♖c5 4.b4 ♖xb4 5.c3 ♖c5 6.d4 exd4
 7.cxd4 ♖b6 8.0-0 d6 9.♗c3 ♖d7 10.e5 dxe5 11.♖e1 ♗ge7 12.♗g5
 ♖e6 13.♖xe6 fxe6 14.♗xe6 ♗d6 15.♗xg7+ ♔f8 16.♗g4 ♖xd4
 17.♗e4 ♗b4



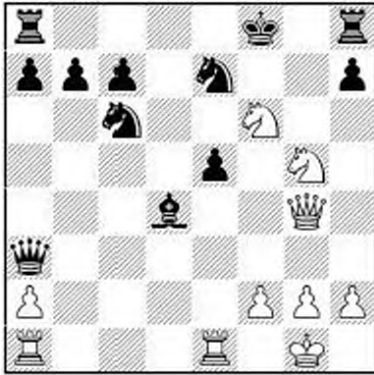
A difficult life for the black king...

18.♗e6+ ♔e8 19.♗f6+ ♔f7 20.♗g5+ ♔f8

20...♔xf6 21.♗e6+ ♔g7 22.♗f7+ ♔h6 23.♗e6++-

21.♖a3 ♗xa3?

The only way to prolong the fight was with 21...♕xf2+ 22.♔xf2
 ♗xg4 23.♗xg4+-



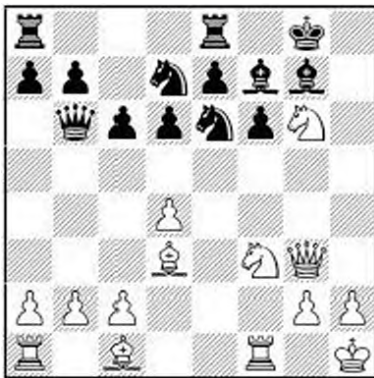
22. ♖e6! ♜d8 23. ♜f7+! ♜xf7 24. ♜e6# 1-0

□ Lechtynsky Jiri

■ Kubicek Jaromir

Prague 1968

1.e4 d6 2.d4 ♞f6 3.♞c3 g6 4.f4 ♟g7 5.♞f3 0-0 6.♟d3 c6 7.0-0 ♜b6
 8.♞h1 ♟g4 9.e5 ♞e8 10.♞e2 ♞d7 11.♜e1 f6 12.e6 ♟xe6 13.f5 ♟f7
 14.♞f4 ♞c7 15.fxg6 hxg6 16.♞xg6 ♜fe8 17.♜g3 ♞e6



White is on top and has a mating attack.

18. ♞gh4! ♟h5 19. ♞f5 ♞f7 20. ♜e1! ♞df8 21. ♜xg7+

Black resigned: 21... ♞xg7 22. ♞h6#

1-0

□ Prince Andrey Dadian of Mingrelia

■ Bitcham M.

Zugdidi 1892

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙c4 ♘f6 4.d4 exd4 5.0-0 ♘xe4 6.♞e1 d5
7.♙xd5 ♚xd5 8.♘c3 ♚c4 9.♞xe4+ ♙e6 10.♙g5 ♙c5 11.♘d2 ♚a6
12.♘b3 ♙b6 13.♘d5 h6



The nightmare begins!

14.♘c5! ♚b5 15.♞xe6+ ♔f8

15...fxe6 16.♚h5+ ♔f8 17.♘xe6+ ♔g8 18.♘f6+ gxf6 19.♚g6#

16.♘d7+ ♔g8 17.♚g4! h5



18.♘5f6+! gxf6 19.♙h6+ hxg4 20.♘xf6# 1-0

□ Smith J.

■ Derrickson George

Philadelphia 1860

1.e4 e5 2.♗c4 ♘f6 3.♘f3 ♘c6 4.0-0 ♗c5 5.d3 d6 6.♗g5 ♗g4 7.h3 h5
8.hxg4 hxg4 9.♘h2 g3



10.♘f3?

White would be fine after the obvious 10.♘g4 ♘xg4 11.♖xg4
gxf2+ 12.♗xf2 ♕d7 13.♗f3.

10...♘g4! 11.♗xd8 ♗xf2+ 12.♗xf2 gxf2+ 13.♔f1 ♖h1+ 14.♔e2 ♖xd1
15.♘fd2

How else to stop the new black queen on f1?

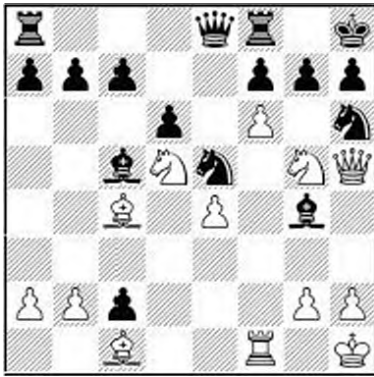
15...♘d4+! 16.♔xd1 ♘e3+ 17.♔c1 ♘e2# 0-1

□ Tarrasch Siegbert

■ Romberg

Nuremberg 1893

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.d4 exd4 4.♗c4 ♗c5 5.♘g5 ♘h6 6.♖h5 0-0 7.f4
♖e8 8.0-0 d3+ 9.♔h1 dxc2 10.♘c3 d6 11.f5 ♘e5 12.♘d5 ♔h8 13.f6
♗g4



Black was a weak player and S.Tarrasch creates a nice motif!

14.fxg7+ ♖xg7 15.♖xh6+! ♖xh6 16.♗e6+ ♖h5 17.♗df4+ ♖h6

17...♗h4 18.g3#

18.♗e2+ ♖g6 19.♖f6+! ♖xf6 20.♗g5+ ♖g6 21.♗2f4# 1-0

□ Hodgson Julian

■ Mahia Gustavo

Internet 2016

1.d4 f5 2.♗g5 c5 3.dxc5 ♗a6 4.e4 fxe4 5.♗c3 ♗xc5 6.♗c4 ♖b6?!

A dubious novelty. Black has also tried 6...♖a5 7.♗d2 ♗f6 8.♗xe4 ♖c7 9.♗xf6+ gxf6 10.♗e3+= Benjamin,J-De Fotis,G New York 1985, and also 6...♗f6?! 7.♗xf6 exf6 (7...gxf6? 8.♖h5#) 8.♖d5 ♖e7 9.0-0-0 a6 10.♗h3±

7.♗d5! ♖c6 8.♗b5! ♖g6 9.♗h3 ♗e6



10. ♖hf4! ♜xg5 11. ♖xe6 ♜xg2 12. ♖dc7+

Accurate was 12. ♜h5+ g6 13. ♖dc7+ ♔f7 14. ♖d8+ ♔g7 15. ♖e8#

12... ♔f7 13. ♜h5+ g6

13... ♔f6 14. ♖e8+ ♔xe6 15. ♖c4+ d5 16. ♜xd5#

14. ♖d8+ ♔g7 15. ♖e8# 1-0

CONCLUSION

'Knightmares' are awful; beware and avoid them; otherwise you will appear in my next survey! And believe me; you wouldn't like it at all.

One method is particularly common and involves: check with the knight, then move the knight away to deliver a double check from the queen and knight, and then sacrifice the queen to force the rook (or other opposing piece) next to the king, then mate with the knight.

This technique is so common as to have its own name: 'Philidor's Mate' or 'Philidor's Legacy', after François-André Danican Philidor.

This is something of a misnomer, however, as it is earlier described in Luis Ramirez Lucena's 1497 text on chess, 'Repetición de Amores e Arte de Axedrez', which predates F.Philidor by several hundred years.

Keep in mind that an enemy piece is decoyed when it is lured to a position allowing a trap or a winning combination. The smothered mate is another example of decoy.

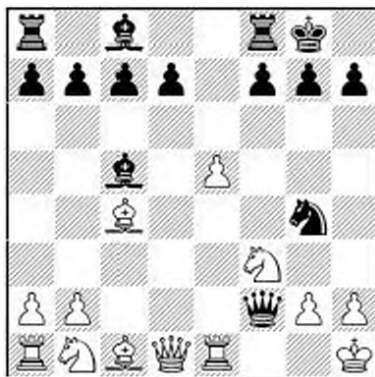
The concepts of deflection and decoy are often confused, but there is a clear difference between them.

□ NN

■ Greco Gioacchino

Italy 1620

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙c4 ♙c5 4.0-0 ♗f6 5.♖e1 0-0 6.c3 ♚e7 7.d4 exd4 8.e5 ♗g4 9.cxd4 ♗xd4 10.♗xd4 ♚h4 11.♗f3 ♚xf2+ 12.♔h1



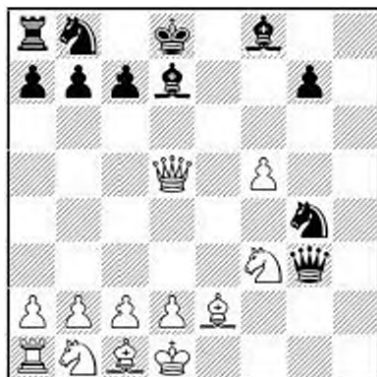
12...♚g1+ 13.♗xg1 ♗f2# 0-1

□ NN

■ Greco Gioacchino

Italy 1625

1.e4 e5 2.f4 f5 3.exf5 ♖h4+ 4.g3 ♜e7 5.♚h5+ ♔d8 6.fxe5 ♜xe5+
7.♙e2 ♘f6 8.♞f3 d5 9.g4 h5 10.h3 hxg4 11.hxg4 ♝xh1 12.♞xh1
♞g3+ 13.♔d1 ♘xg4 14.♞xd5+ ♙d7 15.♘f3



15...♘f2+ 16.♔e1 ♘d3+ 17.♔d1 ♜e1+ 18.♘xe1 ♘f2#

0-1

These two games of the great Gioacchino Greco were the first to be recorded with the theme of the smothered mate, long before F.Philidor presented it.

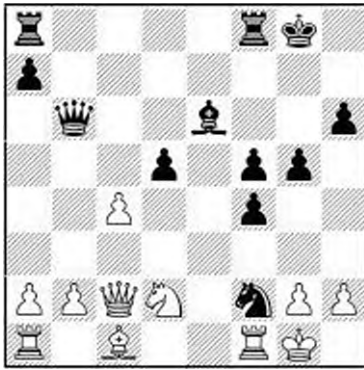
But let's see how another great of those times, P.Morphy, handled it:

□ McConnell James

■ Morphy Paul

New Orleans 1849

1.e4 e5 2.f4 exf4 3.♘f3 g5 4.♙c4 ♙g7 5.d3 h6 6.0-0 ♘f6 7.c3 b5
8.♙xb5 c6 9.♙c4 d5 10.exd5 cxd5 11.♞e2+ ♙e6 12.♙b3 0-0 13.d4
♘e4 14.♙c2 f5 15.♘bd2 ♘c6 16.c4 ♙xd4+ 17.♘xd4 ♘xd4 18.♞d3
♞b6 19.♔h1 ♘xc2 20.♞xc2 ♘f2+ 21.♔g1



21...♖h3+ 22.♔h1 ♜g1+ 23.♞xg1 ♜f2# 0-1

□ Morphy Paul

■ NN

New Orleans 1856

1.e4 e5 2.f4 exf4 3.♗c4 ♜h4+ 4.♔f1 g5 5.♜c3 ♗g7 6.d4 ♜c6 7.♜f3 ♜h5 8.♜d5 ♔d8 9.c3 ♜f6 10.♜xf6 ♗xf6 11.e5 ♗g7 12.h4 f6 13.♔g1 g4 14.♜h2 fxe5 15.♜xg4 exd4 16.♗xf4 ♞f8 17.♗g5+ ♜e7 18.♞e2 ♞e8



19.♜e5 ♞xe2 20.♜f7# 1-0

□ Morphy Paul

■ Bryan Thomas Jefferson

New York 1859

1.e4 e5 2.♜f3 ♜c6 3.♗c4 ♗c5 4.b4 ♗xb4 5.c3 ♗c5 6.0-0 d6 7.d4

♖b6 8.dxe5 dxe5 9.♚b3 ♜f6 10.♙b5 ♙e6 11.♚a4 ♜ge7 12.♙g5 ♜g6
 13.♙xe7 ♜xe7 14.♙xc6 bxc6 15.♜xe5 ♜f6 16.♜xc6+ ♜f8 17.e5
 ♜g5 18.h4 ♜g4



19.♚a3+ ♜g8 20.♜e7+ ♜f8 21.♜g6+ ♜g8 22.♜f8+ ♜xf8 23.♜e7#

1-0

□ Morphy Paul

■ Schrufer

Paris 1859

1.e4 e5 2.♜f3 ♜c6 3.♙c4 ♜f6 4.d4 exd4 5.0-0 ♜xe4 6.♙e1 d5
 7.♙xd5 ♜xd5 8.♜c3 ♜h5 9.♜xe4 ♙e6 10.♜eg5 ♙b4



11.♜xe6+ fxe6 12.♜xe6 ♜f7 13.♜fg5 ♜e7 14.♜e2 ♙d6 15.♜xg7+
 ♜d7 16.♜g4+ ♜d8 17.♜f7+ ♜xf7 18.♙g5+ ♙e7 19.♜e6+ ♜c8
 20.♜c5+ ♜b8



21. ♖d7+ ♜c8 22. ♜b6+ ♜b8 23. ♚c8+ ♚xc8 24. ♜d7# 1-0

And after the two old greats, we will examine some more examples, which are useful to keep in mind:

- Saalbach August
- Pollmaecher Hermann
- Leipzig 1861

1. e4 c5 2. ♘f3 e6 3. ♘c3 ♘e7 4. d4 f5 5. d5 fxe4 6. ♘xe4 ♘xd5 7. ♘e5 g6 8. ♚f3 ♚c7 9. ♚f7+ ♜d8 10. ♙g5+ ♘e7



11. ♚e8+ ♜xe8 12. ♘f6+ ♜d8 13. ♘f7# 1-0

- Capon C.H.
- Taylor J.O.H.
- Norwich 1873

1. e4 e5 2. ♘f3 ♘c6 3. c4 ♙c5 4. ♘c3 ♙d4 5. ♘b5 d6 6. ♘bxd4 exd4

7.b3 ♔g4 8.h3 ♔xf3 9.♚xf3 ♘e5 10.♚g3 ♘f6 11.♔e2 ♘xe4 12.♚xg7
 ♚h4 13.0-0 d3 14.♔xd3 ♘f3+ 15.♔h1



15...♚xf2 16.♚xh8+ ♔d7 17.♚g7 ♚g1+ 18.♚xg1 ♘f2# 0-1

□ Chigorin Mikhail

■ Solov Alexander

Moscow 1884 ○



45.♚xd8+ ♘xd8 46.♔c7# 1-0

□ Blackburne Joseph Henry

■ Thomson

Glasgow 1885 ○



30. ♖e5+ ♜a8 31. ♘c7+ 1-0

□ Bird / Dobell

■ NN

London 1886

1.e4 e5 2.f4 exf4 3.♘f3 g5 4.♘c3 g4 5.♘e5 ♚h4+ 6.g3 fxg3 7.♚xg4 g2+ 8.♚xh4 gxh1=♚ 9.♚h5 ♙e7 10.♘xf7 ♘f6



11. ♘d6+ ♜d8 12. ♚e8+ ♝xe8 13. ♘f7# 1-0

□ Mason James

■ NN

London 1900

1.e4 e5 2.f4 ♙c5 3.♘f3 d6 4.c3 ♙g4 5.♙c4 ♘c6 6.d4 exd4 7.0-0 dxc3+ 8.♔h1 ♘d4 9.♘xc3 ♙xf3 10.gxf3 ♘e7 11.♙e3 ♘e6 12.f5 ♙xe3 13.fxe6 0-0 14.exf7+ ♔h8 15.f4 ♘g6 16.♘d5 ♙c5 17.b4 ♙b6

18.f5 ♖e5 19.♚h5 ♚d7 20.♗f4 ♚xf7



21.♚xh7+ ♔xh7 22.♗h4+ ♔g8 23.♖e7# 1-0

□ Bernstein Ossip

■ Metger Johannes

Ostend 1907

1.c4 e5 2.♖c3 ♖f6 3.g3 d5 4.cxd5 ♖xd5 5.♖f3 ♖c6 6.♗g2 ♖b6 7.0-0 ♗e7 8.a3 ♗e6 9.d3 0-0 10.b4 f6 11.♗b2 ♚c8 12.♗c1 ♗d8 13.♖e4 ♖c4 14.♚c2 ♖xb2 15.♚xb2 ♗h3 16.♗xh3 ♚xh3 17.b5 ♖a5 18.♚a2+ ♔h8 19.♗xc7 ♗d7



20.♖eg5 fxg5 21.♗xd7 ♚xd7 22.♖xe5 1-0

□ Hallmann H.

■ Schneider W.

Correspondence 1931

1.e4 e5 2.♘c3 ♘f6 3.♙c4 ♙b4 4.d3 d5 5.exd5 ♙xc3+ 6.bxc3 ♘xd5
7.♚h5 0-0 8.♘f3 ♘c6 9.♙a3 ♞e8 10.♘g5 ♘f6



11.♚xf7+ ♔h8 12.♚g8+ ♞xg8 13.♘f7# 1-0

□ Koltanowski Georges

■ Salazar J.

Ciudad Guatemala 1940

1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 e6 3.e3 d5 4.♙d3 ♙e7 5.♘bd2 ♘bd7 6.0-0 0-0
7.♚e2 ♞e8 8.e4 dxe4 9.♘xe4 c5 10.c3 b6 11.♘e5 ♙b7 12.♘xf7 ♚c7
13.♘fg5 ♙xe4 14.♙xe4 ♘xe4 15.♚xe4 ♘f6 16.♚xe6+ ♔h8



17.♘f7+ ♔g8 18.♘h6+ ♔h8 19.♚g8+ ♞xg8 20.♘f7# 1-0

□ Najdorf Miguel

■ NN

Rafaela 1942

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.♗f3 a6 5.cxd5 ♗xd5 6.e4 ♗xc3
 7.bxc3 ♙e7 8.♙d3 0-0 9.0-0 c5 10.♚e2 cxd4 11.cxd4 ♙e8 12.♙d1
 ♗c6 13.♙b2 b5 14.♙ac1 ♙b7 15.d5 exd5 16.exd5 ♗b4 17.♙e4
 ♗xa2 18.♗e5 ♗b4 19.♙xh7+ ♗f8 20.♚h5 ♙xd5



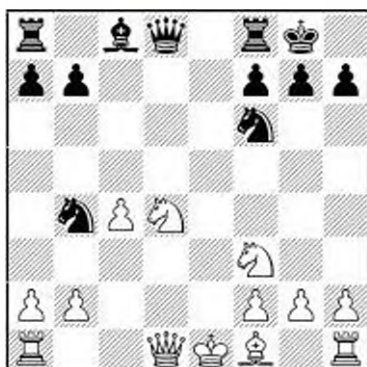
21.♙xd5 ♚xd5 22.♚xf7+ ♚xf7 23.♗d7# 1-0

□ Lasker Edward

■ Horowitz Israel Albert

New York 1946

1.d4 ♗f6 2.♗f3 d5 3.e3 c5 4.c4 cxd4 5.♗xd4 e5 6.♗f3 ♗c6 7.♗c3
 d4 8.exd4 exd4 9.♗b5 ♙b4+ 10.♙d2 0-0 11.♙xb4 ♗xb4 12.♗bxd4



12...♚a5 13.♗d2 ♚e5+ 14.♗e2 ♗d3#

White can't prevent the smothered mate because he will lose his knight, White is so smothered... E.Lasker did not compete in

the 1946 USA Championship, in which Horowitz finished 6th, so this game may have been either a club game or an offhand game.

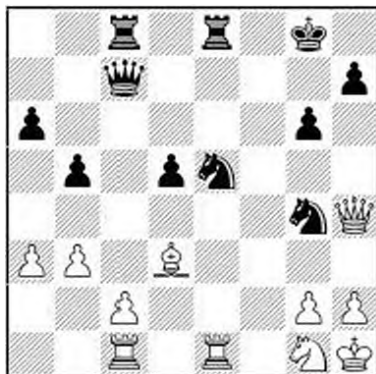
0-1

□ Slade Ronald Augustus

■ Hooper David Vincent

Bristol 1947

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♗f6 5.♗c3 d6 6.♙e2 e6 7.0-0
♙e7 8.♖h1 a6 9.f4 ♗c7 10.♙f3 ♙d7 11.♗de2 0-0 12.b3 b5 13.a3
♗ac8 14.♙b2 ♗fd8 15.♗c1 ♗a5 16.♗e1 ♗e8 17.e5 ♙c6 18.♗e4 ♙xe4
19.♙xe4 d5 20.♙d3 g6 21.♗f3 ♗c6 22.♗h3 f5 23.exf6 ♙xf6 24.♙xf6
♗xf6 25.♗e3 ♗e8 26.♗g1 e5 27.fxe5 ♗xe5 28.♗h4 ♗fg4 29.♗ee1



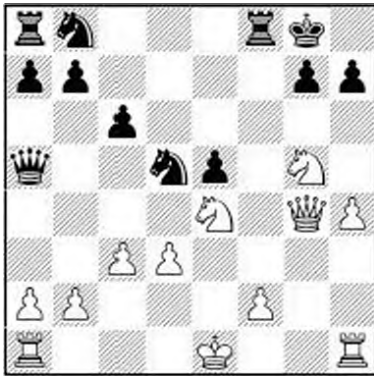
29...♗xd3 30.cxd3 ♗xh2+ 31.♗xh2 ♗f2# 0-1

□ Bloodgood Claude Frizzel

■ Evans Bill

Norfolk 1961

1.g4 d5 2.♙g2 c6 3.g5 e5 4.h4 ♙d6 5.d3 ♙e6 6.e4 ♗e7 7.♗d2 0-0
8.♙h3 ♙xh3 9.♗xh3 f5 10.gxf6 ♗xf6 11.exd5 ♗xd5 12.♗e4 ♗f7
13.♙g5 ♙e7 14.♗g4 ♗a5+ 15.c3 ♙xg5 16.♗hxg5 ♗f8



17. ♖e6+ ♔h8 18. ♜f7+ ♔g8 19. ♜h6+ ♔h8 20. ♚g8+ ♝xg8 21. ♜f7# 1-0

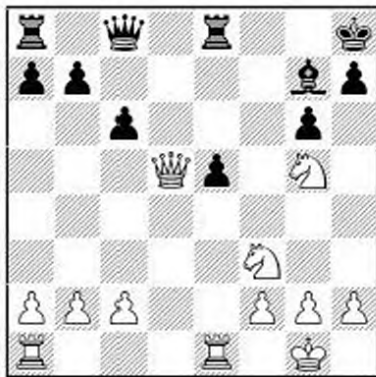
□ Robatsch Karl
 ■ Bisguier Arthur Bernard
 Hastings 1961 ●



38... ♚g1+ 0-1

□ Vepkhvishvili Varlam
 ■ Magalashvili Dimitri
 Tbilisi 1966

1.e4 d6 2.d4 g6 3. ♘c3 ♗g7 4. ♗g5 ♜d7 5. ♜f3 ♜gf6 6. ♗c4 0-0 7.e5
 dxe5 8.dxe5 ♜g4 9.e6 fxe6 10. ♗xe6+ ♔h8 11. ♗xg4 ♜c5 12. ♗xc8
 ♚xc8 13.0-0 ♝e8 14. ♝e1 e5 15. ♚d5 ♜e6 16. ♜e4 ♜xg5 17. ♜exg5 c6



18. ♖f7+ ♔g8 19. ♖h6+ ♔h8 20. ♗g8+ ♝xg8 21. ♖f7# 1-0

□ Unzicker Wolfgang

■ Sarapu Ortvin

Siegen 1970

1. e4 c5 2. ♖f3 ♖f6 3. e5 ♗d5 4. ♗c3 e6 5. ♗xd5 exd5 6. d4 ♗c6
 7. dxc5 ♙xc5 8. ♗xd5 ♗b6 9. ♙c4 ♙xf2+ 10. ♔e2 0-0 11. ♝f1 ♙c5
 12. ♗g5 ♗d4+ 13. ♔d1 ♗e6 14. ♗e4 d6 15. exd6 ♙xd6 16. ♗xd6 ♝d8
 17. ♙f4 ♗xf4



18. ♗xf7+ ♔h8 19. ♗g8+ 1-0

This was exactly how the game Kharchenko Boris-Litvak Mikhail, Alushta 2007 was played!

□ Sveshnikov Evgeny

■ Ivanov Igor Vasilievich

Minsk 1976 ○



33. ♖d6+ ♜g8 34. ♗e7+ ♜f8 35. ♗xg6+ ♜g8 36. ♚f8+ ♝xf8 37. ♗e7#
1-0

□ Hendriks Richard

■ Welling Gerard

Sittard 1977 ●



34... ♚e3+ 35. ♜h1 ♗f2+ 36. ♜g1 ♗h3+ 37. ♜h1 ♚g1+ 38. ♗xg1 ♗f2#
0-1

□ Murey Jacob

■ Mortensen Erling

Randers 1982

1. c4 ♗f6 2. ♗c3 g6 3. e4 d6 4. d4 ♗g7 5. f3 0-0 6. ♗e3 e5 7. ♗ge2 c6
8. ♚d2 exd4 9. ♗xd4 d5 10. cxd5 cxd5 11. e5 ♗e8 12. f4 f6 13. ♗f3

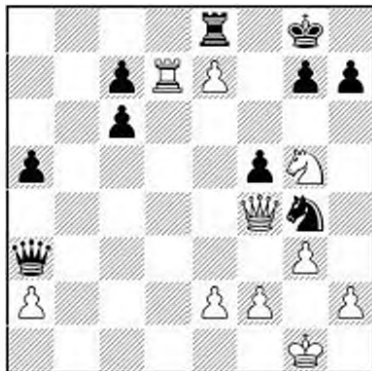
♖c7 14.0-0-0 fxe5 15.♗c4 ♘h8 16.♗xd5 ♗xd5 17.♞xd5 ♞c7
 18.♗xe5 ♗f5 19.♗c5 ♗d7



20.♞g8+ 1-0

□ Timman Jan
 ■ Short Nigel
 Tilburg 1990

1.d4 e6 2.c4 f5 3.g3 ♗f6 4.♗g2 ♗e7 5.♗f3 d5 6.0-0 0-0 7.b3 ♗d7
 8.♗a3 ♗c6 9.♞c1 a5 10.♗xe7 ♞xe7 11.♗c3 ♗e8 12.♞e3 dxc4
 13.bxc4 ♗d8 14.♗fd1 ♗g4 15.♞f4 ♗f7 16.♗ab1 e5 17.dxe5 ♗xd1+
 18.♗xd1 ♞c5 19.♗g5 ♗xc4 20.♗d5 ♗d8 21.e6 ♗xd5 22.♗xd5 ♞a3
 23.♗d7 ♗c6 24.♗xc6 bxc6 25.e7 ♗e8



26.♞c4+ ♘h8 27.♗f7+ ♘g8 28.♗h6+ ♘h8 29.♞g8+ ♗xg8 30.♗f7# 1-0

□ Grischuk Alexander
■ Ponomariov Ruslan
Torshavn 2000

1.e4 d6 2.e5 d5 3.d4 d6 4.f3 g6 5.c4 b6 6.b3 g7 7.a4 a5
8.g5 e6 9.f4 dxe5 10.fxe5 c5 11.c3 cxd4 12.0-0 0-0 13.cxd4 c6
14.f3 f6 15.c3 fxe5 16.g5 d7 17.dxe5 xe5 18.xe5 xf1+
19.xf1 d4+ 20.h1 xe5 21.d8 c5 22.e4 b4 23.g5 h8
24.f7 d7 25.xe6 xd8



26.f7# 1-0

□ Larios Crespo Manuel
■ Salvador Lopez Daniel
Albacete 2001

1.e4 d5 2.exd5 xd5 3.c3 a5 4.d4 f6 5.d2 c6 6.c4 g4 7.f3
f5 8.ge2 e6 9.g3 g6 10.e2 b6 11.0-0-0 e7 12.f4 c7
13.de1 b5 14.xb5 cxb5 15.xb5+ f8 16.f5 exf5 17.f3 f4
18.b1 xc2+ 19.a1 c6 20.xf4 c8 21.c1 xd4 22.b7



22...♙b1+ 23.♞xb1 ♘c2# 0-1

□ Bischoff Klaus

■ Mueller Karsten

Hoeckendorf 2004

1.c4 c6 2.♘f3 d5 3.e3 ♘f6 4.♘c3 e6 5.d4 ♘bd7 6.♙c2 ♙d6 7.b3 e5
 8.♙b2 e4 9.♘d2 a6 10.♙e2 ♙e7 11.0-0 b5 12.f3 exf3 13.♙xf3
 bxc4 14.bxc4 ♙a3 15.c5 ♙xb2+ 16.♙xb2 0-0 17.♞he1 ♙d8 18.e4
 dxe4 19.♘dx e4 ♘d5 20.♘xd5 cxd5 21.♘d6 ♘f6 22.h3 ♙e6 23.♙c3
 ♙c7 24.♙a1 ♞fb8 25.♞b1 ♙c6 26.♞b3 ♙a4 27.♙d1 ♞xb3 28.♙xb3
 ♙a3 29.♞e3 ♞d8 30.♙e1 ♞b8



31.♞xe6 fxe6 32.♙xe6+ ♙h8 33.♘f7+ ♙g8 34.♘h6+ ♙h8 35.♙g8+
 ♘xg8 36.♘f7# 1-0

□ Duron Godoy Sari Esther

■ Garcia Castro Veronica

Mallorca 2004

1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 d6 3.♞c3 ♟f6 4.♙c4 g6 5.d4 cxd4 6.♞xd4 ♙g7 7.♟f3
♞c6 8.0-0 0-0 9.♙g5 ♙d7 10.♚d2 ♜e8 11.♞fe1 a6 12.♙h6 ♙h8
13.♞g5 ♞e5 14.♚e2 ♟fg4 15.f4 ♞xc4 16.♚xc4



16...♚b6+ 17.♞h1 ♞f2+ 18.♞g1 ♞h3+ 19.♞h1 ♚g1+ 20.♞xg1 ♞f2#
0-1

□ Lanka Zigurds

■ Radjabov Teimour

Mainz 2005 ●



51...♚g1+ 52.♞xg1 ♞f2# 0-1

□ Visser Yge

■ Speelman Jonathan

London 2006 ●



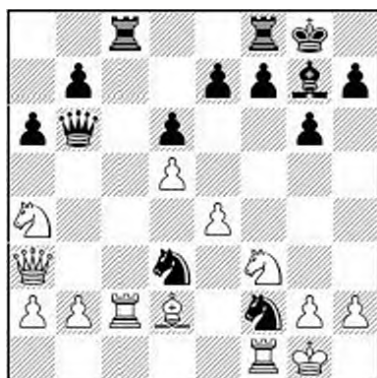
27...♔g1+ 28.♖xg1 ♕f2# 0-1

□ NN

■ McCracken Terry

Internet 2007

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.c3 ♘c6 4.d4 cxd4 5.cxd4 g6 6.d5 ♘b8 7.♘c3
♙g7 8.♙b5+ ♙d7 9.♗a4 ♘f6 10.0-0 a6 11.♙xd7+ ♘bxd7 12.♙e3 0-0
13.♞ac1 ♞c8 14.♞fd1 ♘g4 15.♙d2 ♘c5 16.♗a3 ♘d3 17.♞c2 ♘gxf2
18.♞f1 ♗b6 19.♘a4



19...♘h3+ 20.♔h1 ♗g1+ 0-1

□ Disawal Vishwas

■ Anshuman M.

Nagpur 2008

1.e4 c5 2.f4 d6 3.♖b5+ ♔d7 4.♖xd7+ ♜xd7 5.♞f3 g6 6.0-0 ♗g7 7.d3
♜b6 8.c3 ♞gf6 9.♚e2 0-0 10.♜a3 ♞c7 11.♜c2 ♞fe8 12.e5 dxe5
13.fxe5 ♜d5 14.e6 ♜7f6



15.exf7+ ♜xf7 16.♞g5+ ♜g8 17.♚e6+ ♜h8 18.♞f7+ ♜g8 19.♞h6+
♜h8 20.♚g8+ ♜xg8 21.♞f7# 1-0

□ Reefschlaeger Helmut

■ Astengo Corrado

Bad Wiessee 2008 ○



23.♞e5+ ♖b5 24.♖xb5+ ♗xb5 25.♚xb5+ ♜f8 26.♞d7+ ♜e8 27.♞f6+
♜f8 28.♚e8+ ♞xe8 29.♞d7# 1-0

□ Buhmann Rainer
 ■ Saeheng Boonsueb
 Dresden 2008 ○



24. ♖xh6+ ♔h8 25. ♚xe6 ♜e7 26. ♚g8+ 1-0

□ Yildiz Betul Cemre
 ■ Batory Lucija
 Rijeka 2010 ○

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♜c6 3.d4 exd4 4.♟xd4 ♙c5 5.♙e3 ♚f6 6.c3 ♜ge7
 7.♙c4 ♜e5 8.♙e2 d6 9.0-0 ♚g6 10.f3 ♙h3 11.♚f2 0-0 12.♔h1 ♙e6
 13.♜d2 ♚h5 14.♟f1 c6 15.♜xe6 ♙xe3 16.♜xe3 ♜xe6 17.♚xd6 ♚g5
 18.♜c4 ♜f7 19.♚xe6 ♜g6 20.♜d6 ♚e3 21.♜xf7 ♜f4



22. ♜h6+ ♔h8 23. ♚g8+ ♚xg8 24. ♜f7# 1-0

□ Miezis Normunds

■ Navara David

Porto Carras 2011 ○



87. ♖d7 ♗xa7 88. ♖c7# 1-0

□ Medina Warda Aulia

■ Lyons Kieran

Istanbul 2012

1. e4 c5 2. ♖f3 ♗c6 3. d4 cxd4 4. ♖xd4 ♗f6 5. ♖c3 e6 6. ♗db5 d6
7. ♗f4 e5 8. ♗g5 a6 9. ♗xf6 gxf6 10. ♖a3 f5 11. ♗c4 ♖d4 12. ♗h5 ♗d7
13. ♖d5 ♗g7 14. ♖b6 ♗e7 15. ♖xa8 b5 16. ♖b6 ♗b7 17. ♖d5 ♗d8
18. ♗d3 ♗xd5 19. exd5 e4 20. ♗e2 b4 21. ♖c4 ♖xc2+ 22. ♗d2 ♖xa1
23. ♗xa1 ♗f6 24. ♗xf5 ♗d4+ 25. ♗e1 0-0 26. ♗d1 ♗c5 27. ♗xe4 a5
28. ♗d3 f5 29. ♗e6+ ♗h8 30. ♖xd6 ♗d4



31. ♖f7+ ♗g8 32. ♖h6+ ♗h8 33. ♗g8+ ♗xg8 34. ♖f7# 1-0

To conclude our survey, we will see some often-met opening traps:

□ Hosticka Frantisek

■ Bartos Miroslav

Prague 2015

1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♘d2 dxe4 4.♗xe4 ♘d7 5.♚e2 ♗gf6



6.♗d6# 1-0

□ Stancu Timy Casian

■ Nita Andrei Ioan

Calimanesti Caciulata 2016

1.e4 e5 2.♗f3 ♗c6 3.♙c4 ♗d4 4.♗xe5 ♚g5 5.♗xf7



5...♚xg2 6.♙f1 ♚xe4+ 7.♙e2 ♗f3#0-1

□ Neudecker Georg
■ Leichum Engelbert
Schweinfurt 2016

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e5 3.dxe5 ♗g4 4.♙f4 ♖b4+ 5.♗d2 ♗c6 6.♗gf3 ♚e7
7.a3



7...♗gxe5 8.axb4 ♗d3# 0-1

CONCLUSION

The smothered mate is a relatively easy but very effective tactic. It is an important one to learn and understand, as it occurs quite often.

TWIN GAMES

'Identical' twins are the rarest case in our royal game. Especially, when these twins come from the same player, in the same tournament and in (nearly) consecutive rounds!

Let's start with a 'couple' by English GM J.Plaskett:

□ Rath Ulrik

■ Plaskett James

Esbjerg 1982

1.♘f3 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 3.g3 ♙b7 4.♙g2 g6 5.b3 ♙g7 6.♙b2 0-0 7.0-0 ♘a6
8.♘c3 c5 9.♞c1 d5 10.♘xd5 ♘xd5 11.♙xg7 ♘xg7 12.cxd5 ♞xd5
13.d4 ♞fd8 14.dxc5 ♘xc5 15.♞c2 ♞d6 16.b4 ♘e6 17.♞b2+ f6
18.♘g5 ♙xg2 19.♘xe6+ ♞xe6 20.♘xg2



This game was played in the 2nd round of the Esbjerg Open B-Tournament back in 1982. White's non-ambitious play made things easy for Black, but is there something more to look at than the better side of the draw? The pawn structure is symmetrical and after some more heavy pieces exchanges there will be nothing left to play for...

20...♞e4+ 21.f3

A correct response. 21.♙g1 ♞ac8 22.a3 h5, would give Black some initiative.

21...♖e3 22.♗c3 ♕e5 23.♟fc1 ♞ac8! 24.♞1c2?!

After 24.♔f2! White would have no problems maintaining equality.



24...♞d1

The text looks like a great combinational move! But objectively best was 24...♞xc3 25.♖xc3 (25.♞xc3 ♞d1 26.♞b3 ♕d6=+) 25...♖xc3 26.♞xc3 ♞d2 27.♞a3 ♞xe2+ 28.♔g1 a5 29.bxa5 bxa5 30.♞xa5 g5, when White would still have to suffer, but probably he could hold. On the other hand, it is a very interesting move, as Black is in no danger of losing and White should be careful...

25.♞xc8 ♕e3 26.♞8c4?

And White blunders, obviously shocked by Black's 24th move! After 26.♔h3 Black has nothing better than 26...♖h6+ (26...♞h1 27.♞8c4 ♖f2 28.♔g4! ♕e3 29.♞e4 h5+ 30.♔h3 ♞xh2+ 31.♔xh2 ♖f2+=) 27.♔g2 ♕e3= Another good move was 26.♞c1 ♞d2 (26...♖g1+? 27.♔h3 ♖f1+ 28.♔g4+-) 27.♖xd2 ♖xd2 28.♔f1 ♖xb4 29.♞8c7 a5=

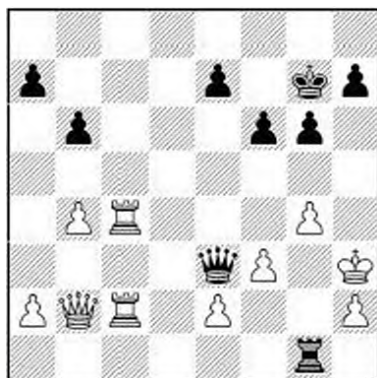
26...♞g1+?

26...h5! was strong, when White is in trouble: 27.♔h3 (27.a3? ♖g1+ 28.♔h3 ♖f1+ 29.♔h4 ♔h6!-) 27...♖f2 28.e3 ♖f1+ 29.♞g2 ♖xc4=

27.♔h3 ♚e6+ 28.g4?

Returning material has never been an easy job to do! Here White could have saved himself by 28.♖g4 h5 29.♚d4 hxg4+ 30.♙xg4 ♚e3 31.♚e4 ♚h6+ 32.♗h4 ♚e3 33.♚e4=

28...♚e3!



29.g5?

There is no clear mind anymore, otherwise White would have found his only continuation with 29.♚c1! ♖xc1 30.♖xc1 ♚xe2 31.♔g3 h5 32.gxh5 ♚e5+ 33.♔g2 ♚g5+ 34.♔h1 ♚xh5 35.♖1c3 ♚d5+

29...♚xg5 30.♖g4 ♚h5+ 31.♖h4 ♚f5+ 32.♖g4 h5! 33.♖cc4 g5!

White resigned, due to 34.♚c2 hxg4+ 35.fxg4 ♚f1#

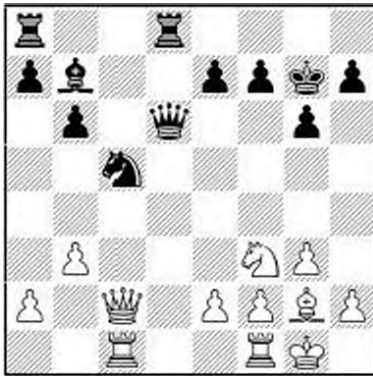
0-1

□ Knudsen Per Bek

■ Plaskett James

Esbjerg 1982

1.♔f3 ♔f6 2.c4 b6 3.g3 ♖b7 4.♖g2 g6 5.b3 ♖g7 6.♖b2 0-0 7.0-0 ♔a6
8.♔c3 c5 9.♖c1 d5 10.♔xd5 ♔xd5 11.♖xg7 ♔xg7 12.cxd5 ♚xd5
13.d4 ♖fd8 14.dxc5 ♔xc5 15.♚c2 ♚d6



16.b4

Another continuation here is 16.♖fd1 ♗f6 17.b4 (17.♘e1 ♙xg2 18.♙xg2 e5 19.b4 ♘e6 20.♘f3 a5 21.a3 axb4 22.axb4 ♘g5 23.♘xg5 ♗xg5 24.♗c7 ♖dc8 25.h4 ♗f5 26.♗xb6 ♗e4+ 27.♙g1 ♖ab8 28.♗a6 ♖xc1 29.♖xc1 ♖xb4 30.♗a3 ♖b1 31.♖xb1 ♗xb1+ 32.♙g2 ½-½ Meier,G-Papp,G Belfort 2005) 17...♘e6 18.♗b3 ♖ac8 19.♖xc8 ♖xc8 20.♗a4 ♖c7 21.♗a3 a6 22.♗e3 b5 23.♘e5 ♙xg2 24.♙xg2 h5 25.h4 ♗f5 26.♖d3 ♖c2 27.a3 ♖c7 28.♙g1 ½-½ Schindler,W-David,A Germany 1986.

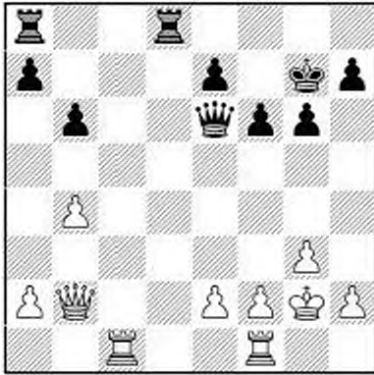
16...♘e6 17.♗b2+

17.a3 ♖ac8 18.♗b2+ f6 19.♖xc8 ♖xc8 20.♖c1 ½-½ Kochyev,A-Speelman,J Hastings 1978.

17...f6

17...♙g8 18.a3 ♖ac8 19.♖fe1 ♖xc1 ½-½ Csom,I-Szekely,P Hungary 1999.

18.♘g5 ♙xg2 19.♘xe6+ ♗xe6 20.♙xg2



And here again we have the position from the 2nd round, but this is now in the 4th round, with the same player as Black!

20...h5!

Well, Black did his homework, as the text move offers better chances than the 20...♔e4+ of the 2nd round!

21.h4

White cannot afford to allow something like ...h4-h3.

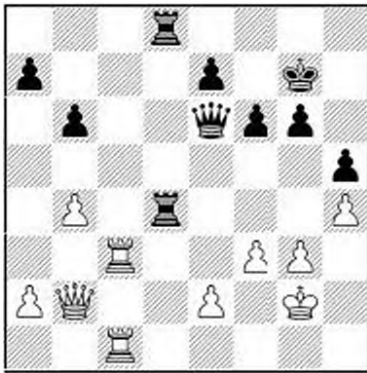
21...♔e4+ 22.f3 ♕e3

Black seems to have a good strategy: to maintain all heavy pieces on the board and try to create some threats on the enemy king.

23.♖c2

If White had opted for something like the previous game with 23.♖c3 ♕e5 24.♖fc1 ♖ac8 25.♖1c2, then 25...♖d1 would work perfectly after 26.♖xc8? (26.♖a3 ♕xb2 27.♖xb2 ♖c7=+) 26...♕e3!-+

23...♖d4 24.♖fc1 ♖ad8 25.♖c3 ♕e6



26. ♖1c2?

A passive move. White had to opt for 26. ♖c6! ♜e5 27. ♖c8 ♞8d5 28. ♚c2! ♜e6! (28... ♞d2?! 29. ♞g8+ ♚xg8 30. ♚xg6+=) 29. ♖c6 ♜e3 30. ♖c3 and probably Black has nothing better than to accept the draw...

26... ♞d1!

Echoes from the previous game...

27. ♚b3 ♜e5



28. ♚f2?

A more stubborn defence was to be found in 28. ♞b2 ♞8d2 29. ♞xd2 ♞xd2 30. ♞e3 ♞xe2+ 31. ♞xe2 ♜xe2+ 32. ♚g1 b5+

28... ♞h1

Even stronger was 28...♖g1! 29.f4 (29.♔xg1 ♜xg3+ 30.♔f1 ♜d1#)
 29...♞d4+ 30.♞e3 ♞a1! 31.♞f3 ♜h1-+

29.f4 ♞e4! 30.♞f3



30...♞dd1

This d1-square is a problem for White in this variation...

31.♞c8?!

31.♔g2 ♞dg1+ 32.♔f2 ♞b1-+

31...♞h2# 0-1

Well, the previous 'couple' was what I call perfect twins! But this case is quite rare, at least compared to cases of identical ideas and positions from different openings.

In the 'Acropolis 2007' international tournament held in Athens, the following games were played in rounds 1 & 2:

□ Parginos Vassilios

■ Grivas Efstratios

Athens 2007

**1.d4 f5 2.h3 d5 3.g4 ♘f6 4.♘f3 ♘c6 5.♘c3 e6 6.♞g1 ♘e4 7.gxf5
 exf5 8.♘g5 ♘xc3 9.bxc3 ♙e7 10.e4 fxe4**



White has sacrificed a pawn trying to gain the initiative but Black is well-prepared to defend properly.

11. ♖h5+?!

A tempting move. 11. ♜xe4?! leads nowhere after 11...0-0!
 (11...dxe4? 12. ♖h5+ g6 13. ♖xg6 hxg6 14. ♖xg6+ ♔d7 15. ♖f5+=)
 12. ♙h6 ♜f7 13. ♖h5 ♙f5 14. ♜g5 ♙xg5 15. ♙xg5 ♖d6-+ but probably
 White should have chosen the lesser evil 11. h4 ♙f5 12. ♙h3 ♙xh3
 13. ♜xh3 0-0 14. ♖g4 ♜f7 15. ♙h6 ♙f6+

11...g6 12. ♖h6 ♙f8 13. ♖h4 h6!

No escape for the poor g5-knight!

14. ♙e2 ♙g7 15. ♙h5



Keep this diagram in mind; you will need it for the next game!

15... ♙f5

15...hxg5 16.♙xg5 ♖d6 17.♙f4 ♗e7 18.♙xg6+ ♕f8 was also winning, but Black wanted to play it safe.

16.♗f4 ♗d7

16...0-0 was also enough. Unfortunately for White, all these pieces gathering on the kingside was nothing but an empty balloon.

17.♘f3

17.♘xe4 gxh5 18.♖xg7 ♗xg7 19.♗xf5 dxe4 or 17.♘e6 ♗xe6 18.♗xf5 ♗xf5 19.♙xg6+ ♗xg6 20.♖xg6 ♕f7 were easy and ineffective.

17...exf3 18.♖xg6 ♙xg6 19.♙xg6+ ♕d8 0-1

□ Malakhatko Vadim

■ Parginos Vassilios

Athens 2007

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 c5 4.cxd5 cxd4 5.♗a4+ ♙d7 6.♗xd4 exd5
7.♗xd5 ♘f6 8.♗b3 ♘c6 9.♘f3 ♙c5 10.♙g5 h6 11.♙xf6 ♗xf6 12.♘e4
♗e7 13.♘xc5 ♗xc5 14.e3



Black again sacrificed a pawn for the initiative, as in the previous game.

14...♗a5+

It seems that the Black player loves this kind of check. The alternative was 14...♖c8 15.♙e2 ♙e6 16.♚b5 ♚xb5 17.♙xb5 ♔e7=+

15.♚c3 ♘b4?!

15...♚xc3+ 16.bxc3 ♔e7 was what Black should have opted for.

16.♘d4 ♖c8 17.♚d2 ♙a4?!

Placing his pieces on the edge is not a good sign for Black. 17...b6 was better: 18.a3 ♘c2+ 19.♘xc2 ♖xc2 20.♚xa5 bxa5 21.b4 axb4 22.axb4 0-0 23.♙d3 ♖b2 24.0-0 ♖xb4 25.♖xa7 ♙b5 26.♙xb5 ♖xb5 27.g3±

18.b3 0-0?!

Black had to accept an inferior but 'defendable' position with 18...♙d7 19.♙e2 ♘c6 20.♚xa5 ♘xa5 21.♙d3±

19.a3!



Compare this diagram with the previous game. V.Parginos has put his pieces on the edge of the board again and loses in an identical way!

1-0

The last 'couple' wasn't played in the same tournament, nor by the same player, as there is a gap of 71 years between the two games!

I feel that it is really impressive how many moves in both games were identical. Even the moves with ? or ! were more-or-less the same!

Obviously, the study of the old game (the first one) was my guide to creating the new one. But the truth is that I didn't have to create anything really new, except some tactics, as everything was quite clear from the study of the old game! It happened again and again in my over-the-board career.

Keep in mind that this is an essential of learning; study and repeat with innovations...

□ Reti Richard
■ Grau Roberto
London 1927

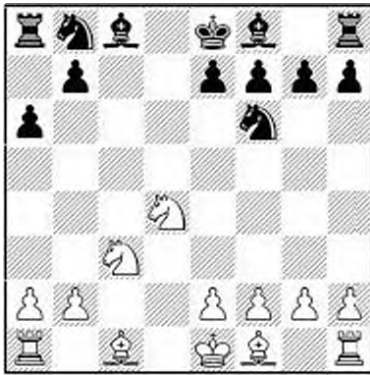
1.c4 c5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.d4 d5 4.cxd5 cxd4 5.♙xd4 ♙xd5 6.♘c3 ♙xd4
7.♘xd4



White seems to enjoy a temporary slight advantage, as Black has still to complete his development and be careful of moves like ♘b5. But as the pawn structure is identical, Black has good chances to equalize.

7...a6!

A good prophylactic move against the ♘b5 'threat'. If instead 7...e5?! White enjoys a pleasant advantage after 8.♘db5 ♘a6 9.♙g5, as he controls too many central squares.



8.g3!

A natural developing move, planning to take over the long diagonal. Not much is achieved by 8.♗g5 ♘d7 9.♗xf6 exf6 10.♞d5 ♜a7 11.0-0 ♞c6.

8...e5

More-or-less forced, in conjunction with his previous move. After 8...♗d7?! 9.♗g2 ♞c6 10.♞xc6 ♗xc6 11.♗xc6+ bxc6 12.♗g5, White will enjoy a permanent advantage due to Black's shattered queenside pawns.

9.♞b3 ♞c6?

A very passive move, which doesn't really solve Black's opening problems. Many years later, I happened to be a commentator at the FIDE World Rapid Championship in Khanty-Mansiysk and I was happy to comment on the correct approach: 9...♗d7! 10.♗g2 ♗c6 11.0-0 ♗b4 (11...h6!? is interesting) 12.♗g5 ♗xc3 13.♗xf6 gxf6 14.bxc3 ♗xg2 15.♗xg2 ♞d7 and White had a slight advantage in Vitiugov,N-Mamedyarov,S Khanty-Mansiysk 2013.

10.♗g2 ♗d7 11.0-0 ♗e7

A natural developing move, not like the strange 11...♗b8?! 12.♗g5 ♞g8 13.♞ad1 f6 14.♗e3+- Sorensen,H-Wium,O Copenhagen 1989.

12. ♖g5!

With the idea of fully occupying the d5-square, after the exchange on f6. But possible also was 12. ♖e3, intending ♜c5 or ♖c5, still with a nice advantage.

12... 0-0 13. ♗fd1

All the white pieces come into a play with some threat. Although the Silicon Monster considers this position as slightly better for White, the truth is that Black faces unsolvable problems.

13... ♗fd8

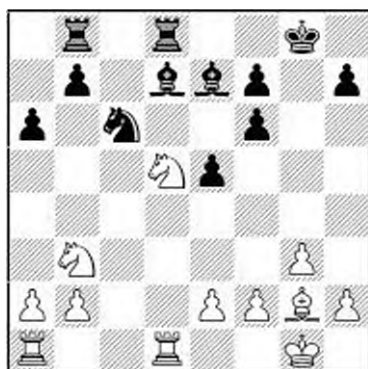
The other option with 13... ♖e6 14. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 (14... gxf6 15. ♜d5±) 15. ♜c5± doesn't change much — Black's centre and queenside are very weak.

14. ♖xf6! gxf6

The alternative 14... ♖xf6 15. ♜c5 ♖g4 16. h3! ♗xd1+ 17. ♗xd1 ♖c8 18. ♜d7! also looks terrible for Black.

15. ♜d5 ♗ab8?!

Allowing a standard combination. 15... ♖g4 16. ♜f1 was the only way to continue the fight.



16. ♜c5!

Is this a nightmare?

16...♗f8?!

Black looked completely shaken. 16...♗xc5 17.♘xf6+ ♔g7 18.♘xd7 just loses the house! 16...♗g4 was the only chance to fight on: 17.♘xe7+ ♘xe7 18.♗xb7 ♚xd1+ 19.♚xd1 ♗xe2 20.♞d2 ♗b5 21.♗xa6±

17.♘xf6!

A small but effective combination that wins huge material — Black resigned.

1-0

As I said, 71 years after this game I was lucky enough to repeat the knowledge I had accumulated in my youthful years.

And I did it in a rapid game, where there is not enough time to think; you have to just sub-consciously repeat your knowledge and education!

□ Grivas Efstratios

■ Pountzas Hrisanthos

Kalavryta 1998

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 c5 4.g3 cxd4 5.♘xd4 ♘c6 6.♗g2 ♗c5 7.♘b3 ♗e7 8.♘c3



Many years after the previous game I played the present one — note the similarities...

8...d6

Maybe 8...b6 is a better try: 9.0-0 0-0 10.♘d5 ♖a6 11.♘xe7+ ♚xe7 12.♘d2 d5 13.♚a4 ♙b7 14.b3 ♜fd8 15.♙a3+= Morozevich,A-Leko,P Zug 2013.

9.0-0 ♙d7?

As in the previous game this isn't the right approach. Black might have tried 9...♘e5 10.c5 d5 11.e4 ♘xe4 12.♘xe4 dxe4 13.♚xd8+ ♙xd8 14.♙xe4+= as in Iljin,A-Belov,V Sochi 2006.

10.♙f4 ♚b8



11.c5!

11.♘c5 was possible as well, but opening the centre can only be to White's benefit.

11...e5 12.cxd6 ♙xd6?!

Good or bad, Black had to opt for 12...exf4 13.dxe7 fxg3 14.hxg3 ♘xe7 15.♚d4 and pray — White still has to prove his advantage.

13.♙g5

Like the previous game, but here the existence of queens on

board are in White's favour as the black king is 'weak'.

13...♙e7 14.♙xf6!

Dominating the d5-square.

14...gxf6

14...♙xf6 15.♘c5 ♙f5 16.♘d5 it's a knights' tango.

15.♘d5 ♗d6 16.♞c1

Preparing the second knight penetration to c5 — Black is nearly lost, as he cannot control any central square.

16...♞d8 17.♘c5 ♗b8

17...♙c8 18.♘e4 wins on the spot.



18.e3!

Although the Silicon Monster proposes a capture of either bishop (18.♘xe7 ♙xe7 19.e3 ♙e6 20.♗a4+- or 18.♘xd7 ♞xd7 19.♗d3 ♗d8 20.♞fd1 ♙f8 21.a3±) I like this quiet move. It takes away the d4-square from the black knight and prepares to activate the queen on h5.

18...♙e6

If Black tries 18...♙xc5 19.♞xc5 ♗d6 then White, among others, has at his disposal a very nice combination: 20.♗h5!! ♗xc5

21. ♖xf6 ♔e7 22. ♗e4 ♖a5 23. ♗h4 ♔f8 24. ♗h6 ♔e8 25. ♗f6
 (25. ♗f6 ♙e6 26. ♗xh8+-) 25... ♔e7 26. ♗d5+ ♔e8 27. ♗d6 f6 28. ♗xf6+
 ♔f7 29. ♗xd7+-

19. ♗xe6!

When the advantage is huge, a combination is on the way. As soon as I found it, I went for it.

19...fxe6 20. ♗h5+



20...♔d7?!

Pity! Black was 'forced' to go for 20...♔f8 when 21. ♖xc6! is quite strong: 21...exd5 (21...bxc6 22. ♗h6+ ♔f7 23. ♗xe7 ♔xe7 24. ♗g7+ ♔d6 25. ♖d1+ ♔c5 26. ♖c1+ ♔b5 27. ♗xf6+-) 22. ♖c2 e4 23. f3+- and the opposite-coloured bishops guarantees a strong winning attack for White.

21. ♗xf6+!

The same move as in the previous game and Black resigned 'as usual': 21...♙xf6 22. ♗f7+ ♙e7 23. ♖fd1+ ♔c7 24. ♗xe7+.

1-0

The following 'twin couple' refers to a combination, which is one of the most beautiful in chess history and even the great Tigran Petrosian commented that when he first came across it he was so

impressed that he stayed forever in chess!

This part is based on articles by Tim Krabbe (Chess Curiosities; 1985) and Jan Timman (NIC Magazine; 1997/3, 1997/5 and 1999/5).

□ Tylkowski

■ Wojciechowski Antoni

Poznan 1931

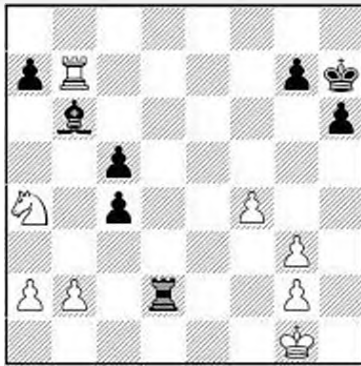
1.f4 d5 2.e3 c5 3.♘f3 ♘c6 4.♙b5 ♙g4 5.0-0 e6 6.d3 ♙e7 7.♘c3 d4
8.♘b1 ♘f6 9.e4 0-0 10.♙xc6 bxc6 11.c3 dxc3 12.♘xc3 ♙xf3
13.♗xf3 ♘g4 14.♖h1 ♗d4 15.♗g1 ♗xg1+ 16.♕xg1 ♙d8 17.♙e3
♘xe3 18.♗xe3 ♙b6 19.♗d1 h6 20.e5 f6 21.exf6 ♗xf6 22.♗f3 c4+
23.d4 c5 24.d5 exd5 25.♗xd5 ♖h7 26.♗d7 ♗d8 27.♗b7 ♗g6 28.♗g3
♗xg3 29.hxg3



The start of the combination is easy to predict; Black has to put pressure on the white pawns.

29...♗d2! 30.♘a4?

Wrong, although White could not even imagine what would follow. He could save the draw with 30.a4! ♗xb2 31.a5 ♗b3! (after 31...♙xa5? 32.♗xb2 ♙xc3 33.♗c2 ♙d4+ 34.♖f1 c3 35.g4 is not clear if Black can draw) 32.axb6 axb6! 33.♘a4 (33.♘d5 c3 34.f5! ♖g8 [34...h5 35.♘e3 ♗b2 36.f6 ♖g8 37.♗xg7+ ♖f8 38.♗b7 ♗e2 39.♗b8+ ♖f7 40.♗b7+ ♖f8=] 35.♗b8+= is good as well) 33...♗a3 34.♗xb6 ♗xa4 35.♗b5.

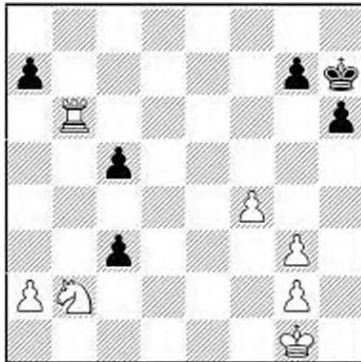


30...♖xb2!!

The main theme and the actual start of the combination.

31.♘xb2 c3 32.♖xb6

Forced. If 32.♘d3 then 32...c4+ 33.♖xb6 cxd3 and the black pawns are unstoppable.



32...c4!!

Taking the square d3 under control. The threat now is ...c2.

33.♖b4 a5!!

The conclusion of the combination. The white pieces lose their co-ordination and the c-pawn will promote.

34.♘xc4

If 34.♖xc4 then 34...cxb2 35.a4 b1=♚+ 36.♔h2 ♜b3+

Two years later and in a far-away town and an era in which there were no publications (almost), databases or internet (!) a similar combination took place. This is the version that was published in some sources:

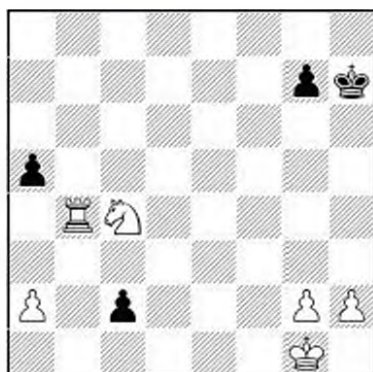
- Ortueta Esteban Martin
- Sanz Aguado Jose
- Madrid 1933 ●



1...♞d2! 2.♘a4?!

But here White could save himself with 2.a4! ♞xb2 3.a5 ♞b3 4.axb6 axb6 5.♘a4 ♞a3 (5...b5? 6.♘xc5 ♞b1+ 7.♚f2 c3 8.♘d3+-) 6.♞xb6 ♞xa4 7.♞b5=

2...♞xb2! 3.♘xb2 c3 4.♞xb6 c4!! 5.♞b4 a5!! 6.♘xc4 c2



‘And White resigned’. It looks like White is busted, but actually there is a defence:

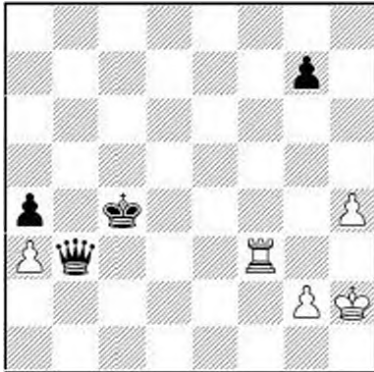
7. ♖b3! c1=♚+ 8. ♔f2 ♜xc4 9. ♖h3+

The saving move. If the white h-pawn was on h3, then White would lose this position.

9... ♔g6 10. a3

Here John Nunn thought that Black can win by taking his pawn to a4, his king to c4 and then liquidating into a winning pawn ending. But this is not true, as White can defend:

10... a4 11. ♖g3+ ♔f5 12. ♖f3+ ♔e4 13. ♔g3 ♔d5 14. h4! ♜b3 15. ♔h3 ♔c4 16. ♔h2



And Black has no way to improve his position further:

16... ♜xf3 17. gxf3 ♔b3

White simply advances his pawns and reaches a drawn queen ending:

18. f4 ♔xa3 19. f5 ♔b3 20. f6 gxf6 21. h5 a3 22. h6 a2 23. h7 a1=♚ 24. h8=♚ 1/2-1/2

But 'of course' this was the 'wrong version' of the game. Years later the plain truth was revealed; the following was the actual game:

□ Ortueta Esteban Martin

■ Sanz Aguado Jose

Madrid 1933

1.e4 e6 2.d3 d5 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.e5 ♘fd7 5.f4 ♗b4 6.♗d2 0-0 7.♘f3 f6
8.d4 c5 9.♘b5 fxe5 10.dxe5 ♗xf4 11.c3 ♗e4+ 12.♗e2 ♗a5 13.0-0
♘xe5 14.♘xe5 ♗xe5 15.♗f4 ♗f5 16.♗d3 ♗f6 17.♖c2 h6 18.♗e5 ♘d7
19.♗xf6 ♘xf6 20.♗xf6 ♖xf6 21.♗f1 ♗e7 22.♗h7+ ♘h8 23.♖g6 ♗d7
24.♗f7 ♖g5 25.♖xg5 hxg5 26.♗xd7 ♘xh7 27.♗xb7



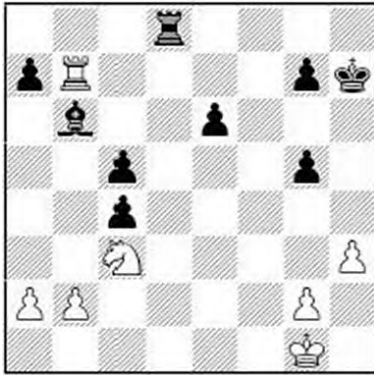
27...♗b6?!

According to Jose Raul Capablanca, here Black could grab the advantage with 27...c4! But of course this is of little 'value' as it has nothing to do with our theme.

28.c4 dxc4 29.♘c3?!

29.♘d6! was a far better try; probably White would be able to draw.

29...♗d8 30.h3



Here again we have the case of the previous game more-or-less!

30...♙d2! 31.♘a4

Now Black's extra material on the kingside doesn't allow the saving resource 31.a4: 31...♙xb2 32.a5 ♖b3 33.axb6 axb6 34.♘a4 c3 35.♘xc3 ♙xc3 36.♙xb6 ♙e3-+

31...♙xb2!!

As usual, imagination wins versus material!

32.♘xb2 c3! 33.♙xb6 c4!! 34.♙b4 a5!! 35.♘xc4 c2

0-1

This combination inspired the great Jan Timman to construct some thematic studies:

Study 1

Timman Jan

1997 ○



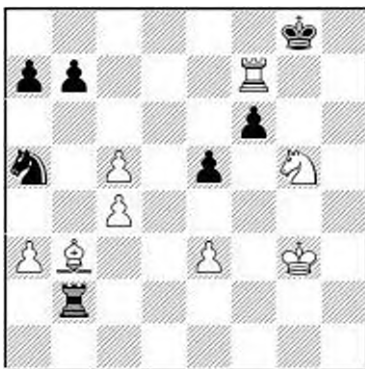
White is a pawn-up but his queenside faces problems, so he has to act.

1.f6! gxf6

Forced. If 1... fxb3 then 2. h8+ g8 3.f7 and if 1... g8 White wins with 2.fxg7+ e7 3. h8 xb3 4. fxg8 f6 5. d6 !

2. xf7+ g8

Not of course 2... e8? in view of 3. a4+ .



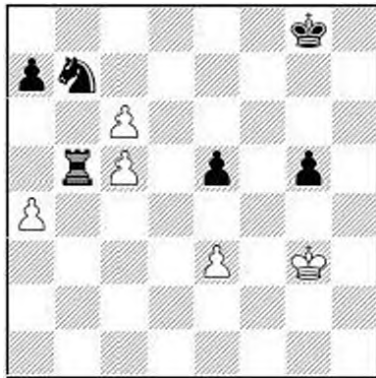
3. xb7!! xb7?

Here the main problem is Boris Gelfand's analysis, which states that Black can defend with 3...fxg5! 4. xa7 xb3 5. xa5 xe3+ 6. g4 f7 . So, actually the study is incorrect but of course still beautiful due to the various combinations and defences.

4.c6 xb3 5.c5!!

The well-known theme. With this move the black pieces are kept away from d6 and b6.

5...♖b5 6.a4!! fxg5!



The best defence, as Black has a hidden resource...

7.♔h3!!

The point is that 7.axb5? is impossible in view of 7...♗xc5 8.c7 ♗e4+ 9.♔g4 ♗d6+ White's last move is an enormous surprise. Although a rook and a knight down, White is in no hurry to win material back, but starts by hiding his king!

7...g4+ 8.♔h4!

And White wins the coming queen ending: 8...g3 9.axb5 g2 10.cxb7 g1=♚ 11.b8=♚+.

1-0

The following version is also more economical and of course the improved and correct one:

Study 2

Timman Jan

1999 ○



1.c6 ♖xb4 2.c5!!

It is a draw after 2...axb4? ♜d6 3.c5 ♜f5+ 4.♙g4 ♜xe3+ 5.♙f3 ♜d5 6.♜e6 ♙f7 7.c7 ♜e7 8.♜d8+ ♙e8 9.♜c6 ♜c8.

2...♞b5 3.a4!! fxg5 4.♙h3!! g4+ 5.♙h4!

And White wins as in the previous version.

1-0

As Jan Timman states, he was not entirely satisfied by the two previous studies, a clear indication of a dedicated and great chessplayer!

So, his final, third 'version' is far more excellent and 'refined' compared to the previous two, which more-or-less looked 'unfinished'.

Study 3

Timman Jan

1999 ○



As far as material is concerned, the situation is roughly equal. White obviously depends on his passed c-pawns.

1. ♖b4!

1.c6 ♜d6 at once yields nothing, so White will have to start by trying to dominate the enemy knight.

1... ♜b1

There is no other defence to the threatened 2.c6: 1... ♜g1+ 2. ♔f2 ♜g8 (2... ♜c1 3.c6 ♜xc4 4.c7 ♜c6 5.f4 e4 6.f5+-) 3.c6 ♜d8 4. ♕e7!+-

2.a3!

Tempting is 2.c6 ♜xb4 3.c5, but this fails to 3... ♜xc5 4.c7 ♜e4+! 5.fxe4 ♜c4.

2... a5 3.c6

Only now can the bishop be sacrificed.

3... axb4 4.c5!!

The usual motif.

4... bxa3

4... ♜xc5 fails to 5.c7 ♜e4+ 6.fxe4 ♜c1 7.axb4 and a white pawn will promote.

5.c7

Now the black rook has to hurry back to the bottom rank to stop the white passed pawns.

5...♖g1+ 6.♔h3!

For two reasons, both of which will become apparent, the only good square for the king.

6...♖g8

Another try is 6...a2 7.c8=♚+ ♖g8 which fails to 8.♘d8!! ♘xd8 (8...♖xd8 9.♗xb7 a1=♚ 10.♗g7#; 8...a1=♚ 9.♘f7#) 9.♗a6, capturing the a-pawn.

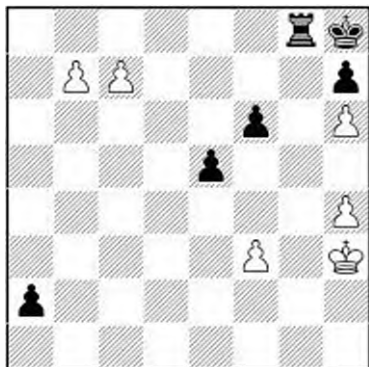
7.♘d8! ♖xd8 8.c6!

Here is our theme again! Now we see why the king had to go to h3; on the second rank a check on d2 would be annoying.

8...♖g8

The best defence. If 8...a2 then 9.cxd8=♚+ ♘xd8 10.c7.

9.cxb7 a2



10.b8=♗!

This is the only way to queen which wins, as will become clear

in a while. The alternative 10.c8=♖? only draws after 10...a1=♖
11.♗xg8+ ♔xg8 12.b8=♗+ ♔f7 13.♗c7+ ♔e6.

10...a1=♖ 11.♗xg8+ ♔xg8 12.c8=♗+ ♔f7 13.♗d7+ ♔g6

The other option with 13...♔f8 also loses: 14.♗g7+ ♔e8 15.♗g8+
♔d7 16.♗xh7+ ♔d6 17.♗e4+-

14.♗g7+ ♔h5 15.♗f7+!

And this is the second reason for White's sixth move; the white king assists in weaving a mating net!

15...♔xh6 16.♗xf6+ ♔h5 17.♗g5# 1-0

Lately there is a strong feeling that the game Ortueta-Sanz is a fake one and it was constructed after Tylkowski-Wojciechowski.

In NIC Magazine 2017/1, Jan Timman continued his research, with some nice extra examples:

Study 4
Timman Jan
2017 ○



A near twin position of the study 1; there are just some extra pawns on the kingside...

1.♗f7+ ♔g8 2.♗xb7!

Insufficient for the win is 2.c6 bxc6 3.♖xa7 fxg5 4.c5+ ♔f8 5.♔g4 ♕c4 6.♖c7 ♕xe3+ 7.♔xg5 ♕d5 8.♖c8+ ♔e7 9.♖xc6 ♕f6 10.♖c7+ ♔d8 11.♖xg7 ♖a6! and Black holds.

2...♕xb7 3.c6 ♖xb3 4.c5! ♖b5 5.a4! fxg5 6.♔h3!

The same concept as in study 1.

6...g4+ 7.♔h4! g3 8.axb5 g2 9.cxb7 g1=♚ 10.b8=♚+ ♔f7 11.♚xa7+ ♔f6 12.♚a6+! ♔xf5 13.♚c8+ ♔e4 14.♚g4+ ♚xg4+ 15.♔xg4 ♔d5 16.b6!

And White wins, as his king enters e6, so because of this wrong would be 16.c6? ♔d6=

1-0

Study 5

Hanssen L.

1932 ○



Normally White couldn't hope for more than a draw at best...

1.♕d6 ♕c7

Or 1...♕e7 2.d5! ♔g8 (2...♕xd5 3.♕c8+-) 3.♕c8! ♖xc8 4.d6!+-

2.d5!

Taking the e6 square away from the black knight, while at the same time preparing the final combination.

2...♖f8 3.♘e8! ♖xe8 4.d6!

And, as usual, it is over!

1-0

Study 6

Timman Jan

2017 □



1.♘c5 ♖f8

Stopping 2.e7.

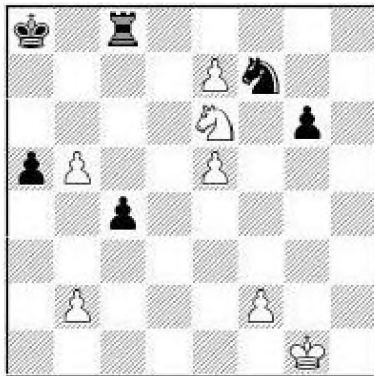
2.♘f4!

The only way! Insufficient is 2.♘e3? ♘d3! or 2.f4? ♘d3 3.♘d7 ♖h8+ 4.♗g3 ♘xb2 5.f5 c3 6.♘e1 gxf5 7.exf5 ♘c4 8.f6 ♗b7 9.f7 ♘d6 10.♘c2 a4 11.♗f4 ♘xf7 12.exf7 ♗c7 13.f8=♖ ♖xf8+ 14.♘xf8 ♗b6=

2...♖xf4 3.e7 ♖h4+ 4.♗g1!

Again the only path! 4.♗g2? fails to 4...♖h8 5.♘e6 ♘d7! 6.e5 ♗a7 7.♘f8 ♖xf8 8.e6 ♖xf2+! 9.♗xf2 ♘f6-+

4...♖h8 5.♗e6 ♘f7 6.e5! ♜c8



Another critical moment.

7.♔g2!

7.♗d8? fails to 7...♖xd8 8.e6 ♜d1+-+ White, as on the 4th move, prevents a check by the black rook.

7...♔a7 8.♗d8! ♖xd8 9.e6!

1-0

CONCLUSION

The well-known, in the studies world, 'Prokes Theme' is in full force in the above examples. Combinations can be learned and classified, as they tend to repeat themselves...

Well, everything is new when it is well-forgotten, so this survey was a good chance to come back to interesting and old twin games and combinations, mixed with relatively recent studies. Both amusing and instructive...

Learn from the masters, adjust and repeat the knowledge to climb towards your chess heaven...